This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world’s books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that’s often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book’s long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ Make non-commercial use of the files We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ Refrain from automated querying Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google’s system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ Maintain attribution The Google “watermark” you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ Keep it legal Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can’t offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book’s appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google’s mission is to organize the world’s information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world’s books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at [http://books.google.com/](http://books.google.com/)
NEW LATIN METHOD

By

GIRDLE & REED

Digitized by Google
FROM THE ESTATE OF
JAMES BRADSTREET GREENOUGH
PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN HARVARD COLLEGE
1883–1901
RECEIVED JULY 12, 1910
A MANUAL

OF

INSTRUCTION IN LATIN

ON THE BASIS OF

ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S LATIN METHOD

PREPARED BY

JOSEPH H. ALLEN

BOSTON
GINN AND HEATH
1880
Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1876, by

JOSEPH H. ALLEN,

in the office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

Wright & Potter Printing Company, 18 Post Office Square, Boston.
This Manual retains from the "Latin Method" the general arrangement of topics, the later reading selections, and a few statements in detail, especially the section on reading at sight, with much of what is said on the derivation and meaning of words. In all other respects it is an independent book, and one for which I am solely responsible.

The object in view has been to provide a full year's course in Latin, which can be studied without the grammar. The fulness, the general statement, the scientific nomenclature required in a book of reference, ill adapt it to the beginner, bewildering him with theory before his mind is steadied and cleared by knowing the simpler facts. The thirty Lessons of Part First, with the accompanying Exercises, contain, it is believed, all of the forms and constructions needed as a preparation for easy reading. These may be followed directly by the earlier selections of Part Fourth,* before proceeding to the more difficult constructions of Syntax.

The Vocabulary to be used with these selections contains the more useful Roots as a guide to the proper study of words. The sections on the formation and meaning of words, with the illustrative lists on pages 126–128, and those given at the end of the book, will be found of advantage at this stage, for constant reference if not for class study.

In the elementary lessons, and in the vocabularies, the practice has been followed of marking as long all vowels known to have

* Taken from Kühner's "Elementargrammatik," Hannover, 1866, 27th ed.
been so regarded by the Romans. These have been held to include not only those long "by nature" or by "vowel-extension," but also those before the combinations $nf$ and $ns$,* together with a few others indicated by analogy, as amant. If a serious attempt is made to pronounce according to the "Roman Method," the best help will be to train the learner's ear to it from the start.

The systematic study of Syntax is provided for in Part Second by very numerous classified illustrations, both in Latin † and English, which may be used for practice in the writing of Latin during a second year's course. The grammar is here referred to, constantly and minutely, as the subject seems to require; but the topics may be treated orally, if preferred, the examples in Latin being taken (at sight) as a guide in the exercises which follow.

The composition of this Manual has been studied wholly from the point of view of the elementary class-room; and, while scientific accuracy has been aimed at, the convenience of teacher or learner has in no case been sacrificed to theoretical completeness. Forms have been very fully indicated in the vocabularies; and occasional references to the grammar in the earlier Lessons will enable the teacher to give such further detail as may here and there be desirable.

My grateful acknowledgments are due to several of our best teachers, who have generously aided me by their counsel in the plan and in numerous details of the book. The entire work has received, in addition, the valuable revision and oversight of Dr. Henshaw, former Principal of Williston Seminary, Easthampton, Massachusetts.

It may be worth while to add that the practice of tasking the beginner with a great mass of grammatical detail—which is fast coming to be considered a serious burden and harm to our scholarship—is one of comparatively recent date, and one which is not found (I believe) in any other country. The schoolboys of forty or

* See Cicero, Orator, ch. 48.

† Many of these are taken from Wright's "First Latin Steps." Macmillan, 1871.
Preface.

fifty years ago, with less of theoretical accuracy and completeness in their studies, were relatively more familiar with the classic authors, and, there is reason to suppose, enjoyed them more, than those of a later day. A scientific etymology, and a syntax expounded on the principles of comparative philology, are a positive and great gain in the newer school. But the detail of these studies appears to belong to the professional scholar; while their results are best seen in making more vivid and clear the forms of ancient thought and expression that have come down to us. They may be of real help to the youngest learner; but only when they make the way easier and brighter in which he has to travel. To smooth that way a little is the best service I can hope to render.

J. H. A.

Cambridge, August 21, 1876.

NOTE.

In the present edition, by the simplification and abridgment of the "Parallel Exercises" (pp. 46–74), space has been gained to insert a series of easy exercises (interlined) in Reading at Sight—a practice which it is desirable to encourage from as early a period of the study as possible. In this portion of the book, long quantities have been marked, on the principle stated in the foregoing Preface.

June 18, 1889.
"Thus, upon examination, we find that all that requires unreasoning memory may be reduced to the following heads:—

1. The five declensions, which include all adjectives and participles;
2. The rules for gender, and exceptions;
3. The four conjugations, active and passive, which latter voice includes sum;
4. The irregular verbs, *eo, volo, nolo, malo, possum*;
5. Syntax: two pages.

All this might easily be comprehended within twenty-four octavo pages."

D'Arcy W. Thompson,

"Day-Dreams of a Schoolmaster"
# CONTENTS.

## PART I.—ELEMENTARY LESSONS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Pronunciation and Accent</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>The Inflection of Nouns</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>First Declension of Nouns</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Second Declension of Nouns</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Adjectives of First and Second Declensions</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Simple Sentence: Subject and Predicate</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Object-Accusative</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Questions; Conjunctions</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Third Declension of Nouns</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Adjectives of the Third Declension</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Comparison of Adjectives</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Fourth and Fifth Declensions of Nouns</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Pronouns: Personal and Demonstrative</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Numerals</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Verbs: 1. Moods and Tenses</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>2. The Verb <em>esse, to be</em></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>3. The Four Conjugations</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Regular Verb: 1st Conjugation, <em>Active</em></td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>2nd Conjugation</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Noun and Adjective Forms</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>2d Conjugation</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>3d Conjugation</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>4th Conjugation</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Deponent Verbs</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Irregular and Defective Verbs</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Particles</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Formation of Words: <em>Verb Stems</em></td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Nouns and Adjectives</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Derivatives and Compounds</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Parallel Exercises**
## PART II.—CONSTRUCTIONS OF SYNTAX.

### CASES: — a. As Objects of Verbs.
1. Object Accusative; 2. Two Accusatives .......... 75, 76

**b. As Modifying Adjectives.**
6. Genitive; 7. Dative .......... 80, 81

**c. Miscellaneous.**
25. Predicate Genitive .......... 97
26. Relations of Time and Space .......... 97

### MOODS AND TENSES .......... 99–103
27. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive .......... 99
28. Historical Infinitive .......... 101
29. Sequence of Tenses .......... 101

### SUBORDINATE CONSTRUCTIONS .......... 103–113
30. Conditional Clauses .......... 103
31. Disguised Conditions .......... 104
32. Comparative Particles .......... 105
33. Temporal Clauses .......... 106
34. Purpose and Result .......... 108
35. Clause of Characteristic .......... 110
36. Intermediate Dependent Clauses .......... 111
37. Indirect Discourse .......... 112

### SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES .......... 114–119
38. Infinitive Clauses .......... 114
39. Substantive Clauses of Purpose .......... 115
40. Substantive Clauses of Result .......... 117
41. Substantive Clauses with Quod .......... 118
42. Indirect Questions .......... 118
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Part I</td>
<td>Participial Constructions</td>
<td>120-123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
<td>Participles: Predicate use</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.</td>
<td>Ablative Absolute</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.</td>
<td>Gerundive Constructions</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part II</td>
<td>On Reading Latin</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>The Meaning of Words</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>The Latin Sentence</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part III</td>
<td>Reading Lessons</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>Fables</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>Dialogues</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>Anecdotes</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>The Kings of Rome</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>The War with Porsena.— Livy</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Horatius holds the Bridge</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>The Deed of Mucius Scaevola</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>The Escape of Cælia</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI.</td>
<td>Miscellaneous Selections</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>A Haunted House.— Pliny</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>A Sharper of Syracuse.— Cicero.</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>The Vale of Enna.— Id.</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>The Earth is made for Man.— Id.</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>The Heavens declare a Creator.— Id.</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>An Active Old Age. — Id.</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocabularv: 1.</td>
<td>English and Latin</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Latin and English</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table of Synonymes, etc.</td>
<td>235</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synopsis of Constructions</td>
<td>243</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GRAMMATICAL INDEX.

A or ab with ablative of Agent, 31. 6, 163. R. 27.

Ablative with Comparatives, 17.
R., 83; as Object, 79; of Want, 82; of Source, 83; of Means, &c., 85, 92; of Difference, 85; of Separation, 91; of Cause, 92; of Manner, &c., 93; of Price, 94; of Specification, 95; Locative, 96; Absolute, 32. 2, 6, 121; General Rules, 163. R. 26–35.

Accent, Rules of, 2.

Accusative, as Case of Object, 9, 75; two accusatives, 76; Adverbal, 86; of Exclamation, 87; General Rules, 162. R. 21–25.

Adjectives, Inflection, 4. c, 6, 7, 15, 16 (47, 53); Comparison, 17 (54); rule of Agreement, 6, 162. R. 2; used as Nouns, 7. 2; Derivative Forms, 43.

Adverbs in e, 6; in ter, 16; Derivation, 41.

Apposition, rule of, 7; 163. R. 1.

Cases, use of, 3; Syntax of, 75–99.

Characteristic, Clause of, 110.

Comparative Particles, 105.

Comparison of Adjectives, 17; of Adverbs, 17. 2.

Compounds, formation of, 45; of qui and quis, 21.

Conditional Clauses, 103; disguised, 104; General Rule, 163. R. 46.

Conjunctures, 11. 2.

Conjugations, 10, 26; First, 28–32; Second, 33; Third, 34; Fourth, 36; forms of, 27.

Correlatives, 21. 3.

cum, use of, 106.

Dative, as Indirect Object, 3. c, 77; of Nearness, 81; of Possession, 88; of Service, 89; of Reference, 90; General Rules, 162. R. 14–20.

Declensions, 3; First, 4 (46); Second, 5 (46); Third, 12–14 (51); Fourth and Fifth, 18 (56).

Defective Verbs, 40 (72).


Derivative Forms, 43, 44; Words, Distributive Numerals, 22. c.

Esse, Forms of, 8; Inflection, 24, 25; Compounds, 26; Predicate after, 9. R.

Gender, 2; Rules of, 4. 3. 6, 5. a, 14. b, 18. a, c.

Genitive, 3. 2. b; in inus, 7, 1; of Pronouns, 19. d; as Object, 79; with Adjectives, 80; of Value, 94; as Predicate, 97; General Rules, 162. R. 8–13.

Gerund and Gerundive, 23. 3. a, 2. d; Constructions, 122; General Rule, 163. R. 41.

Impersonal Verbs, 40. 2; Use of Passive, 31. c.

Indirect Discourse, 112, 113.

Indirect Questions, 118, 119.

Infinitive, with Subject-Accusative, 32. d, 114; Historical, 101; Clauses, 114; General Rules, 163. R. 38–40.
Grammatical Index.

Intermediate Clauses, 111.
Interrogative Particles, 10 (50).
Intransitive Verbs, impersonal in Passive, 31. c.
Irregular Verbs, 38-40 (72).

Locative Forms, 4. b, 5. f, 18. b;
Uses, 96, 98; Rules, 163. 36, 37.

Moods, 23. 1; Syntax of, 99-119.

Nominaive as Subject, 3. a, 8. i;
as Predicate, 9.
Nouns, Inflection, 4, 5, 12-14, 18;
Derivation, 43, 44.
Numbers, 3. 2.
Numerals, 21, 22.

Object, Definition, 9.
Object-Cases, 9. a, 75.

Participles, 23. 2, 32. 2; of Deponents, 38; Constructions, 120.
Particles, 41; Interrogative, 10.
Perfect, Formation of, 27. c.
Personal Endings, 8.
Possessives, 19. c, 162. R. 3.
possum and prosum, 26.
Predicate, Definition, 8; Nominative, 9; Genitive, 97.

Pronoun, in Verb-ending, 8. 2;
Personal and Reflexive, 18 (57);
Possessive, 19, c; Demonstrative, 19 (57); Relative, 20 (58).

Pronunciation, 1, 2.

Purpose, Subjunctive of, 108; Substantive Clauses of, 115.

Quantity, Rules of, 2.
Questions, 10 (50); Indirect, 118.

Reading at Sight, 133-138.

Reflexive Pronoun, 19.
Relative Pronouns, 20; Rule, 21;
162. R. 4.

Result, Clauses of, 108, 117.

Root, 3. 3. a; 42. 2, 3; in Derivatives, 126-128.

Sentence, the Latin, 129-133.

Stem of Nouns, 3. 3. b, 12. a, 13. a, 14. a; of Perfect, 27. c; of Present in Verbs, 42. 2.

Subject, Definition, 8; Accusative, 32. d; 162. R. 22.

Subjunctive Mood, 23. b; Independent, 99; Tenses of, 101; in Conditions, 103, 104; with Comparative Particles, 105; in Temporal Clauses, 106; of Purpose and Result, 108; of Characteristic, 110; in Intermediate Clauses, 111; in Substantive Clauses, 115, 117; General Rules, 163. R. 43-48.

Substantive Clauses, 114-119; Infinitive, 114; of Purpose, 115; of Result, 117; with quod, 118; Indirect Questions, 118.

Supine, 23. 3. b; 163. R. 42.
Synopsis of Verbs, 27. c; of Constructions, 243, 244.

Temporal Clauses, 106.
Tenses, 24; Sequence of, 101; Rule for, 163. R. 48.

Time and Space, 97-99.

Transitive Verbs, 9. 1; in Passive, 31. b.

Translation, Rules for, 129-131.

Verbs, 8; Moods and Tenses, 23; Conjugations, 26-37; Deponent, 37; Irregular, 38; Defective, 40. 1; Impersonal, 40. 2; Derivation, 42; Derivative Forms, 44; Compounds, 45; Syntax, 99-123.

Vowel-Stems of Nouns (3d decl.), 14; Adjectives, 15; Verbs, 42. 28.

Words, Meaning of, as shown by Derivation, 124-128.
TO TEACHERS.

In the paradigms given in this book, the case-endings, &c., have been marked by bold type. This is intended simply for the convenience of the learner, and has nothing to do with the etymological theory of stems. Thus the noun-stem of pueris is puer-, and the verb-stem of monuit is monē-; while these words are printed so as to show the characteristic ending of the case, number, tense, or person. As the stem-theory is beset, to the beginner, by some special difficulties, it seems best that the forms themselves should be made very familiar before that is taken up; and, to be dealt with intelligently, it requires much more abundant illustration than could be given here. It may be illustrated orally by the teacher; but should be used, in any case, to explain difficulties, not to multiply them.

It will be observed that the lists of words on pp. 46-72 are not intended as complete vocabularies to the Lessons, but to furnish a sufficient number and variety of examples for practice. If well committed to memory, they will, it is believed, greatly help in mastering the earlier difficulties of the tongue.

The sentences given for practice are intended, in general, to offer no difficulty too great for the average learner, but with here and there an example to try the ingenuity of the brightest. If any should prove too hard, let them be omitted without hesitation: there are enough left, and to spare. At the same time, it is these very difficulties, much more than the facilities, that test and develop the learner’s capacity, and help his real progress in the language. If the practice of reading at sight, with the teacher’s direction and help, is followed from a very early stage, most of them will disappear of themselves. In such practice, the method indicated in pages 133-138 should be followed, subject, however, to the teacher’s judgment and experience.
INTRODUCTION.

I. — Pronunciation.

There is at present a strong tendency, among the best scholars, to pronounce Latin (as well as Greek) phonetically, giving to each letter of the alphabet the one sound which by the best authority most nearly represents that given it by Romans of the classic ages. These sounds are given in the first Lesson (p. 1). Observing the rules of accent, it is only necessary to give each letter its proper enunciation. This is by far the easiest and simplest way. It may be acquired by any intelligent person, with a good ear, in ten minutes; though practice will be required to make the reading fluent and agreeable.

Many persons, however, prefer to retain the English Method, so called; that is, the practice which has prevailed, with some variation, in England and among ourselves, for the last two or three centuries. In general, the following direction is sufficient. Read a Latin sentence just as if the words were English, observing the rules of accent (p. 2), and bearing in mind that there are no silent letters. This single precept would probably give a pronunciation as correct and about as uniform as can be had from any number of arbitrary rules. A few special points necessary to be observed are given in the grammar (§ 2, 2). To read Latin easily and well is an accomplishment which must be taught orally, and acquired by practice. The directions which follow, accordingly, are not intended to be studied by the pupil, but to serve as a guide in cases of doubt.
Latin Method.

1. The chief difference between Latin (pronounced as in English) and English is that the former has no silent letters. *Every vowel makes a syllable;* except in the combinations *ae, oe, au, eu, ei, ui,* and *u* before a vowel, and these are separate when marked with the diaeresis. Thus *di-es, ma-re, pau-pe-ri-e-i.*

2. The vowels always have their English sounds:

- *a* as in *mane* or *man.*
- *e* "be or bed.*
- *i* "find or fin.*
- *o* "note or not.*
- *u* "tune or tun.*
- *y* as a 

3. An unaccented *i* before another vowel is in almost all cases changed into its semivowel *y.* In the same cases as in English this *y* blends with the preceding consonant, making the sound of *sh,* as in *Maia* (*Ma-ya,* *Pompēius* (*Pom-pē-yus,* *Harpyia* (*Harpy-ya,* *socius* (*so-shus,* *vitium* (*vish-yum,* *Asia* (*A-shya).*

Except such words as *Fabius* (*Fā-be-us,* where the *y* is less distinct; so *Sextius,* *flectier,* where it is hardly distinguishable at all. Practice must be the guide in these cases.

4. Of the two sounds of the vowels above given the long sound (so called) ends a syllable, the short ("stopped") sound is followed by a consonant: as *pa-ter* (*pay-ter,* *mag-nus* (*mag-nus,* *de-dit* (*de-dit,* *reg-num* (*reg-num.* But *a* at the end of an unaccented syllable has an obscure sound as in the word *America:* *stella* (*stellāh.*

5. The combinations *quad* and *quart* are pronounced as in the English *quart;* *arr* is pronounced as in *Harry;* *es* at the end of all words, and *os* at the end of plural words have the long sound: *pes* (*pease,* *pares* (*pay-reze,* *nos* (*noce;* *post* (with its compounds) is pronounced like the same word in English.

6. The consonants are pronounced as in English. Thus, *c* is soft (ɔ) before *e, i, y, ae, oe, eu.* Elsewhere it is hard (k), and it blends with *u* in nearly the same cases as in English, as *socius,* *consicis* (pronounced *shus;* *ch* is always *k,* as in *charta,* *māchina;* *g* is soft (j) and hard in the same situations respectively as *c.*

7. *S* is usually hard (sharp as in *saw*). It is sonant (soft, ɔ) at the end of a word, after *e, ae, au, n, r,* as *pes, audes, mons, pars,* *trans* (even in composition). A few other words have also sonant *s, (ɔ), as causa, rosa.*

8. *X* has the sound of ɔ at the beginning and of ks at the end of syllables: as, *Xerx-es, pax.*
Since many of the sounds depend upon the open or close syllables, the following rules for the division of syllables may be observed, which are, however, the regular rules in English.

9. A vowel not accented and a penultimate vowel in any case complete their syllables without a following single consonant or mute with l or r, as socius, ratio. (This rule applies when the number of syllables is reduced by rule 3 above.)

10. A vowel accented, not penultimate, requires the following single consonant, or divides the combination of mute with l or r.

11. But a following i and e attract a consonant rather than an accented ā, ē, ő, preceding; as me-di-ā-tor, hab-re-o pā-tri-us.—

12. A single consonant after any accented vowel except the penultimate is joined with that vowel. A mute and liquid in this position are separated. In other cases a single consonant or a mute and liquid belong to the following vowel.

13. Two consonants (except a mute and l or r as above) are divided: as, mag-nus, cor-pus.

14. Of three or more consonants, the last (or a mute with l or r as above) is given to the following syllable.

15. A compound word is divided between the parts if the first ends in a consonant, otherwise it follows the rules for single words: as, prod-est, circum-esse, praesto, ego-met, pro-sum.

2. — Elementary Definitions.

1. Grammar treats of the different forms of words (Etymology), and the mode of connecting them in speech (Syntax).

2. Words are either Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Participles, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, or Interjections. These are called Parts of Speech.

3. Words like Caesar, consul, temple, virtue, which are names of persons, things, or ideas, are called Nouns.

Names of Persons and Places are called Proper Nouns; other names are Common (as temple) or Abstract (as virtue).

4. Words like brave, loud, strong, which express qualities, are called Adjectives.
5. Words which indicate any person or thing, without either naming or describing, are called PRONOUNS. These include PERSONAL, as I, thou, we, he, they; and ADJECTIVE, as these, those (Demonstrative), my, your (Possessive), who, which (Relative or Interrogative).

6. Words like build, fight, stand, be, suffer, which express actions or conditions, are called VERBS.

7. Words like conquering, going, gone, beaten, which describe by means of actions or conditions, are called PARTICIPLES.

8. Words like nobly, well, very, here, now, to-day, which define an action or quality in manner, place, time, or the like, are called ADVERBS.

9. Words like for, with, by, against, which show the relation between a noun and other words in the sentence, are called PREPOSITIONS.

10. Words like and, or, if, but, then, which connect words or sentences together, are called CONJUNCTIONS.

11. Some words as where, while, till, nevertheless, both define as adverbs and connect as conjunctions. These are called ADVERBAL CONJUNCTIONS.

12. Words like ah! ho! alas! are mere exclamations, and are not strictly parts of speech, but are called INTERJECTIONS.

3. THE ORDER OF WORDS.

The order of words in Latin is comparatively free; but the following rules may serve as a guide to the beginner.

1. In general, put the Subject first and the Verb last. But —
2. Any very emphatic word may be first or last.
3. An Adjective, except for emphasis, follows the noun; but may precede the preposition with its noun: as, multis in locis.
4. The verb inquam (in quotations), and the conjunctions autem, enim, quoque, vero, always follow one or more words in their clause.
5. The order is very often determined by Emphasis or Contrast.
6. Observe carefully and imitate the form of the sentences given as examples. (For special rules of arrangement, see Gr. § 76)
PART FIRST.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS.

Lesson I.

Pronunciation and Accent.

NOTE.—Pronunciation should be taught orally by the teacher. The pronunciation of Latin is different in different countries. Among us, it usually follows one of two ways, which may be called the Roman (or Phonetic) and the English.

1. By the Roman (or Phonetic) method, every letter has always the same sound, as follows:—

VOWELS: ā as in father; ā as in fast.
ē as in rein; ē as in met.
i as in machine; į as in pin or piano.
ō as in holy; ō as in obey.
ū as in rude (oo in boot); ū as in full.

N.B.—Vowels marked thus, ā, ē, ī, ō, ū, are long; marked thus, ā, ē, ī, ō, ū, are short. A long syllable is reckoned equal to two short ones.

DIPHTHONGS: ae like ay;1œ like oy; au like ow in now.
et as in eight; eu as ow;2ui as we (oo’ee).

CONSONANTS: c and g are always hard, as in come, get.
s is always sharp, as in sea, lips.
j is like y; v like w (or v); qu as in English.
bs is like ps; ch like k; ph like f.

2. By the English method, the letters have the same sound as in English; but—

a. There are no silent letters, each word having as many syllables as there are vowels or diphthongs.

b. Final a is pronounced as in America; but in the mono-
syllables ā, dā, quā, stā, the long sound is sometimes given.

1 Particle of Affirmation. 2 As in few.
The diphthongs ae, oe, are pronounced like ee; au like aw; eu like ew; ei and ui like i in kite; es and (in plural words) os at the end of a word, as in disease, morose.

d. The consonants c and g are made soft (like s and j) before e, i, y, ae, oe, eu; ch is always hard, as in chasm, chemist.

3. The following are general Rules of Quantity:

a. A vowel before another vowel or h is short: as in via, nihil.
b. A diphthong is long: as in aeae, foedus.
c. A syllable formed by contraction is long: as, nil (nihil).
d. A syllable in which a vowel is followed by two consonants, or a double consonant (k, z), is long: as in rectus, rexit.
e. A syllable in which a short vowel is followed by a mute with l or r is common; i.e. it may be long in verse: as in alacris.

4. The following are Rules of Accent:

a. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first syllable.
b. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the Penult, if that is long: as, amicus; if it is short or common, then on the Antepenult: as, dominus, alacris.

Definition: The Penult is the last syllable but one; the Antepenult, the last but two.

Lesson 2.

The Inflection of Nouns.

1. Nouns are of three Genders, masculine (m.), feminine (f.), and neuter (n.).

a. Names of male beings, rivers, winds, and mountains are Masculine.
b. Names of female beings, cities, countries, and plants, are Feminine.
c. Neuter nouns include indeclinable nouns, terms or phrases used as nouns, and words quoted merely for their form.
d. Many names of Things—as lapis (m.), a stone, mensa (f.), a table—are masculine or feminine.
e. Nouns which may be of either gender according to sex are said to be of Common gender (c.): as, dux, leader; bos, ox or cow.
2. Nouns are declined in two Numbers, _singular_ and _plural_; and in six Cases, _nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative, ablative._

_a._ The Nominative is the case of the Subject of a sentence (see Lesson 6).

_b._ The Genitive may generally be translated by the English Possessive, or with the preposition _of._

_c._ The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object: it may usually be translated with the preposition _to_ or _for_; but sometimes corresponds to the English Objective.

_d._ The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object (see Lesson 7): it is used with most of the Latin Prepositions.

_e._ The Vocative is the case of Direct Address.

_f._ The Ablative may usually be translated with the prepositions _from, by, with, in, or at._

_g._ All the cases, except the nominative and vocative, may be used as object-cases; and are sometimes called _oblique cases._

_N.B._—The meanings and uses of the Cases, which are very numerous, will be shown in the "Constructions of Syntax" (pages 75 to 99).

3. Nouns are inflected in five Declensions, which are thus distinguished:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decl.</th>
<th>Gen. sing.</th>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>Ä</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;ë</td>
<td>&quot;ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;ës</td>
<td>&quot;ō or a Consonant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;ūs (uis)</td>
<td>&quot;ū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>&quot;ōl</td>
<td>&quot;ō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

_a._ A syllable having a signification of its own, from which that of a word is derived, is called a _Root_: thus from the root _sta_, _stand_, is derived the word _unstable_ (that which cannot stand).

_b._ The body of a word, to which the terminations are attached, is called a _Stem_: thus in _milit-ēs, of a soldier_, the stem is _milit-_.

_c._ The last letter of the stem is called the _stem-letter_ or _characteristic_; when a vowel, it is often blended with the termination: as, _currūs_ for _curru-ēs_.

_Note._—In the following Lessons, and in the Vocabularies, only long vowels are, in general, marked. Those not marked, whether or not long by position, are to be considered short or common.
Latin Method.

Lesson 3.

First Declension of Nouns.

1. Learn the inflection of stella (f.), giving the name and meaning of all the Cases, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>stellā, a (or the) star.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>stellae, of a star.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>stellae, to a star.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>stellam, a star.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocative</td>
<td>stellā, thou star!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>stellā, with a star.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. In like manner decline the following:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Athenae (f. plur.), Athens.</td>
<td>patria (f.), native-land.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cópiae (f. plur.), forces.</td>
<td>porta (f.), gate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dea (f.), goddess (a).</td>
<td>Rōma (f.), Rome (b).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filia (f.), daughter (a).</td>
<td>silva (f.), wood, forest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insula (f.), island.</td>
<td>terra (f.), earth, land.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nauta (m.), sailor.</td>
<td>via longā (f.), a long way (c).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. The dative and ablative plural of dea, filia, and a few other words, end in ābus (§ 36. c).*

b. The singular form Rōmae is used to mean at Rome; and the plural form Athēnīs to mean at Athens (2. c). These forms are called Locative (see Rule 36, p. 163).

c. Adjectives (as longa) are declined like nouns.

3. Decline the following Greek nouns:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>comet (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>comētēs (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>comētae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>comētēn (am)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>comētā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>comētā (ā)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>laurel (f.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>daphnē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>daphnēs (ae)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>daphnē (ae)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>daphnēn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>daphnē (ā)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aeneas (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aenēās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aenēae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Aenēā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anchises (m.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anchīsēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anchīsae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anchīsēn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anchīsē (ā)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. These nouns are inflected regularly in the plural.

b. Most nouns of the first declension are Feminine.

See Exercise, page 46.

* The References are to Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar.
Lesson 4.

Second Declension of Nouns.

Learn the inflection of the following: —

Singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>slave (m.)</td>
<td>servīs</td>
<td>servī</td>
<td>servō</td>
<td>servum</td>
<td>servō</td>
<td>servī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boy (m.)</td>
<td>puĕr</td>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>puerō</td>
<td>puerum</td>
<td>puerō</td>
<td>puerī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>book (m.)</td>
<td>libĕr</td>
<td>librī</td>
<td>librō</td>
<td>librūm</td>
<td>librō</td>
<td>librī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man (m.)</td>
<td>vir</td>
<td>virī</td>
<td>virō</td>
<td>virum</td>
<td>virō</td>
<td>virī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>war (n.)</td>
<td>bellum</td>
<td>bellī</td>
<td>bellō</td>
<td>bellum</td>
<td>bellē</td>
<td>bellō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>servīs</td>
<td>servīrum</td>
<td>servīs</td>
<td>servīs</td>
<td>servīs</td>
<td>servīs</td>
<td>servīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>puerōrum</td>
<td>puerīs</td>
<td>puerōs</td>
<td>puerīs</td>
<td>puerīs</td>
<td>puerīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>librī</td>
<td>librōrum</td>
<td>librīs</td>
<td>librōs</td>
<td>librīs</td>
<td>librīs</td>
<td>librīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virī</td>
<td>virōrum</td>
<td>virīs</td>
<td>virōs</td>
<td>virīs</td>
<td>virīs</td>
<td>virīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bellā</td>
<td>bellērump</td>
<td>bellē</td>
<td>bellē</td>
<td>bellē</td>
<td>bellē</td>
<td>bellē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A. Nouns of this declension ending in us, er, and ir, are masculine; those in um are neuter. (For exceptions, § 39. a, b).

B. All Latin nouns in um are declined like bellum (n.). In all neuter nouns, the nom. acc. and voc. plural end in ā.

C. Notice that nouns in us of this declension are the only Latin nouns which have the vocative different from the nominative.

D. Proper names in us, with filius, son, lose e in the vocative (so mi from meus, my): as, mi fili, my son.

E. The voc. of deus, god, is deus; the plural nom. and voc. are dei, dīi, or dī; dat. and abl. deīs, dīis, or dīs.

F. The Locative form is like the genitive in the singular: as, Corinthi, at Corinth; humili, on the ground; vesperi, at evening. In the plural it is like the ablative: as, Gabei, at Gabei.

G. A few Greek nouns end in os, on, instead of us, um. Names ending in eus (like Orpheus) are declined thus (7. a): —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Orpheus</td>
<td>Orpheus</td>
<td>Orphei</td>
<td>Orphei</td>
<td>Orphēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(or eos)</td>
<td>(or eos)</td>
<td>(or eos)</td>
<td>(or eos)</td>
<td>(or eos)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

H. Decline together servus bonus, a good slave; puer miser, unhappy boy.

See Exercise, page 46.
Lesson 5.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

Part First.

Learn the inflection of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>NOM.</th>
<th>GEN.</th>
<th>DAT.</th>
<th>ACC.</th>
<th>VOC.</th>
<th>ABL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SING.</td>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>boni</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonum</td>
<td>bonē</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FEM.</td>
<td>bonā</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonam</td>
<td>bonā</td>
<td>bonā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEUT.</td>
<td>bonum, Good</td>
<td>boni</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonum</td>
<td>bonum</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>NOM.</th>
<th>GEN.</th>
<th>DAT.</th>
<th>ACC.</th>
<th>VOC.</th>
<th>ABL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SING.</td>
<td>boni</td>
<td>bonōrum</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonōs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FEM.</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bonārum</td>
<td>bonās</td>
<td>bonās</td>
<td>bonās</td>
<td>bonās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEUT.</td>
<td>bonā</td>
<td>bonōrum</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sing. Miser, wretched.

Niger, black.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>V.</th>
<th>miser</th>
<th>misera</th>
<th>miserum</th>
<th>niger</th>
<th>nigra</th>
<th>nigrum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GEN.</td>
<td>miserī</td>
<td>miserēae</td>
<td>miserī</td>
<td>nigrī</td>
<td>nigrae</td>
<td>nigrī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT.</td>
<td>miserō</td>
<td>miserēae</td>
<td>miserō</td>
<td>nigrō</td>
<td>nigrae</td>
<td>nigrō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC.</td>
<td>miserum</td>
<td>miseram</td>
<td>miserum</td>
<td>nigrum</td>
<td>nigrum</td>
<td>nigrum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL.</td>
<td>miserō</td>
<td>miserā</td>
<td>miserō</td>
<td>nigrō</td>
<td>nigrā</td>
<td>nigrō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural of these adjectives is declined like that of bonus.

Observe that the declension of Adjectives of this form is precisely the same as that of the corresponding nouns, servus, puer, liber (m.); stella (f.); bellum (n.).

Rule. — Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

Decline together the following, making the Adjective agree with the Noun in gender, number, and case:

vir bonus, a good man; hasta valida, a strong spear;
taurus niger, a black bull; bellum longum, a long war;
servus miser, a wretched slave; filius meus, my son (d. p. 5).

Adverbs are formed from these adjectives by changing the case-ending to ē: as, validē, strongly; miserē, wretchedly.
PART SECOND.

1. Decline the singular of the following:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M.</th>
<th>P.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>unus</td>
<td>ña</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>unīus</td>
<td>ñiūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ñi</td>
<td>ñi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ñum</td>
<td>ñam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>unō</td>
<td>ñā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M.</th>
<th>P.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>alter</td>
<td>alterīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>aliūs</td>
<td>aliūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>aliī</td>
<td>aliī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>alium</td>
<td>alium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliō</td>
<td>aliā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural is declined regularly, like that of bonus.

The following are declined as above:—

alius (N. aliud), other. nullus, none. ullus, any (with negatives).
alter, other (of two). sōlus, alone. unus, one.
neuter, -trius, neither. tōtus, whole. ëter, -trius, which (of two).

Observe that these, except alius, differ from the regular declension only in the genitive and dative singular, which end in īus and ī for all the genders. In the plural, all are declined like bonus. From their signification they are rarely or never found in the vocative.

Duo, two, and ambo, both, are thus declined:—

| Nom. | duo | duae | duo |
| Gen. | duōrum | duārum | duōrum |
| Dat. | duōbus | duābus | duōbus |
| Acc. | duōs (duo) | duās | duo |
| Abl. | duōbus | duābus | duōbus |

2. Many adjectives in the singular, and most adjectives in the plural, may be used as Nouns: thus,

liber, a free man. bona, good things (property).
amicus, a friend. Latinī, the Latins.
Rōmānus, a Roman. Sabīnae, the Sabine women.

RULE.—A noun used to describe another, and denoting the same thing, agrees with it in case: as,

Homērus poēta, Homer the poet; Gabīorum oppidī, of the town Gabīi.

See Exercise, page 77.
Lesson 6.

Simple Sentence: 1. Subject and Predicate.

Definition. — The Subject of a sentence is the person or thing spoken of: the Predicate is that which is stated of the subject.

1. Every complete sentence must contain a Subject and a Verb. The Subject is in the nominative case (§ 173, 2): as,

   equus currit, the horse runs.
   regina sedet, the queen sits.

Note. — In certain constructions, a verb is put in the infinitive mood, in which case its subject becomes the accusative (Less. 21).

2. In Latin, the subject may be a personal pronoun contained in the termination of the verb itself: as,

   aro, I plough (am ploughing); sedemus, we sit; curritis, you run.

Note. — This is true, in general, only when the verb is of the first or second person. With the third person, a definite subject must be expressed, unless implied in what goes before or follows.

3. Learn the following forms of the verb esse, to be:

   **Present.**
   
   sum, I am.  sumus, we are.  
   es, thou art (you are).  estis, you are.  
   est, he (she, it) is.  sunt, they are.

   **Imperfect.**
   
   eram, I was.  eramus, we were.  
   eras, thou wast (you were).  eratis, you were.  
   erat, he (she, it) was.  erant, they were.

Upon comparing these forms, the learner will notice that the terminations are alike for each person: thus,

   **Singular** 1. -m  **Plural** 1. -mus
   2. -s  2. -tis
   3. -t  3. -nt
Rule. — The case of the Predicate, after esse, is the same with that of the Subject.

Examples.
1. Pueri sumus, we are boys.
2. Stellae lucidae erant, the stars were bright.
3. Parati non eramus, we were not ready.
4. Viri boni sunt, they are good men.
5. Roma patria est nostra, Rome is our native city.
6. Prisci Romaini erant agricolae, the early Romans were farmers.

1 This sentence may be translated they (some persons previously referred to, and implied in the termination) are good men; or, the men are good; also (considering sunt as a substantive verb), there are good men. In the first case, boni and viri are both predicate; in the second, viri is subject and boni predicate; in the third, both are in the subject.

See Exercise, page 48.

Lesson 7.

Simple Sentence: 2. Object Accusative.

Definition. — The Object of a verb is that on which its action is exerted.

Rule. — The Accusative is the case of the direct object of a transitive verb.

1. The action of many verbs (called Transitive verbs) passes over upon an object, which must be expressed to complete the sense: as,

vocat filium, he calls (his) son.

videmus luminum et stellas, we see the moon and stars.

a. With certain verbs, the genitive, dative, or ablative may be used as an object-case, where the corresponding English verbs require the objective (see p. 75).

b. Many verbs transitive in Latin are translated in English by a verb requiring a preposition (intransitive): as,

pecuniam postulo, I ask for (demand) money.

petit aprum, he aims at the boar.
2. Learn the following verb-forms of the First and Second conjugations: —

I.

voco, I call.
vocás, you call (thou callest).
vocat, he (she, it) calls.

II.

video, I see.
vidēs, you see (thou seest).
videt, he (she, it) sees.

vocāmus, we call.
vocātis, you call.
vocānt, they call.

vidēmus, we see.
vidētis, you see.
vidēnt, they see.

Upon comparing these forms, the learner will notice that the first has ā and the second ē before the terminations. These vowels are characteristic of two different conjugations called the first and second. In the first person singular, voca-o has been contracted into voco.

Like voco inflect the following: —

amo,1 love.
aro,1 plough.
dō,1 give.
juvo,1 help.

laudo,1 praise.
pugno,1 fight.

Like video inflect the following: —

doceo,2 teach.
habeo,2 have.

nocceo,2 injure.
sedeo,2 sit.

timeo,2 fear.
valeo,2 be strong.

See Exercise, page 49.

Lesson 8.

Simple Sentence: 3. Special Forms.

1. Questions. — Questions in Latin are introduced by Interrogative Pronouns, Adverbs, or Particles, and are not distinguished by the order of the words, as in English.

a. A Question of simple fact, requiring the answer yes or no, is formed in Latin by adding the syllable -ne (enclitic) to the emphatic word: as,

erāsēne Caesaris amicus? were you (in fact) Caesar’s friend?
tūne erās Caesaris amicus? were you a friend of Caesar?

Note. — Sometimes the interrogative particle is omitted, when no sign of a question appears except in the punctuation.
b. A Question asking of some circumstance about the fact is formed by prefixing to the sentence an interrogative word. Such words are—


Note. — A Question of this form becomes an exclamation by omitting the mark of interrogation, or (in speech) by changing the inflection of the voice.

c. When the syllable -ne is added to a negative word, —as nōnne,—an affirmative answer is expected. The particle num implies a negative answer: as,

nōnne erās Caesaris amicus? were you not Cæsar’s friend?
num erās Caesaris inimicus? were you an enemy of Cæsar’s?
(surely not): i.e. you were not, were you?

d. A double or alternative question is usually asked by utrum and an (see § 211. d): as, utrum amicus Caesaris an inimicus erās, were you a friend or an enemy of Cæsar?
e. There is no word in Latin meaning simply yes or no. Hence, in answering a question, the verb is generally repeated: as,

valēsne? are you well? valeo, yes (“I am well”).
aderāsne? were you there? non aedam, no.

2. Conjunctions. — Two simple sentences are often connected by Conjunctions, and make a single sentence.

a. The commonest Conjunctions are the following: —

et, and. aut, vel, or. nec (neque), nor = and not.
sed, but. -que (enclitic), and. atque (sometimes ac before a consonant), and besides.
at, but yet. quoque, also.

b. The following are often repeated in the different parts of the sentence, for the sake of distinction or emphasis: —

et or -que, both . . . and. nec or neque, neither . . . nor.
aut (vel), either . . . or (compare utrum . . . an, whether . . . or).

c. It is very common, in sentences thus made up of two or more members, to express in one part what must be understood in the rest (ellipsis): as,

C. Gracchus amicus plēbis erat, Scipionēs inimicī [plēbis erant], Caius Gracchus was a friend of the commons, the Scipios [were their] enemies.

See Exercise, page 50.
Lesson 9.
Third Declension of Nouns.

PART FIRST.

1. Decline the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>help (P.)</th>
<th>king (M.)</th>
<th>guide (C.)</th>
<th>soldier (M.)</th>
<th>head (N.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N., V.</td>
<td>[ops]</td>
<td>rex</td>
<td>dux</td>
<td>miles</td>
<td>caput</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN.</td>
<td>opis</td>
<td>regis</td>
<td>ducis</td>
<td>militis</td>
<td>capitatis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT.</td>
<td>opī</td>
<td>regī</td>
<td>ducī</td>
<td>militī</td>
<td>capitī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC.</td>
<td>opem</td>
<td>regem</td>
<td>ducem</td>
<td>militem</td>
<td>caput</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL.</td>
<td>ope</td>
<td>rege</td>
<td>duce</td>
<td>militē</td>
<td>capitē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>wealth.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N., V.</td>
<td>opēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN.</td>
<td>opum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT.</td>
<td>opibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC.</td>
<td>opēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL.</td>
<td>opibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. In like manner decline:

princeps, ipis (C.), chief.  
custōs, ōdis (M.), guard.  
aestās, ātis (P.), summer.  
apex, icīs (M.), peak.  
cōr, cordis (N.), heart.  
pōēma, atīs (N.), poem.

a. In these nouns, the Stem ends in a mute consonant.
b. The nominative singular of masculine and feminine nouns is formed by adding s to the stem; sometimes (as in miles) with a change of vowel.
c. The letter t or d is lost before s; c or g is joined with s and becomes x.
d. In Neuter nouns, the accusative is always the same as the nominative.
e. In a few Greek nouns (as lampas), the genitive singular ends in ὀς, and the accusative in α; and the accusative plural in ἄς.

Examples (for analysis).

1. Opēs¹ amplās philosophus habet.
2. Nōn est vēra voluptās sine virtūte.
3. Fāta nullae precēs commovēnt.
4. Nōn hospes ab hospite tūtus erat.

¹ The singular (meaning help) is not used in the Nominative.
PART SECOND.

1. Decline the following:

SING. consul (m.). lion (m.). maiden (f.). name (n.). body (n.):
N., V., cōnsul leo virgo nōmen corpus
GEN. cōnsulis leōnis virginis nōminis corporis
DAT. cōnsuli leōni virgini nōmini corporī
ACC. cōnsulem leōnem virginem nōmen corpus
ABL. cōnsule leōne virgine nōmine corpore

PLUR.
N., V. cōnsulēs leōnēs virginēs nōmina corpora
GEN. cōnsulum leōnum virginum nōminum corporum
DAT. cōnsulibus leōnibus virginibus nōminibus corporibus
ACC. cōnsulēs leōnēs virginēs nōmina corpora
ABL. cōnsulibus leōnibus virginibus nōminibus corporibus

2. In like manner decline:

homo, inis (m.), man. ōrātio, ōnis (f.), discourse.
mulier, eris (f.), woman. fulgur, uris (n.), lightning.
pulvis, eris (m.), dust. fulmen, inis (n.), thunderbolt.
honor (ōs), ōris (m.), honor. genus, eris (n.), race, birth.
pater, tris (m.), father. iter, itineris (n.), journey.

a. In these nouns the Stem ends in a liquid (l, n, r).
b. The nominative is the same as the stem (sometimes changing the vowel); but n in masculine and feminine nouns is dropped in the nominative, and some apparently r-stems have a (§ 48. d).
c. Nouns in o, ōnis (as leo), are Masculine. Those in io, iōnis, are also masculine in many names of visible objects, as scīpio, a staff; but when abstract or collective—as prōditio, treason; legio, legion—they are Feminine.
d. These four, imber, linter, ūter, venter, with gīs, mās, mūs, rēn, have the genitive plural in ūm (see page 14).

Examples.

1. Hominēs vāna glōriae imāgo tenet.
2. Nēmo vērē aestimat tempus.
PART THIRD.

1. Decline the following: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>tower (F.)</th>
<th>cloud (F.)</th>
<th>sea (N.)</th>
<th>animal (N.)</th>
<th>city (F.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N., V.</td>
<td>turris</td>
<td>nūbēs</td>
<td>mare</td>
<td>animal</td>
<td>urbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN.</td>
<td>turris</td>
<td>nūbis</td>
<td>maris</td>
<td>animālis</td>
<td>urbēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT.</td>
<td>turri</td>
<td>nūbi</td>
<td>mari</td>
<td>animāli</td>
<td>urbī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC.</td>
<td>turrem (im)</td>
<td>nūbem</td>
<td>mare</td>
<td>animal</td>
<td>urbem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL.</td>
<td>turre (i)</td>
<td>nūbe</td>
<td>mari</td>
<td>animāli</td>
<td>urbe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plur.

| N., V. | turris     | nūbēs     | maria    | animālia    | urbēs    |
| GEN.   | turrium    | nūbium    | marium   | animālium   | urbium   |
| DAT.   | turribus   | nūbibus   | maribus  | animālibus  | urbibus  |
| ACC.   | turris (is) | nūbēs (is) | maria    | animālia    | urbēs (is) |
| ABL.   | turribus   | nūbibus   | maribus  | animālibus  | urbibus  |

2. In like manner decline: —

| ovis, is (F.), sheep. | calcar, āris (N.), spur. |
| clādēs, is (F.), disaster. | pars, partis (F.), part. |
| imber, bris (M.), rain-storm. | mūs, mūris (M.), mouse. |

a. Nouns of this class are called vowel or i-stems. They are, 1. Those in is, ēs (mostly F.), with neuters in e, al, ar; 2. Monosyllables with stem ending in two consonants; 3. Most nouns in ns or rs, some in ās, with a few of one syllable. They are thus distinguished: —

1. All have the gen. plur. in ium; 2. Neuters have nom. and acc. plur. in ia; 3. The acc. plur. (M. or F.) is often written īr; 4. A few in the acc. sing. end in im; 5. The abl. sing. of all neuters, and of many M. or F., ends in i.

b. Masculine endings of this declension are o, or, ēs, er, ēs; feminine are ās, ēs, is, ys, x; do, go, io, ēs; neuter are a, e, i, y; c, t, l; men, ar, ur, ēs.

3. Decline the following, of peculiar inflection: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>ex, o.</th>
<th>old man, M.</th>
<th>flesh, F.</th>
<th>bone, N.</th>
<th>force, F.</th>
<th>swine, c.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N., V.</td>
<td>böös</td>
<td>sēnex</td>
<td>oarō</td>
<td>ōs</td>
<td>vis</td>
<td>sūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN.</td>
<td>bövis</td>
<td>sēnis</td>
<td>carnis</td>
<td>ossis</td>
<td>vis (rare)</td>
<td>suis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT.</td>
<td>bovi</td>
<td>seni</td>
<td>carni</td>
<td>ossi</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>sui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC.</td>
<td>bovem</td>
<td>senem</td>
<td>carnem</td>
<td>os</td>
<td>vim</td>
<td>suem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL.</td>
<td>bove</td>
<td>sene</td>
<td>carne</td>
<td>ossē</td>
<td>vi</td>
<td>sue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>cattle.</td>
<td></td>
<td>strength.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| N., A.; V. | bövēs    | senēs       | carnēs    | ossa     | virēs     | sues      |
| GEN.       | boum     | senum       | ossium    | virium   | suum      |           |
| DAT., ABL. | böbus    | senibus     | carnibus  | ossibus  | viribus   | sūbus     |

(bēbūs)

See Exercise, page 51.
Lesson 10.

Adjectives of the Third Declension.

**PART FIRST.**

**LEARN** the following inflections: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>M., F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M., F.</th>
<th>Needy.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>N.</strong></td>
<td>lēvis</td>
<td>lēve</td>
<td>ācer</td>
<td>ācris</td>
<td>ācre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>lēvis</td>
<td>levī</td>
<td>ācris</td>
<td>ācris</td>
<td>ācris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>levi</td>
<td>levī</td>
<td>ācri</td>
<td>ācri</td>
<td>ācri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>levem</td>
<td>leve</td>
<td>ācrem</td>
<td>ācrem</td>
<td>ācre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>levī</td>
<td>levī</td>
<td>ācri</td>
<td>ācri</td>
<td>ācri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>N.</strong></td>
<td>levēs</td>
<td>levia</td>
<td>ācrēs</td>
<td>ācrēs</td>
<td>ācria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>levium</td>
<td>levium</td>
<td>ācrium</td>
<td>ācrium</td>
<td>ācrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>levibus</td>
<td>levibus</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>levēs (Is)</td>
<td>levia</td>
<td>ācrēs (Is)</td>
<td>ācrēs (Is)</td>
<td>ācria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>levibus</td>
<td>levibus</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
<td>ācribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adjectives declined like *levis* are called **adjectives of two terminations**.

Twelve adjectives, —ācer, alācer, campester, celeber, equester, palāster, puter, salāber, silvestrer, terrester, volācer, with celer, celeris, celere — are declined like *levis*, except that the masculine nominative and vocative singular end in *er*. They are called **adjectives of three terminations**.

**PART SECOND.**

1. Decline the following: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>M., F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M., F.</th>
<th>Needy.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>N.</strong></td>
<td>atrōx</td>
<td>atrōx</td>
<td>egēns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>atrōcis</td>
<td>atrōcis</td>
<td>egentis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>atrōci</td>
<td>atrōci</td>
<td>egenti</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>atrōcem</td>
<td>atrōx</td>
<td>egentem</td>
<td>egēns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>atrōce or atrōci</td>
<td>atrōce</td>
<td>egente or egenti</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>N.</strong></td>
<td>atrōcēs</td>
<td>atrōcia</td>
<td>egentēs</td>
<td>egentia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>atrōcium</td>
<td>atrōcium</td>
<td>egentium</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>atrōcibus</td>
<td>atrōcibus</td>
<td>egentibus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>atrōcēs (Is)</td>
<td>atrōcia</td>
<td>egentēs (Is)</td>
<td>egentia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>atrōcibus</td>
<td>atrōcibus</td>
<td>egentibus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Latin Method.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>m., f. rich.</th>
<th>n.</th>
<th>m., f. fertile.</th>
<th>n.</th>
<th>m., f. old.</th>
<th>n.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N., V.</td>
<td>dives</td>
<td>über</td>
<td></td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN.</td>
<td>divitis</td>
<td>überis</td>
<td></td>
<td>veteris</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT.</td>
<td>divitā</td>
<td>überī</td>
<td></td>
<td>veterī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC.</td>
<td>divitem dives</td>
<td>überem</td>
<td>über</td>
<td>veteranem</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL.</td>
<td>divite (i)</td>
<td>übere (i)</td>
<td></td>
<td>veterere (i)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N., V.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. These are called adjectives of one termination, having only one form in the nominative singular.

b. When used as nouns, they have the ablative singular in e; otherwise more commonly in i.

c. Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third declension with the ending *ter* or *iter*; as, *leviter, lightly; atrōciter, fiercely.*

2. Decline the following Comparatives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>m., f. better.</th>
<th>n.</th>
<th>m., f. more.</th>
<th>n.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N., V.</td>
<td>melior</td>
<td>melius</td>
<td></td>
<td>plūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN.</td>
<td>meliōris</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>plūris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT.</td>
<td>meliōri</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC.</td>
<td>meliōrem melius</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>plūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL.</td>
<td>meliōre or ī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>plūre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N., V.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABL.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The singular *plūs* is used only as a neuter noun; the genitive (rarely ablative), as an expression of value.

b. The neut. sing. acc. of comparatives is used as an adverb: as, *levius, more lightly; atrōcius, more fiercely.*

**Examples.**

1. Viri fortēs perícula nōn timēnt.
2. Nōn omnis via brevis est facilis.
3. Custōs es pauperis hortī.

See **Exercise, page 53.**
Lesson II.

Comparison of Adjectives.

1. The Comparative is formed by adding ior, and the Superlative by adding issimus, to the stem of the positive: as,

altus, high; altior, higher; altissimus, highest.
levis, light; levior; levissimus.
atrōx, fierce; atrōrior; atrōcissimus.
egēns, needy; egēntior; egēntissimus.

N. B. If the stem ends in a vowel, this vowel is dropped before these terminations. For the inflection of comparatives, see p. 16.

a. Adjectives in er form the superlative by adding -rīmus: as,
miser, miserior, miserrimus;
ācer, ācrior, ācerrimus.

b. The following form the superlative by adding -limus: facilis, difficilis, similis, dissimilis, gracilis, humilis: as,
similis, like; similior, simillimus.

c. The following are compared irregularly: —
bonus, melior, optimus, good, better, best.
malus, pēior (pēior), pessimus, bad, worse, worst.
magnus, māior (māior), maximus, great, greater, greatest.
parvus, minor, minimus, small, smaller, smallest.
multum (n.), plūs, plūrimum, much, more, most.
multi, plūres, plūrimī, many, more, most.

For other irregular and defective forms, see Grammar, pp. 39, 40.

2. Adverbs formed from adjectives are compared as follows: —

altus, high: altē, altius, altissimē.
miser, wretched: miserē, miserius, miserrimē.
levis, light: leviter, levius, levissimē.
similis, like: similīter, similius, simillimē.
bonus, good: benē, melius, optimē.
malus, bad: malē, pēius, pessimē.

Rule. — The comparative degree may be followed by the ablative: as,

Sloquentior Cicerōne, more eloquent than Cicero.

See Exercise, page 54.
Lesson 12.

Fourth and Fifth Declensions.

1. Decline the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>hand (f.)</th>
<th>lake (m.)</th>
<th>house (f.)</th>
<th>knee (n.)</th>
<th>day (m.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N., V.</td>
<td>manus</td>
<td>lacus</td>
<td>domus</td>
<td>genu</td>
<td>dieš</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>manūs</td>
<td>lacūs</td>
<td>domūs</td>
<td>genu (ü)</td>
<td>dieī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>manuī</td>
<td>lacui</td>
<td>domuī</td>
<td>genu</td>
<td>dieī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>manum</td>
<td>lacum</td>
<td>domum</td>
<td>genu</td>
<td>diem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>manū</td>
<td>lacū</td>
<td>domō</td>
<td>genu</td>
<td>diē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PLUR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N., V.</th>
<th>manūs</th>
<th>lacūs</th>
<th>domūs</th>
<th>genua</th>
<th>dieš</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>manuum</td>
<td>lacuum</td>
<td>domōrum</td>
<td>genuum</td>
<td>dieērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>manibus</td>
<td>lacubus</td>
<td>domibus</td>
<td>genibus</td>
<td>dieēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>manūs</td>
<td>lacūs</td>
<td>domōs</td>
<td>genua</td>
<td>dieš</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>manibus</td>
<td>lacubus</td>
<td>domibus</td>
<td>genibus</td>
<td>dieēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The following nouns of the fourth declension have the dative and ablative plural in -ubus: artus, partus, portus, tribus, veru; with dissyllables in -cus (as lacus). Most in us are masculine.

b. Domus, house, has all the forms of the fourth declension; but the most usual are those given above. It has also the locative domī (sometimes domui), at home.

c. Most nouns of the Fifth Declension want the plural. The only ones complete in their inflection are dieš, day, and reš, thing. All are feminine except dieš, (generally masc.), and meridiēš (m.).

See Exercise, page 56.

Lesson 13.

Pronouns: 1. Personal and Demonstrative.

Part First.

The Personal Pronouns are thus declined:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First Person</th>
<th>Second Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ego, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>mei, of me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>mīhi, to me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>mē, me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>mē, by me</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. These are also used reflexively: as, tē laudās, you praise yourself.
b. The pronouns of the Third Person — he, she, it, they — are wanting in Latin; a demonstrative being sometimes used.

c. The Reflexive pronoun of the third person is the same in the singular and plural: viz.,

| GEN. | suī, | of himself, herself, themselves. |
| DAT. | sē, | to " " " |
| ACC. | sē or sēsē | " " " |
| ABL. | " " | with " " " |

N. B.—The Reflexive pronoun should not be confounded with the intensive ipse; thus, ipse sē laudat, he [himsel] praises himself.

d. The genitives nōstrum, vēstrum, are used partitively: as, ūnus nōstrum, one of us; while mei, tui, suī, nōstri, vēstri, are used objectively: as, memor es nōstrī, be mindful of us.

e. For the genitive of possession, the adjectives meus, tuus, suus, nōster, vēster, are always used. They may stand in apposition with a genitive in any case: as,

nōstra omnium patria, the country of us all.

f. The preposition cum, with, is joined enclitically with the ablative of the personal pronouns: as,

vōbiscum loquītur, he speaks with you.

The personal or demonstrative pronouns are in general used only for the sake of distinction or emphasis: as,

tē vocō, I call you; but —

quis mē vocat? ego tē vocō: who calls me? it is I.

PART SECOND.

The Demonstrative Pronouns are thus declined: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td>id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>hūius</td>
<td>hūius</td>
<td>hūius</td>
<td>ūius</td>
<td>ūius</td>
<td>ūius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>ei</td>
<td>ei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>eum</td>
<td>eam</td>
<td>id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>eō</td>
<td>eā</td>
<td>eō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>these.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>hī</td>
<td>hae</td>
<td>hae</td>
<td>hae</td>
<td>eae</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>hōrum</td>
<td>hārum</td>
<td>hōrum</td>
<td>eōrum</td>
<td>eārum</td>
<td>eōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>eis or iis</td>
<td>eis or iis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>hōs</td>
<td>hās</td>
<td>hae</td>
<td>eōs</td>
<td>eās</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>eis or iis</td>
<td>eis or iis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Latin Method.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ille</td>
<td>illa</td>
<td>illud</td>
<td>ipse</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>ipsius</td>
<td>ipsius</td>
<td>ipsius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>illi</td>
<td>illi</td>
<td>illi</td>
<td>ipsi</td>
<td>ipsi</td>
<td>ipsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
<td>illud</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>illō</td>
<td>illā</td>
<td>illō</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Like ille decline iste, ista, istud, that (yonder).

The Plural of these words is regular, like that of bonus: as,
illī, illae, illa, those, &c.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>the same.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>ēadem</td>
<td>ēadem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>ējudem</td>
<td>ējudem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>ēidem</td>
<td>ēidem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>ēadem</td>
<td>ēadem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The demonstrative pronouns are often used in the oblique cases as personal pronouns of the third person (see p. 19, b): as,
eum et frātreim ējudus video, I see him and his brother.

See Exercise, page 57.

Lesson 14.

Pronouns: Relative, Interrogative, &c.

1. The Relative Pronoun is thus declined: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR.</th>
<th>who, which.</th>
<th>PLURAL.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. quī</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
<td>quod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The affix -cumque (or -cunque), -soever, may be added to any relative word: as, quicumque, whoever; ubicumque, wherever; quāliscumque, of whatever sort.

b. The preposition cum is affixed to the ablative of quī as to the personal pronouns: as, quōcum, quibuscum, with whom.

c. The forms of the Relative are also Interrogative, as in English; but when used substantively, quis is used for quī, and quid for quod: as,

quis vocat? who calls? quid vīdēs? what do you see? but — quī (or quis) homo vocat? quod templum vīdēs?
2. **COMPOUNDS** of *qui* or *quīs* are thus declined:—

a. In the compounds *quidam, some one; quicumque, whoever; quīvīs, quīlibet, quīspiam, quīquam, any one;* the former part is declined like *qui* or *quīs*.

b. The compounds *aliquis, some; sīquis, if any; nēquis, lest any; ecquis, numquīs, whether any, are declined as follows:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. alīquīs alīqua</td>
<td>alīquī alīquae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. alīquīsus alīquōrum</td>
<td>alīquārum alīquōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. alīcui alīquibus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. alīquem alīquam alīquīd alīquās alīqua</td>
<td>alīquēs alīqua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. alīquō alīquā alīquō alīquibus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c. Of *quīquis, whoever,* both parts are declined; but the feminine and most plural forms are wanting.

3. **CORRELATIVES.** — Many *pairs of words,* demonstrative and relative, are used in corresponding parts of a sentence (see the lists in § 106): as,

- tantus ... quantus, *as great ... as.*
- tālis ... quālis, *such ... as.*
- tot ... quot, *as many ... as.*

**Rule.** — A Relative agrees with its Antecedent in gender and number; but its case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.

See Exercise, page 59.

---

**Lesson 15.**

**Numerals.**

The following list of Cardinal and Ordinal numbers should be gradually committed to memory:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CARDINAL</th>
<th>ORDINAL</th>
<th>ROMAN NUMERALS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. unus, ūna, ūnum, one.</td>
<td>prīmus, a, um, <em>first.</em></td>
<td>I.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. duo, duæ, duo, two.</td>
<td>secundus (alter), <em>second.</em></td>
<td>II.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. trēs, tria, three, &amp;c.</td>
<td>tertius, <em>third, &amp;c.</em></td>
<td>III.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. quattuor</td>
<td>quartus</td>
<td>IV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. quīnque</td>
<td>quintus</td>
<td>V.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. sex</td>
<td>sextus</td>
<td>VI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. septem</td>
<td>septimus</td>
<td>VII.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. octo</td>
<td>octāvus</td>
<td>VIII.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. novem</td>
<td>nōnus</td>
<td>IX.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. decem</td>
<td>decimus</td>
<td>X.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
the inflection of finus and duo will be found in Lesson 5. That of tres is like the plural of levis. The other Cardinal numbers, up to 100, are not declined; the hundreds, up to 1000, are declined like the plural of bonus.

b. Mille, a thousand, is not declined; millia (milia), thousands, is declined as a noun, like the plural of mare. Thus we say—

cum mille hominibus, with a thousand men; but—
cum duobus millibus (millibus) hominum; or,
cum bis mille hominibus, with two thousand men.

c. The following are called Distributive Numerals, and are inflected like the plural of bonus:

For the use of Distributives, see § 95.

d. The following are Numeral Adverbs:

1. semel, once.
2. bis, twice.
3. ter
4. quater
5. quinquiēs (ēns)
6. sexiēs (ēns), etc.
Lesson 16.


1. There are four Moods of the Latin verb: —

   a. The INDICATIVE is used for direct assertions or interrogations: as, vēnī, vīdī, vīcī, I came, saw, conquered.

   b. The SUBJUNCTIVE is used chiefly in commands, conditions, and dependent clauses: as, eāmus, let us go; sī adēssēs, if you were here; adsum ut videam, I am here that I may see.

   N. B. — For the special uses of the Subjunctive, see “Constructions of Syntax,” pages 99–119.

   c. The IMPERATIVE is used for exhortation or command: as, adeste puerī, come, boys! but its place is often supplied by the Subjunctive; in prohibitions, the perf. subj. is used with nē.

   d. The INFINITIVE is used chiefly as the subject or object of another verb; as, hūmānum est errāre, to err is human; volo vidēre, I wish to see; jubeo tē venire, I bid you come.

2. There are four PARTICIPLES: —

   a. The PRESENT participle ends in āns or ēns: as, vocāns, calling; legēns, reading.

   b. The FUTURE participle ends in ārus, and is used to express purpose: as, vēnit audītūrus, he came to hear. As an adjective, it expresses what is likely or about to happen: as, urbs est cāsūra, the city is about to fall.

   c. The PERFECT participle ends in tūs or sus: as, tectus, sheltered. It is chiefly used with esse to form certain tenses in the passive: as, vocātus est, he has been called, or was called.

   d. The GERUNDIVE ends in dūs, and is used in the oblique cases in such phrases as —

      pācis petendae causā, for the sake of seeking peace.

As an adjective, it expresses that which ought to be or must be done: as, dēlēnda est Karthāgo, Carthage must be destroyed.

3. The verb has also the following noun-forms: —

   a. The GERUND is a verbal noun, in dī, dō, dūm, corresponding to the English participial noun in -ING: as, loquendi causā, for the sake of speaking.

   b. The SUPINES are verbal nouns ending in um and ū, usually translated by the English infinitive: as, vēnit spectātum, he came to look; mirābile dictū, wonderful to tell.
4. There are six Tenses; three of incomplete and
three of completed action: viz.,

a. Present: as, adsum, here I am; diū aegrōto, I am [and
have long been] sick.
b. The Imperfect is used chiefly for description, or for con-
tinued or repeated action; as, dīcēbat, he said, was saying, or
used to say; mōns impendēbat, a mountain overhung.
c. Future: as, veniet, he will come.
d. The Perfect is either definite or historical: as, vocāvit,
he has called (definite); or, he called (historical).
e. Pluperfect: as, vēnerat, he had come.
f. Future Perfect: as, cum vēnero scribam, when I come
shall have come), I will write.

NOTE.—The Future and Future Perfect are wanting in the
Subjunctive; but are sometimes supplied by the future participle
with the tenses of esse.

Lesson 17.

Verbs: 2. The verb ESSE, to be.


Principal Parts: sum esse fuī futūrus


Sing. 1. sum, I am. sim, may I be!1 (I am, may or
2. ēs, thou art (you are). sis, may you be. [would be, &c.]
3. est, he (she, it) is: sit, let him be (may he be).

Plur. 1. sumus, we are. simus, let us be.
2. estis, you are. sītis, may ye be.
3. sunt, they are. sīnt, let them be (may they be).

Imperfect.

Sing. 1. eram, I was. essem, I should be:3
2. erās, you were. essēs, you would be.
3. erat, he (she, it) was. esset, he would be.

Plur. 1. erāmus, we were. essēmus, we should be.
2. erātis, you were. essētis, you would be.
3. erānt, they were. essēnt, they would be.

1. si sim, if I should be; cum sim, since I am.
2. si essem, if I were; cum essem, when (or since) I was.
3. si fuerim, if I should have been; cum fuerim, since I was.
4. si fuissem, if I had been; cum fuissem, when (or since) I had been.
Elementary Lessons.

Future.

Sing. 1. ero, I shall be. [futūrus sim]
2. eris, thou wilt be (you will be).
3. erit, he will be.

Plur. 1. erimus, we shall be.
2. eritis, you will be.
3. erunt, they will be.

Perfect.

Sing. 1. fui, I was (have been).
2. fuisti, you were.
3. fuit, he was.

Plur. 1. fuimus, we were.
2. fuistis, you were.
3. fuērunt, they were.

Pluperfect.

Sing. 1. fueram, I had been.
2. fuerās, you had been.
3. fuerat, he had been.

Plur. 1. fuerāmus, we had been.
2. fuerātis, you had been.
3. fuerānt, they had been.

Future Perfect.

Sing. 1. fuero, I shall have been.
2. fueris, you will have been.
3. fuerit, he will have been.

Plur. 1. fuerimus, we shall have been.
2. fueritis, you will have been.
3. fuerint, they will have been.

Imperative.

Present. es, be thou.
esta, be ye.

Future. esto, thou shalt be.
estōte, ye shall be.
esto, he shall be.
sunto, they shall be.

Infinitive.

Present. esse, to be.

Perfect. fuisse, to have been.

Future. fōre or futūrus esse, to be about to be.

Future Participle. futūrus, a, um, about to be.
Latin Method.

The verb esse is joined with the adjective potis, able, making the compound possum, I can (am able). It is also compounded with prō (prōd), for, in prōsum, I benefit or help, and with several other prepositions. These compounds are inflected as follows:

**Present.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDIC.</th>
<th>SUBJ.</th>
<th>INDIC.</th>
<th>SUBJ.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>possum, I can.</td>
<td>possim</td>
<td>prōsum, I help.</td>
<td>prōsim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potes, you can.</td>
<td>possis</td>
<td>prōdes</td>
<td>prōsia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potest, he can.</td>
<td>possit</td>
<td>prōdest</td>
<td>prōsit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possumus, we can.</td>
<td>possimus</td>
<td>prōsumua</td>
<td>prōsimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potestis, you can.</td>
<td>possitis</td>
<td>prōdestis</td>
<td>prōsitís</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possunt, they can.</td>
<td>possint</td>
<td>prōsunt</td>
<td>prōsint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

poteram, I could. possem prōderam prōdessem

Future.

potero, I shall be able. prōdero, I shall help.

**Perfect.**

potui, I could. potuerim prōui, I helped. prōfuerim

Pluperfect.

potueram potuissem prōfueram prōuissem

Future Perfect.

potuēro, I shall have been able. prōfuēro, I shall have helped.

**Imperative.**

prōdes, prōdesto, &c.

**Infinitive.**

Pr. posse Perf. potuisse Pr. prōdesse Perf. prōuisse

Participles.

potēns (adj.), powerful. prōfutūrus, about to help.

**Lesson 18.**

Verbs: 3. The Four Conjugations.

1. Verbs are inflected in four regular Conjugations, distinguished by the vowel before -re in the Infinitive: viz., 1. āre; 2. ēre; 3. ĕre; 4. ire.

2. The Principal Parts of the verb, from which all the others are found, are—

1. The Present Indicative; 3. The Perfect Indicative;
2. The Present Infinitive; 4. The Supine.
Elementary Lessons.

a. The regular forms of conjugation are these:
   1. amo, amāre, amāvī, amātum, to love.
   2. dēleo, dēlère, dēlēvī, dēlētum, to destroy.
   3. carpo, carpēre, carpās, carpītum, to pluck.
   4. audio, audīre, audīvī, auditum, to hear.

b. In the second conjugation, a more common form is the following (omitting ē in the perfect and supine):
   moneo, monēre, monuī, monitum, to warn.

c. The Perfect stem is sometimes the same as the present; but it is usually changed in one of the following ways:
   1. By lengthening the vowel: as, lego, lēgī; capio, cēpī.
   2. By reduplication: as, cadō, cecidī; tondeo, totondī.
   3. By adding s: as, carpo, carpās; dūco, dūxī; tego, texī.
   4. By adding u: as, domo, domuī; aperio, aperuī.
   5. By adding v (u) preceded by the vowel of conjugation (see page 10): as, amo, amāvī; audio, audīvī.

   This is found in almost all verbs of the first and fourth conjugations; but the v is often dropped and the syllable contracted:
   as, amārat, audierat, for amāverat, audīverat; amāsse, audīsse (or audīsse), for amāvisse, audīvisse.

d. The Supine stem is generally formed by adding t or s: as, dīco, dictum; cadō, cāsum; flecto, flexum (see p. 12, c).

e. The Synopsis of a verb consists of the first person singular of each tense, with infinitive and participles, given in regular order:
as of amo, I love—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(Present Stem.)</th>
<th>ACTIVE VOICE.</th>
<th>(Perfect Stem.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indic. amo, amābam, amābo</td>
<td>amāvī, amāveram, amāvero</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subj. amem, amārem</td>
<td>amāverim, amāvissem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imper. amā, amāto</td>
<td></td>
<td>amāvisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infin. amāre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PASSIVE VOICE.</th>
<th>(Supine Stem.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indic. amor, amābar, amābor</td>
<td>amātus sum, — eram, — ero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subj. amer, amārer</td>
<td>amātus sim, — essēm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imper. amāre, amātor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infin. amāri</td>
<td>amātus esse, amātum īri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particles.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Act. amāns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass. amāndus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 19.

Regular Verb; First Conjugation.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

**PRESENT.** | **INFIN.** | **PERFECT.** | **SUPINE.**
---|---|---|---

**PRINCIPAL-PARTS:** amo amāre amāvī amātūm

**INDICATIVE.**

**PRESENT,** I love, or am loving. *May I love* (see p. 24).

**SING. 1.** amo, I love. amem
2. amās, you love. amēs
3. amat, he (she, it) loves. amet

**PLUR. 1.** amāmus, we love. amēmus
2. amātis, you love. amētis
3. amānt, they love. amēnt

**IMPERFECT,** I loved (used to love). *I should love.*

**SING. 1.** amābam, I loved. amārẹm
2. amābās, you loved. amārēs
3. amābat, he loved. amāret

**PLUR. 1.** amābāmus, we loved. amārēmūs
2. amābātis, you loved. amārētis
3. amābānt, they loved. amārēnt

**FUTURE,** I shall love.

**SING. 1.** amābo, I shall love,
2. amābis, you will love.
3. amābit, he will love.

**PLUR. 1.** amābimus, we shall love.
2. amābitis, you will love.
3. amābunt, they will love.

**PERFECT,** I loved (have loved;) *I may have loved.*

**SING. 1.** amāvī, I loved. amāverim
2. amāvīstī, you loved. amāveris
3. amāvīt, he loved. amāverit

**PLUR. 1.** amāvīmus, we loved. amāverimūs
2. amāvīstis, you loved. amāveritis
3. amāvīrant (ērē), they loved. amāverint

**PLUPERFECT,** I had loved. *I should have loved.*

**SING. 1.** amāveram, I had loved. amāvissem
2. amāverās, you had loved. amāvisseēs
3. amāverat, he had loved. amāvisset

**PLUR. 1.** amāverāmus, we had loved. amāvisseēmus
2. amāverātis, you had loved. amāvisseētis
3. amāverānt, they had loved. amāvisseēnt
**Future Perfect**, *I shall have loved.*

Sing.
1. amāvero, *I shall have loved.*
2. amāveris, *you will have loved.*
3. amāverit, *he will have loved.*

Plur.
1. amāverimus, *we shall have loved.*
2. amāveritis, *you will have loved.*
3. amāverint, *they will have loved.*

**Pres.** 2. amā, *love thou.*
Fut. 2. amāto, *thou shalt love.*

**Pres.** 3. amā, *love ye.*
Fut. 3. amāte, *ye shall love.*

**Noun and Adjective Forms.**

**Infinitive.**

Present. amāre, *to love.*
Perfect. amāvisse, or amāsse, *to have loved.*
Future. amātūrus esse, *to be about to love.*

**Participles.**

Present. amāns, ãntis, *loving.*
Future. amātūrus, a, um, *about to love.*

**Gerund.**

G. amāndi, *of [the act or state of] loving.*
D. amāndō, *for loving (with adjectives).*
Ac. amāndum, *loving (with ad and inter).*
Ab. amāndō, *by loving.*

**Supine.**

Acc. amātum, *to love (with verbs of motion).*

**First Periphrastic Conjugation.**

**Indicative.**

Pres. amātūrus sum ... sim, *I am about to love.*
Imperf. amātūrus eram ... essem, *I was about to love.*
Fut. amātūrus ero
Perf. amātūrus fui ... fuerim
Plup. amātūrus fueram ... fuisse

**Second Periphrastic Conjugation.**

Pres. amāndus sum ... sim, *I am to be loved.*
Imperf. amāndus eram ... essem, *I was to be loved.*
Fut. amāndus ero
Perf. amāndus fui ... fuerim
Plup. amāndus fueram ... fuisse

See Exercise, page 60.
# Lesson 20.

Regular Verb: First Conjugation.

## 2. PASSIVE VOICE.

### Principal Parts:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amor</td>
<td>amāri</td>
<td>amātus sum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Indicative.

**Present, I am loved.**

| SING. 1. | amor, I am loved. |
| 2.       | amāris (re), you are loved. |
| 3.       | amātur, he is loved. |

**Plur. 1.**

| amāmur, we are loved. |
| 2. amāmini, you are loved. |
| 3. amāntur, they are loved. |

#### Imperfect, I was loved.

| SING. 1. | amābar, I was loved. |
| 2.       | amābāris (re), you were loved. |
| 3.       | amābātur, he was loved. |

**Plur. 1.**

| amābāmur, we were loved. |
| 2. amābāmini, you were loved. |
| 3. amābāntur, they were loved. |

#### Future, I shall be loved.

| SING. 1. | amābor, I shall be loved. |
| 2.       | amāberis (re), thou wilt (you will) be loved. |
| 3.       | amābitur, he will be loved. |

**Plur. 1.**

| amābimur, we shall be loved. |
| 2. amābimini, you will be loved. |
| 3. amābintur, they will be loved. |

#### Perfect, I was (have been) loved.

| SING. 1. | amātus sum, I was loved. |
| 2.       | amātus es, you were loved. |
| 3.       | amātus est, he was loved. |

**Plur. 1.**

| amātī sumus, we were loved. |
| 2. amātī estis, you were loved. |
| 3. amātī sunt, they were loved. |

#### Plusperfect, I had been loved.

| SING. 1. | amātus eram, I had been loved. |
| 2.       | amātus erās, you had been loved. |
| 3.       | amātus erat, he had been loved. |

**Plur. 1.**

| amātī erāmus, we had been loved. |
| 2. amātī erātis, you had been loved. |
| 3. amātī erānt, they had been loved. |
Elementary Lessons.

FUTURE PERFECT, I shall have been loved.

Sing. 1. amatus ero, I shall have been loved.
2. amatus eris, you will have been loved.
3. amatus erit, he will have been loved.

Plur. 1. amati erimus, we shall have been loved.
2. amati eritis, you will have been loved.
3. amati erunt, they will have been loved.

PASSIVE VOICE.

SINGULAR.       IMPERATIVE.       PLURAL.

Pres. 2. amare, be thou loved. amamin, be ye loved.

Fut. 2. amator, thou shalt be loved. —
3. amator, he shall be loved. amantor, they shall be loved.

Noun and Adjective Forms.

INFINITE.

Present. amari, to be loved.
Perfect. amatus esse, to have been loved.
Future. amatum iri (amatus fore), to be about to be loved.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. amatus, loved (beloved, or having been loved).
Gerundive. amandus, a, um, to-be-loved (lovely).

SUPINE.

Abl. amati, to love or to be loved (with adjectives).

a. In the tenses of completed action in the passive,—the
   perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect,—the participle (amatus, 
   &c.) is treated as an adjective, agreeing in gender and number with
   the subject of the verb: as,

   bellum paratum est, war has been prepared.
   Galli domiti erant, the Gauls had been subdued.
   navea depressea sunt, the ships were sunk.

b. In the passive construction, the object of the action becomes
   subject, while the subject (or agent), if a person, or treated as a
   person (personified), is put in the ablative with the preposition a
   or
   ab, by; if not a person, in the ablative alone: as,
   Caesar domuit Gallos, Caesar subdued the Gauls;
   Galli a Caesare domiti sunt, the Gauls were subdued by Caesar;
   famae necat hominés, hunger destroys men;
   hominés famae necantur, men are destroyed by hunger.

c. An Intransitive verb may be used impersonally, in the third
   person singular of the passive: as,

   pugnatum est, there was fighting; lit. it [a battle] was fought.

See Exercise, page 62.
Lesson 21.

Regular Verb: First Conjugation.

3. NOUN AND ADJECTIVE FORMS.

1. The following are the uses of the Infinitive:—

a. The Infinitive is used with verbs where the sense would be incomplete without another action of the same subject: as,
   consilia non possum mutare, I cannot change [my] plans.
   Such verbs are to be able, dare, begin, cease, wish, and the like.

b. The Infinitive is used like the nominative of a neuter noun, in such sentences as—
   scribere est utile, to write (writing) is useful.

c. It is used like the accusative of a neuter noun, in such sentences as—
   hostes parant expugnare oppidum, the enemy prepare to
   storm the town.

d. In either of these uses, it may take as subject the accusative of a noun or pronoun: as,
   senem saltare indecorum est, for an old man to dance is
   unbecoming.

   video tē esse claudum, I see that you are lame.

Here the object of video, i.e. the thing seen, is really the sub-
stantive clause tē esse claudum, not the simple accusative tē.

Rule.—The infinitive with subject-accusative is
used with verbs or other expressions of knowing,
thinking, telling, or perceiving: as,

rūmor erat Catilinam servōs armāsse, there was a report
that Catiline had armed the slaves (see page 114. a).

2. The following are special participial uses:—

a. The participle is often used to describe some circumstance: as,
   arāntem L. Quinctium lēgātī salūtāvērunt, the envoys salu-
   ted Lucius Quinctius while ploughing (at the plough).

b. A noun and participle are used together in the ablative to de-
   fine the time or circumstances of an action (ablative absolute): as,
   hostibus fugātīs Caesar suōs revocāvit, when the enemy
   were put to flight, Caesar called back his men (see p. 121).

For the Participles, Gerund, and Supine, see page 23. 2, 3.

See Exercise, page 63.
Lesson 22.

Regular Verb: Second Conjugation.

Principal Parts: Act. *moneo* monēre monui monitum
Pass. moneor monērī monitus sum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Indic.</th>
<th>Passive</th>
<th>Subj.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>moneo,</em> I warn</td>
<td>moneam</td>
<td>moneor</td>
<td>monear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>monēs,</em> you warn</td>
<td>monēs</td>
<td>monēris (re)</td>
<td>monēaris (re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>monēt,</em> he warns</td>
<td>monēat</td>
<td>monētur</td>
<td>monēatur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēmus</td>
<td>moneāmus</td>
<td>monēmur</td>
<td>moneāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monētis</td>
<td>moneātis</td>
<td>monēmini</td>
<td>moneāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēnt</td>
<td>moneānt</td>
<td>monēntur</td>
<td>moneāntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect, I warned (was warning).** I was warned.

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbam</td>
<td>monērem</td>
<td>monēbar</td>
<td>monērer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbas</td>
<td>monērēs</td>
<td>monēbāris (re)</td>
<td>monērēris (re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbat</td>
<td>monēret</td>
<td>monēbātur</td>
<td>monērētur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbāmus</td>
<td>monērēmus</td>
<td>monēbāmur</td>
<td>monērēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbātis</td>
<td>monērētis</td>
<td>monēbāmini</td>
<td>monērēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbānt</td>
<td>monērēnt</td>
<td>monēbāntur</td>
<td>monērēntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future, I shall warn.** I shall be warned.

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbo</td>
<td></td>
<td>monēbor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbis</td>
<td></td>
<td>monēberis (re)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbit</td>
<td></td>
<td>monēbitur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbimua</td>
<td></td>
<td>monēbimur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbitis</td>
<td></td>
<td>monēbimini</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbunt</td>
<td></td>
<td>monēbuntur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect, I warned (have warned).** I was (have been) warned.

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monui</td>
<td>monuerim</td>
<td>monitus sum</td>
<td>monitus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuisti</td>
<td>monueris</td>
<td>monitus es</td>
<td>monitus sia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuit</td>
<td>monuerit</td>
<td>monitus est</td>
<td>monitus sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuimus</td>
<td>monuerimus</td>
<td>moniti sumus</td>
<td>moniti simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuistis</td>
<td>monueritis</td>
<td>moniti estis</td>
<td>moniti sitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerunt (re)</td>
<td>monuerint</td>
<td>moniti sunt</td>
<td>moniti sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect, I had warned.** I had been warned.

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monueram</td>
<td>monuissem</td>
<td>monitus eram</td>
<td>monitus essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerās</td>
<td>monuiessēs</td>
<td>monitus erās</td>
<td>monitus essēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerat</td>
<td>monuiesset</td>
<td>monitus erat</td>
<td>monitus esset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerāmus</td>
<td>monuiessēmus</td>
<td>moniti erāmus</td>
<td>moniti essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerātis</td>
<td>monuiessētis</td>
<td>moniti erātis</td>
<td>moniti essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerānt</td>
<td>monuiessēnt</td>
<td>moniti erānt</td>
<td>moniti essēnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fut. Perf., I shall have warned.** I shall have been warned.

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monuer</td>
<td></td>
<td>monitus ero</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monueris</td>
<td></td>
<td>monitus erīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerit</td>
<td></td>
<td>monitus erīt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerimus</td>
<td></td>
<td>moniti erimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monueritis</td>
<td></td>
<td>moniti eritis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monuerint</td>
<td></td>
<td>moniti erunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Latin Method.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing.</td>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>Sing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pr. monē, warn.</td>
<td>monēte</td>
<td>monēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. monēto</td>
<td>monētōte</td>
<td>monētor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. monēto</td>
<td>monēntōte</td>
<td>monēntor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Passive.**

Pr. monēmini

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pr. monēre</td>
<td>Pf. monuisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. monitūrus esse</td>
<td>F. monitum īri (monitus fore)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Participles.**

Pr. monēns | Fut. monitūrus | Pf. monitus | Ger. monēndus |
| G. monēndi, dō, dum | Sup. monitum | monītū |

See Exercise, page 65.

---

**Lesson 23.**

Regular Verb: Third Conjugation.

**Principal Parts:** Act. tego tegēre texī tectum
Pass. tegor tegī tectus sum

**Indic. Active. Subj.**

Pres., I cover.

| tego, I cover. | tegam | tegor | tegar |
| tegis, you cover. | tegās | tegeris (re) | tegāris (re) |
| tegit, he covers. | tegat | tegitur | tegātur |
| tegimus, we cover. | tegāmus | tegimur | tegāmur |
| tegitis, you cover. | tegātis | tegimini | tegāmini |
| tegunt, they cover. | tegānt | teguntur | tegāntur |

**Imp., I covered (was covering). I was covered (covering myself).**

| tegēbam | tegerem | tegēbar | tegerēr |
| tegēbās | tegērēs | tegēbāris (re) | tegērēris (re) |
| tegēbat | tegēret | tegēbātur | tegērētur |
| tegēbāmus | tegērēmus | tegēbāmur | tegērēmur |
| tegēbātis | tegērētis | tegēbāmini | tegērēmini |
| tegēbānt | tegērēnt | tegēbāntur | tegērēntur |

**Fut., I shall cover. I shall be covered.**

Fut., I covered (have covered). I was (have been) covered.

| texī | texerim | tectus sum | tectus sim |
| texistī | texeris | tectus es | tectus sit |
| texit | texerit | tectus est | tectus sit |
| teximus | texerimus | tectī sumus | tectī simus |
| texistis | texerītis | tectī estis | tectī sitis |
| texērunt (re) | texerint | tectī sunt | tectī sint |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| Plup., I had covered. | I had been covered. |
| texeram | texissēm | tectus eram | tectus essem |
| texerās | texissēs | tectus erās | tectus essēs |
| texerat | texisset | tectus erat | tectus esset |
| texerāmus | texissēmus | tectī erāmus | tectī essēmus |
| texerātis | texissētis | tectī erātis | tectī essētis |
| texerānt | texissēnt | tectī erānt | tectī essēnt |

**Fut. Perf., I shall have covered.** I shall have been covered.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>texero</th>
<th>tectus ero</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>texeris</td>
<td>tectus eris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>texerit</td>
<td>tectus erit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>texerīmus</td>
<td>tectī erīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>texeritis</td>
<td>tectī erītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>texerint</td>
<td>tectī erint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperat. Sing.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pr. 2.</th>
<th>Pres. tegī</th>
<th>Pf. tectus esse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tegere</td>
<td>tegere</td>
<td>tegimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tegito</td>
<td>tegitor</td>
<td>tegimini</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fut. 3.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tegito</th>
<th>tegundo</th>
<th>tegutor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Infin.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tegere</td>
<td>texisse</td>
<td>tegī</td>
<td>tectus esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fut.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tectūrus</th>
<th>esse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tectum</td>
<td>irī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Part. Pr.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tegēns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tectūrus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ger.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tegendi, -dō, -dum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sup.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Verbs in io.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>capio, capere, cēpi, captum</th>
<th>capior, capī, captus sum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Pr.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>capio, I take.</th>
<th>capiam</th>
<th>capior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capis</td>
<td>capiaś</td>
<td>caperis (re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capit</td>
<td>capiat</td>
<td>capitur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitāmus</td>
<td>capitāmus</td>
<td>capīmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitātis</td>
<td>capitātis</td>
<td>capīminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiunt</td>
<td>capitānt</td>
<td>capiuntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imp.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>capiēbam</th>
<th>caperem</th>
<th>capiēbar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiam</td>
<td>caperem</td>
<td>caperer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fut.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>capiam, iēs, iet, &amp;c.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiar, iēris (re), &amp;c.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perf.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cēpi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**F. P.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cēpero</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>captus ero</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperat.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>capere</th>
<th>captus sum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capere</td>
<td>captus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capete</td>
<td>capere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capito</td>
<td>capitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitōte</td>
<td>capitor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imp. Pr.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>capere</th>
<th>captus sum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capi</td>
<td>captus esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fut.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>captērus</th>
<th>esse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>captum</td>
<td>irī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Part.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>capiēns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>captūrus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Ger.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>capiendī, dō, dum</th>
<th>Sup.</th>
<th>captum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiendī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See Exercise, page 66.
**Lesson 24.**

Regular Verb: Fourth Conjugation.

**Principal Parts:**
- Act. audio audire audivi auditum
- Pass. audior audiri auditus sum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres., I hear.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audio, I hear.</td>
<td>audiam</td>
<td>audior</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audis, you hear.</td>
<td>audias</td>
<td>audiäris (re)</td>
<td>audiäris (re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit, he hears.</td>
<td>audiat</td>
<td>auditur</td>
<td>audiätur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditus, we hear.</td>
<td>audiämus</td>
<td>audiämur</td>
<td>audiämur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditis, you hear.</td>
<td>audiätis</td>
<td>audiämmini</td>
<td>audiämmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditunt, they hear.</td>
<td>audiänt</td>
<td>audiuntur</td>
<td>audiäntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperf., I heard (was hearing).**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiëbam</td>
<td>audirem</td>
<td>audiëbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiëbas</td>
<td>audiërës</td>
<td>audiërëris (re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiëbat</td>
<td>audiret</td>
<td>audiëätur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiëbamus</td>
<td>audiërëmus</td>
<td>audiëämur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiëbätis</td>
<td>audiërëtis</td>
<td>audiëämmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiëbänt</td>
<td>audiëront</td>
<td>audiëätur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fut., I shall hear.**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audëis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiëmus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiëtis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiënt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perf., I heard (have heard).**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audivälaudivëlis</td>
<td>audiërëmis</td>
<td>auditor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivëtis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivërnit (re)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plup., I had heard.**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audivëram</td>
<td>audivëssem</td>
<td>auditus sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivëras</td>
<td>audivësès</td>
<td>auditus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivërat</td>
<td>audivësset</td>
<td>auditus sïs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivëramus</td>
<td>audivësèmes</td>
<td>auditus est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivëtis</td>
<td>audivësêtis</td>
<td>auditus sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivënt</td>
<td>audivësënt</td>
<td>auditus sim</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fut. Perf., I shall have heard.**

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audivëro</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivëris</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivërit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivërimus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivëritis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audivërint</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I am heard.
I was heard.
I shall be heard.
I was (have been) heard.
I had been heard.
I shall have been heard.
Lesson 25.

Deponent Verbs.

1. Deponent Verbs have the form of the Passive Voice, with an active or reflexive signification: as,

1. mírōr, mírāri, mírātus, admire;
2. vereor, verēri, veritus, fear;
3. sequor, sequī, secūtus, follow;
4. potior, potīri, potītus, possess.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. mírōr
Imp’t. mīrābar
Fut. mīrābor
Perf. mīrātus sum
Plup. mīrātus eram
F. P. mīrātus ero

vèreor vèrebar vèrēbor vèritus sum vèritus eram vèritus ero
sequor sequēbar sequar secūtus sum secūtus eram secūtus ero

potior potiēbar potiār potitus sum potitus eram potitus ero

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. mìrer
Imp’t. mìrārēr
Perf. mìrātus sim
Plup. mìrātus essem
Imp. mìrāre, ētor
Infin. mìrāri

verēr verērēr vèritus sim vèritus essem
vère, ētor

sequar sequerer secūtus sim secūtus essem
sequere, ētor

potiar potiēr potitus sim potitus essem
potiē potiār

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. mìrāns
Fut. mìrātūrūs
Perf. mìrātus
Ger. mìrāndus

verēns verētūrūs veritus verēndus
sequēns secūtūrūs secūtus sequendus

potiēns potitūrūs potitus potiēndus
a. Deponents have the participles of both voices; as, sequēns, following; secūtūrus, about to follow; secūtus, having followed; sequendus, to-be-followed.

b. The future infinitive is always to be given in the active form: thus of sequor it is secūtūrus esse, not secūtum īri.

c. The gerundive, being passive in meaning, is found only in transitive verbs, or neuter verbs used impersonally: as, potienda est tellūs, the land must be won; moriendum est omnibus, all must die.

d. The perfect participle is sometimes also passive: as, mercātus, bought; adeptus, gained (or, having gained).

e. The following verbs have no perfect active, but form the perfect, &c., like deponents, and are called semi-deponents:

audeo, ausus, dare; gaudeo, gāvisus, rejoice;
fidō, fisus, trust; soleo, solitus, be accustomed.

See Exercise, page 70.

Lesson 26.

Irregular and Defective Verbs.

Part First.

Several verbs are irregular in the tenses of the present stem. The most common of these are —

1. volo, velle, volui, to wish.
2. nōlo (nōn volo), nōlle, nōlui, to be unwilling.
3. mālo (magis volo), mālle, mālui, to wish rather.

These three are inflected as follows: —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volo</td>
<td>velim</td>
<td>nōlo</td>
<td>nōlim</td>
<td>mālo</td>
<td>mālim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vis</td>
<td>velis</td>
<td>nōnvis</td>
<td>nōlis</td>
<td>māvis</td>
<td>mālis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vult</td>
<td>velit</td>
<td>nōnvult</td>
<td>nōlit</td>
<td>māvult</td>
<td>mālit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volumus</td>
<td>velimus</td>
<td>nōlumus</td>
<td>nōlimus</td>
<td>mālumus</td>
<td>mālimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vultis</td>
<td>velitis</td>
<td>nōnvultis</td>
<td>nōlitis</td>
<td>māvultis</td>
<td>mālitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volunt</td>
<td>velint</td>
<td>nōlunt</td>
<td>nōlint</td>
<td>mālunt</td>
<td>māllint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volēbam</td>
<td>velēm</td>
<td>nōlēbam</td>
<td>nōlēm</td>
<td>mālēbam</td>
<td>mālēm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volam</td>
<td>nōlam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mālam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volui</td>
<td>-erim</td>
<td>nōlui</td>
<td>-erim</td>
<td>mālui</td>
<td>-erim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volueram</td>
<td>-issem</td>
<td>nōlueram</td>
<td>-issem</td>
<td>mālueram</td>
<td>-issem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Perfect.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voluerō</td>
<td>nōluerō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>māluerō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Elementary Lessons.

IMPERATIVE.

nōli, nōlitā, do not.
nōlitō, nōlitōte, thou shalt not, ye shall not.
nōlito, nōluntō, he shall not, they shall not.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. velle voluiisse nōlle nōluisse mālle māluisse

PARTICIPE.

Present. volēns, willing. nōlēns, unwilling.
Gerund. volendi, volendō nōlendi

4. fero, ferre, tuli, lātum,* to bear.

INDIC. ACTIVE. SUBJ.

Pres. fero feram feror ferar
fertfert frett fertur
ferimussēnas fērmussēna
ferītīs fērmītīs fērmīnī fērmīnī
ferunt ferānt feruntur ferāntur

IMPERF. ferēbam ferarem ferēbar ferrer

FUTURE. feram ferar

PERFECT. tuli tulerim lātus sum lātus sim
Pluperf. tuleram tulissem lātus eram lātus essem
F. Perf. tulofer evo

Imper. Pr. fer ferte ferre feriminī
Fut. ferto fertōte fertor
ferunt feruntor

INFIN. ferre, tulisse, lātūrus esse

PART. ferēns, lātūrus

lātus, ferendus

5. eo, ire, īvī (īi), itum, to go.

Ind., Pres. S. eo, īs, īt Subj. eam, ēās, eat
P. īmus, ītīs, ēunt eāmus, ēātīs, ēānt
Im. ībam, ībās, ībat īrem, īrēs, īret
Fut. ībo, ībis, ībit īverim (īerim)
Perf. īvi (īi) īvissem (īssēm)
Plup. īveram (īeram)
Fut. P. īvero

Imperat. i, īto; īte, ītōte, eunto

Infin. Pres. īre Perf. īvisse (īsse)
Part. Pres. īrens, euntīs Fut. ītūrus

6. fieri, factus: † used as passive of facio, to make.

Pres. S. fieri, fit fiam, fiās, fiat
P. fimus, fitīs, fitunt fiāmus, fiātīs, fiānt
Im. fierībam fierem
Fut. fieri, fiēs, &c.

* Regular of 3d Conjugation, omitting the connecting vowel in fers, &c.
† Regular of 4th Conjugation, except fieri and fierem.
Latin Method.

PERF. factus sum factus sim
PLUP. factus eram factus essem
FUT. P. factus ero
IMPERAT. fi, fite; fito, fitote, fiunto
INFIN. PRES. fieri PERF. factus esse
PART. PERF. factus GER. faciendus

PART SECOND.

1. The following verbs are defective —

a. coepi, I began (for the present, use incipio; and with the passive infinitive, the form coeptus sum).

b. odio, I hate, with the participles osus, osurus.

c. memini, I remember; imperative memento.
The above are found only in the tenses of the Perfect.

d. aio, I say, ais, ait, aiunt, aiëbam, etc.

e. inquam, said I; inquit, said he (only in quotations). A few other forms are rarely used.

f. queo, I can; nequeo (or non queo), I cannot. These are inflected like eo, ire; but only a few of their forms are in use.

For other forms of defectives, see Gr. § 144.

2. The following are Impersonal: —

a. pluit, it rains; grandinat, it hails; ningit, it snows; fulgurat, it lightens.

b. miseret, it grieves; paenitet, it repents; piget, it disgusts; pudet, it shames; taedet, it wearies. These take an accusative of the person with a genitive or infinitive: as,

miseret me tui, I pity you;
paenitet me hoc fecisse, I repent of having done this.

c. libet, it pleases; licet, it is allowed, used with the dative of the person: as, licet mihi loqui, I am permitted to speak; also oportet, there is need: as, oportet me scribere, I must write. These have the regular synopsis in the third person: as, licet, licebat, licēbit, licuit, &c.; also libitum and licitum est, &c.

d. The third person passive of intransitive verbs (see Lesson 20): as, pugnātur, there is fighting; mihi invidētur, I am envied.

e. Several verbs are used impersonally in special meanings: as, certum est, it is resolved; constat, it is clear; placet, vidētur, it seems good; decent, it is becoming; praestat, it is better; interest, refert, it concerns (with genitive); vacat, there is leisure; with verbs of happening and the like.

See Exercise, page 72.
Lesson 27.

Particles.

1. The regular Adverbs of manner are formed from Adjectives, as follows:—

   a. Adjectives of the first and second declensions (ending in us or er) form the adverb in ē: as,
      callidus (cunning), callidē; dexter (skilful), dextrē.
   b. Those of the third declension form the adverb in -ter: as,
      fortis (brave), fortiter; prūdens (prudent), prūdenter.
   c. Many case forms of adjectives are used as adverbs: as,
      multum, much; falsē, falsely; rectē, straightway.
      For the comparison of adverbs, see Lesson 11; for their classification, see Gr. § 149.

2. The more common prepositions in the following lists should be committed to memory:—

   a. The following Prepositions require the accusative:—

      ad, to.                 ergā, towards.                 post, after.
      adversus, or           extrā, outside.                 prāster, beyond.
      adversum, towards.     infrā, below.                 prope, near.
      ante, before.          inter, among.                 propter, on account of.
      apud, at, near.        intrā, inside.                 secundum, next to.
      circā, or              juxtā, near.                 suprā, above.
      circum, around.        ob, on account of.               trāns, across.
      circiter, about.       penes, in the power.            ultrā, on the farther side.
      cis, cītra, this side. per, through.                 versus, towards.
      contrā, against.       pōne, behind.

   b. The following require the ablative:—

      ā, ab, abs, from, by.    ē, ex, out of.                 praē, in comparison with.
      absque, but for, without. prō, in front of, for.
      cūram, in presence of.  sine, without.                 tenus, up to, or as far as.
      cum, with.              dē, from.

   c. The following may take either case:—

      in, into, in; sub, under; subter, beneath; super, above.
      In and sub, when followed by the Accusative, signify motion to,
      when by the Ablative, rest in, a place.
Lesson 28.

Formation of Words: 1. Verb Stems.

1. The parts of a word which most commonly determine its meaning are: 1. the Root; 2. the significant ending found in the Stem; 3. the Inflection; 4. (in compounds) the Prefix.

For example, the noun flūmen, river, is formed from the root FLU, flow, and the termination men, denoting act, means, or result. In the verb conjēcerat, he had hurled, we find: 1. the root JAC, throw (lengthened in the perfect to jēc); 2. the inflectional ending erat of the pluperfect third person (being the imperfect of esse added to the perfect stem); 3. the prefix con, signifying here the force or vigor of an action.

Note. — Many words (as most Particles) are primitive; and many others, though derivative, are simple, and do not apparently come under the rules of derivation.

2. The Root gives a word its radical meaning. Roots consist of a single syllable, and have a short vowel. Verb-stems are formed from roots in one of the following ways:

1. By lengthening the vowel: as, DIC, dīco.
2. By reduplication: as, GEN, gigno; STA, sīsto.
3. By inserting m or n: as, CUB, -cumbo; FID, findo.
4. By adding d or n: as, TEN, tendo; TEM, temno.
5. By doubling final l or r: as, FAL, fallo; VER, verro.
7. By adding t: as, MIT, mitto; PEC, pecto.
8. By adding a vowel: as, JAC, jacio; CAP, capio.

N. B. — The added vowel, a, e, i, becomes the vowel of conjugation (characteristic or connecting vowel) in amo (= ameo), moneo, audio.

For the formation of the Perfect and Supine stems, see Lesson 18.

3. Give the principal parts of the verbs which follow (consulting the Vocabulary), tracing the formation of the different stems from the root, and comparing the appended derivatives:
N. B. — The small figures 1, 2, 3, 4, represent the conjugations.

1. voco¹ (VOC), call; vox, voice.
2. seco¹ (SEC), cut; segmentum, slice.
3. do¹ (DA), give; donum, gift.
4. augeo² (AUG), increase; augustus, augst.
5. suādeo⁴ (SVAD), make pleasant; suavis, sweet.
6. cadο³ (CAD), fall; cāsus, accident.
7. sisto³ (STA), stand (compare sto, stāre).
8. nosco³ (GNO), know; nōmen, name.
9. crē-do³ (DHA), trust (place confidence).
10. finio⁴ (from fini-, stem of finis), end.
11. sali-⁴ (SAL), leap; salto, dance.
12. eo (1), go (compare ven-eo, to be sold); iter, way.

Lesson 20.

Formation of Words: 2. Nouns and Adjectives.

1. The following are some of the more important significant endings: —

   1. tor (M.), trix (F.), DOER or AGENT: as, arātor, ploughman; victrix, she that conquers.
   This form is often used as an adjective: as, victor exercitus, a victorious army; victricia arma, conquering arms.
   2. men, mentum, bulum, culum (N.), MEANS: as, tegmen, covering; frumentum, corn (fruor, enjoy).
   3. ulus (olus, ellus), a, um, DIMINUTIVE: as, rīvulus, a brook; filiulus, a little son; capella, a she-goat; mūnusculum, a trifling gift; catellus, a young puppy (catulus).
   4. äx, idus, bundus, ACTIVE VERBAL: as, pugnāx, apt to fight; lūcidus, skining; vagābundus, wandering.
   5. ilis, bilis, ivus, mnus, PASSIVE VERBAL: as, fragilis, frail (frango); nōbilis, well-known (nōsco); captīvus, prisoner (of war); alumnus (alo), foster-child.
   6. ia, io, tās, tūdo (F.), QUALITY: as, prūdentia, prudence; caritās, dearness; laūtūdo, breadth.
   7. ālis, āris, ārius, ācius, ilis (adj.), BELONGING TO: militāris, of a soldier; hostilis, of the enemy; ovīle, sheep-fold; būβile (N.), a stall for cattle; argentārius, silversmith or money-lender.
   8. eus, āceus, ēs, ilus, denoting MATERIAL or ABUNDANCE: as, aureus, golden; aerumnōsus, full of grief.
Latin Method.

9. ium, ētum, office or group: as, servitium, slavery, or the servile class; quercētum, oak-forest.
10. ātus, ītus, ētus, participial: as, galeātus, helmeted; aurītus, long-eared; cornūtus, having horns.
11. idēs, adēs, (M.), as, īs, ēs (F.), patronymic: as, Priamidēs, son of Priam; Tyndarēs, daughter of Tyndarēs.
12. ānus, ēnsis, patrrial: as, Romānus, Roman; Athēniēnsis, Athenian.

2. Give the meaning of the following derivatives, as shown by the termination: —

1. vēnātrix: vēnor, hunt. 15. facilis: facio, to do.
2. nūbīlis: nūbēs, cloud. 16. edāx: edo, to eat.
5. flāmen: flo, to blow. 19. arbustum: arbor, tree.
8. moribundus: morior, to die. 22. civīlis: civis, citizen.
10. calidus: caleo, to be hot. 24. nōdōsus: nōdus, knot.
11. fortitūdo: fortis, brave. 25. absentia: absēns, absent.

Lesson 30.

Formation of Words: 3. Derivatives and Compounds.

1. The following are the forms of the derivative verbs: —

1. sco (inceptive or inchoative), beginning: as, floresco, to put forth flowers; calesco, to grow warm.
2. esso, isso (intensive), attempt: as, capesso, lay hold on; facesso, to do (with energy); petissō, seek (eagerly).
3. to, ito (intensive, frequentative), force or repetition: as, jacto, to hurl; dictito, to keep on saying.
4. illo (diminutive), futility: as, cantillo, to chirp or warble.
5. urio (desiderative), desire: as, ēsurio, I am hungry (from edo, cat). [The last three are added to the Supine stem.]
6. Many verbs of the first conjugation are formed from nouns or adjectives: as, milita, to serve as a soldier; caeco, to make blind; vigilo, to keep watch; dominor, to be master, or tyrant.

2. Compounds are formed in two ways:—

a. By joining two or more words in one, each retaining its own meaning: as, armiger, armor-bearer; maledico, to speak ill; magnanimus, great-hearted; tubicen (tuba, cano), trumpeter; multiformis, of many shapes; suovetaurilia (suis, ovis, taurus), a ceremony including the sacrifice of a hog, a sheep, and a bull.

b. By prefixing a Particle: most frequently a Preposition to a Verb. The meaning of the most common prefixes is seen in the following:—

1. ā, ab, away: as, aufero (abfero), take away.
2. ad, to, towards: as, affero (adfero), bring.
3. ante, before: as, antefero, prefer; antecello, excel.
4. circum, around: as, circumfino, fortify completely.
5. con, together or forcibly: as, confero, bring together; colloco, to set firm.
6. dē, down, utterly: as, dēspicio, despise (look down on); dēstruo, destroy.
7. di or dis, asunder: as, diduco, draw apart; disjungo, unbind.
8 ē, ex, out: as, effero (ecfero), carry forth, uplift.
9. in (with nouns or adjectives), not: as, infinitus, boundless.
10. in (with verbs), in, on, against: as, inferro, bear against.
11. inter, between, to pieces: as, interrumpo, interrupt.
12. ne, nec, not: as, nequeo, cannot; necopinatus, unlooked for.
13. ob, towards, to meet: as, offero, offer; obvenio, meet.
14. per, prae, very: as, permagnus, very great; praecarius, glorious.
15. por, forward: as, porrectus, outstretched.
16. re, red, back, again: as, referro, report; redeo, return.
17. sē, apart: as, separo, separate; secerno, put aside.
18. sub, under, in low degree: as, subdolus, crafty; substruo, build beneath.
19. super, upon, over and above: as, superfluo, overflow; superstes, a survivor.

See Examples, pp. 126–128.
PARALLEL EXERCISES
ON THE FOREGOING LESSONS.

Lesson 3.
First Declension of Nouns.

Vocabulary.

ä or ab, from (with abl.).
ad, to (with acc.).
oum, with (with abl.).
ē or ex, out of (with abl.).
āla, ae (f.), wing.
aquila, ae (f.), eagle.

et or -que, and; sed, but; nōn, not.

Translate into English.


Write in Latin.


1 Genitive: observe that "queen's" is the same as "of the queen."

Lesson 4.
Second Declension of Nouns.

Vocabulary.

argentum, i (n.), silver.
ager, gri (m.), field.
folium, i (n.), leaf.
hortus, i (m.), garden.
multum, i (n.), much.
mūrus, i (m.), wall.
oculus, i (m.), eye.
somnum, i (m.), sleep.
taurus, i (m.), bull.
templum, i (n.), temple.
Translate into English.


Write in Latin.

1. In the gardens. — 7. Into the town.
2. Into the master’s fields. — 8. To the walls of the town.
3. The queen’s slaves. — 9. Among the leaves of the forest.
4. The walls of Rome.
5. In the wars of the Romans. ² 10. In the temples of the gods.

1 Words of Quantity, as much, more, less, are in Latin used with the genitive: thus, much silver is much (a great deal) of silver. — ² Rōmānus.

Lesson 5.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

Vocabulary.

collum, i (N.), neck.
pōmum, i (N.), apple, fruit.
socius, i (M.), companion.
tenebrae, ārum (P.), gloom.
noster, tra, trum, our.

angustus, a, um, narrow.
fūnestus, a, um, fatal.
mātūrus, a, um, ripe.
sanctus, a, um, holy.
pulcher,¹ ² crā, crum, beautiful.

Translate into English.


¹ Later and commoner form, pulcher.
² deus: see page 5. e.
Latin Method.

Write in Latin.

1. My friend (voc.).
2. The long neck of the swan.
3. Many gifts in the temples of the gods.
4. Ripe apples in the master's garden.
5. Shadows of the dense forests.
6. A long way through fields and forests.
7. Italy our native-land.
8. Seven black bulls (acc.).

1 septem.

Lesson 6.

Simple Sentence: 1. Subject and Predicate.

Vocabulary.

ancōra, ae (F.), anchor.
cōnstantia, ae (F.), firmness.
dominus, i (M.), master, lord.
sōlātium, i (N.), comfort.
acūtus, a, um, keen.
apertus, a, um, open.
arduus, a, um, difficult.
curvus, a, um, crooked.
fidus, a, um, faithful.
serēnus, a, um, clear, still.

Translate into English.


Fable.

In prātō erant trēs bovēs in maximā concordiā. Sed dissidiō inter eōs ortō, singulī ā feris petīti et laniātī sunt.

Write in Latin.

1. The son of Aeneas was Ascanius.
2. Anger is a great fault.
3. Athens was the native-city of many great men.
4. Few slaves were faithful to [their] masters (dat.).
5. Great men [are] the gift of the gods.
6. The moon and stars were bright in the clear sky.
7. You are men, not boys.
8. The forces of the Romans were great.
Parallel Exercises.

Lesson 7.

Simple Sentences: 2. Object-Accusative.

Vocabulary.

fugo, drive.
fulgeo, shine.
garrulus, a, um, chattering.
impleo, fill.
intro, enter.
libum, i (n.), cake.
liquidus, a, um, transparent.
magis, more, (adv.).
mlco, glitter.
minus, less.
moveo, move.
placidus, a, um, calm.
tener, era, erum, tender.
turbo, disturb.
unda, ae (f.), wave.
ventus, i (m.), wind.

Translate into English.

7. Saevus lupus agnām teneram lacerat. — 8. Servi pōcula
magna vinō implent. — 9. Fessī nautae fretum angustum
ex agris suis fugat. — 13. Lūdi magister puerōs vocat. —
14. Unus ē decemvirīs, Appius Claudius, puellam plēbēiam
raptat. — 15. Silvam magnam, ātrum tenebris, intrāmus.

Fable.

Corvus caseum forte reperit, et gaudium suum alta vōce
cries by-chance finds joy his loud voice
significat. Sonō allecti, multi corvi famēlicī advolānt, et cibō
declares sound attracted famished fly-up food
opīmō prīnum spoliānt.

Write in Latin.

1. Slaves fear a cruel master.
2. The black darkness of the forest terrifies small boys.
3. We give cakes to children.
4. The queen is walking in [the] garden with two
daughters.

1 among themselves (to one another). 2 ater. 3 puer. 4 cum.
5 Plural.
5. We owe a great [sum of] money to the jeweller.
6. Few [men] love glory more than life.¹
7. We often see wolves in the forest.
8. We praise the good less than we blame the bad.
9. The Tyrians² praise the beautiful queen.
10. We have riches [as] a gift of the bountiful gods.
11. The son of Anchises enters the shades of Avernus.⁸

⁸ *Avernus, i.* ¹ Accusative. ² *Tyrii.

**Lesson 8.**

**Simple Sentence: 3. Special Forms.**

**Vocabulary.**

*caecus, a, um, blind.* *impiger, gra, um, vigorous.*
*canōrus, a, um, melodious.* *invideo² envy (with dat.).
*cygnus, i (M.), swan.* *noceo² do harm (dat.).
*ergā (with acc.), towards.* *potius, rather.*
*frigidus, a, um, cold.* *stultus, a, um, foolish.*
*ignāvus, a, um, lazy.* *valeo² prevail, be strong.*

**Translate into English.**


**Dialogue.**

*Quid est illud? — Aliquid incidit in oculum meum. — In that something has-fallen eye*

*utrum oculum incidit? — In dextrum: ecquid vidēs? — Video which right anything*

*aliquid minūtum. — Quid est? — Est mica pulveris. — Exime, little speck of-dust take-out*

*quaeso, si potes. — Exēmi. — Maximās tibi grātīās dēbeo. I beg if you can I have greatest to-you thanks I-owe*

**Write in Latin.**

1. Do you see a narrow road in the forest? Yes ("I see ").
2. How-great are the gifts of the gods!
3. We were both¹ weary and frightened.

¹ *et.*
Parallel Exercises.

4. We do not see wholly either with the eyes or with the mind (use neque . . nec).
5. The queen has two slaves, the one tall, the other stout.
6. We have neither riches nor glory.
7. Does a good man ever envy the bad?
8. The perils of war frighten cowards, but not strong men.
9. How many fingers have you on the right-hand? how many on the left?
10. Pompey was an honest man, no doubt, and a good general; but proud, jealous, sullen, and not a true friend.

Lesson 9.

Third Declension of Nouns.

Vocabulary.

cōrum (abl.), in presence of.
 quirēs, ōtis (F.), rest.
hirundo, inis (F.), swallow.
sōl, sōlis (M.), the sun.
iter, itineris (N.), journey, march.
sōlum, i (N.), soil, land.
jūcunditās, ātis (F.), delight.
tempus, oris (N.), time.
latro, ōnis (M.), robber.
vēnātor, āris (M.), huntsman.
mē (acc. or abl.), mé.
vēr, vēris (N.), spring.
mūtātio, ōnis (F.), change.
vulnus, eris (N.), wound.

Translate into English.


1 page 12. e. 2 page 5. g.
16. Vèr praebet flòrès, formòsa est messibus aestàs.


22. Nàvita dé ventis, dé tauris narrat aràtor;
Enumerat miles vulnera, pastor ovès.

23. Homo sum, hùmàni nihil à mè aliènum puto.

Fables.

1. In faucibus lupi os inhæserat. Hòc grùs, màgnís pròmis-jaw wolf bone had-stuck this promise
sìs adductus, longitùdine colli facile attinet et extrahit. Mercè-
induced length easily reaches pulls-out pay
dem autem frustrà postulat; nam lupus subridêns et dentibus
however in-vain demand for grinning tooth
infrendêns, “Num hóc,” inquit, “parvam mercèdem existimàs,
gnashing says small think
quòd caput incolume ex lupì faucibus habèis?”
that safe

2. In eòdem pràtò erant quondam plùrès ânserès et gruès.
same once many geese
Hominum vòcibus terrîtì, gruès facile àvolut ; sed anserès,
voice unarmed easily fly-off
corporum gravitâté impediti, dèprehènsì et mactàtì sunt.
weight hindered caught killed

Write in Latin.

1. The ramparts\(^1\) of the city are high and long.
2. The boy is in the garden with [his] father and mother.
3. The hunter's dogs are hastening to the woods.
4. Riches, honor, [and] beauty are uncertain.
5. The enemy (plur.) puts-to-flight\(^2\) the Roman legions.
6. A fox and a lion were once partners\(^3\) in the chase.\(^4\)
7. The virtue of [one's] parents is a great dower.\(^5\)
8. A constant dropping wears-away\(^6\) a stone.
9. The mind of man (plur.) is ignorant of future destiny.

\(^1\) moenia. \(^2\) fugo. \(^3\) socius. \(^4\) venatio. 
\(^5\) dos (F.). \(^6\) cavò.
10. The broad tree of Jove furnishes acorns for swine.  
11. The nymphs are guards of the fountains.  
12. Vulcan furnishes thunderbolts to Jove.  
13. A thousand shining fishes are-swimming in the stream.

Lesson 10.  
Adjectives of the Third Declension.  
Vocabulary.  

adhibeo, apply.  
aequor, äris (Nom.), level, sea.  
civitās, ātis (Gen.), state.  
fallāx, ācis, treacherous.  
fidēlis, e, faithful.  
ferēns, tis, bringing.  
ferōx, ōcis, fierce.  
fortis, e, brave.  
impleo, fill.  
ingēns, tis, vast, mighty.  
inera, tis, idle, inefficient.  
mergus, i (Nom.), sea-gull.  
pauper, ēris, poor (not destitute).  
paupertās, ātis (Gen.), poverty.  
recēns, tis, fresh.  
revolo, fly back.  
scelerātus, a, um, wicked.  
torqueo, hurl.

Translate into English.  

1 i.e. take most trouble.  
2 all things (every thing).  
8 "the brave," i.e. brave men.  
4 "to the one are," i.e. the one has.  
5 even.
Latin Method.

Fable.

Leō annis cōnfectus morbum simulat. Tum ad règem aegro-
worn sickness pretend then sick  tum complūrēs conveniunt bestiae, quās omnēs dēvorat. Vulpēs
many gather beast which all devour fox  autem procul ante speluncam stat, règem salūtāns. "Cur nōn
far-off before den saluting why  intrās?" inquit leō. Respondet vulpēs, "Quōd video multa
intrantium vestīgia, nulla exuentium."
going-in track going-out.

Write in Latin.

1. The lion’s strength (plur.) is vast.
2. In the tomb the poor [man] is equal to the rich.
4. The wicked fear the dreadful thunderbolts of Jove.
5. The valor of general and soldiers is the safety of the state.
6. All good citizens call-on the gods with humble prayers.
7. A wise father often has a foolish son.
8. Why do-you-fear the tiger? Because he has mighty
   teeth and dreadful claws.
10. We fill the bowls daily with fresh milk.
11. In a short time the enemy (plur.) move [their] camp from the plain.

1 vis. 2 virtus. 3 invoco. 4 tigris (§ 11, iii. 6. b). 5 stimulo.

Lesson II.

Comparison of Adjectives.

Vocabulary.

aequālis, e, of one’s own age. jūcundus, a, um, pleasant
aequitās, ātis (F.), justice. plērique, aequē, aque, most.
egēns, tis, needy. posteri, ōrum, posterity.
facētus, a, um, cheerful, funny. sagār, ācis, sagacious.
fēlix, īcis, fortunate. validus, a, um, strong.
gravis, e, heavy. vēlōx, ōcis, swift.

Translate into English.

1. Quid est in ōtiō jūcundius quam sermo facētus? — 2. Ar-
   gentum vilius est aurō, virtūtibus aurum. — 3. Nihil est praes-
Parallel Exercises.

5. P. Clōdius erat nequissimus omnium aequālium. —
6. Hieme pauperēs sunt egentissimi.

Italy.

Italia ab Alpibus usque ad fretum Siculum pertinet, inter mare Tuscum et Adriāticum. Multō longior est quàm lātior. Nōbilissima regio ob fertilitātem soli, caeliqve salubritātem. Plūrimos habet portūs; neque ulla regio tot tamque pulcrās urbēs habet, inter quàs Rōma longē praecārissima est.

Felicitissima in Italiā regio est Campānia. Multi ibi vitīferi collēs, ubi nōbilissima sunt vīna; calidi hic fontēs saluberrimi. Nusquam generōsior olea.

Write in Latin.

1. No one of the Romans was more eloquent than Cicero, no one more wise than Cato.
2. It was a very-heavy load.
3. Care is swifter than the winds.
4. The glory of the Roman people was greatest in war.
5. The deeds of brave men are often very obscure.
6. Dogs are more sagacious than cats.
7. A queen is often the most wretched of all women.
8. Cornelia was the elder of the [two] sisters.
9. Men often dread even the smallest evils.
10. In the forest are very-many fierce animals, among others boars, wolves, and bears.
11. The children were more fortunate than [their] parents.
12. The farmer’s servant is-giving very poor fodder to his cattle.

1 Superlative. 2 malum pabulum. 3 boves (see page 14, 3).
Lesson 12.

Fourth and Fifth Declensions.

Vocabulary.

acīēs, ē (f.), edge, line-of-battle.
adventus, ūs (m.), coming.
caesariēs, ē (f.), hair, locks.
contrā, against.
fluctus, ūs (m.), bellow.
glaciēs, ē (f.), ice.
male, ill, badly.
mināx, acis, threatening.
orno,1 adorn.
partus, a, um, gotten.
pendeo,2 hang, depend.
posterus, a, um, the next.
praeclārus, a, um, glorious.
roscidus, a, um, dewy.
sūdo,1 sweat, distil.
unguis, is (m.), claw.

Translate into English.


Germany.

Trāns Rhēnum Germānī habitānt usque ad Vistulam, quae

finis est Germāniae ad orientem. Ad meridiem sunt Alpēs,

boundary east south

ad septentriōnem mare Britannicum et Balticum. Incolae cor-

north inhabited

porum prōcēritāte ēminent. Bella gerunt cum finitimīs, nōn

tallness excel wage neighbor

finium prōlātandōrum causā, aut cupiditātē imperii, sed pug-

extending for-the-sake ambition empire fight-

nandiāmōre adductī. Domōs aedificant nōn lapidibus aut

ing love led build stone

lateribus coctīs, sed lignīs quae frondibus tegunt.

brick baked wood leaf cover
Write in Latin.

1. The father's coming delights the children.
2. The face of the goddess was most beautiful.
3. Caesar, with all his cavalry, fights against the line-of-battle of the Gauls.
4. We see very-hard ice upon the lake.
5. A good man always keeps his promise.
6. Bulls fight with [their] horns, boars with their tusks, lions with their claws.
7. In the most wretched case, hope sustains [our] minds.
8. About sunset the enemy (plur.) hasten towards the city.
9. Of all things the sun is most glorious.

1. in (with abl.)
2. status.
3. sustento.
4. ad.
5. fides.

Lesson 13.

Pronouns: Personal and Demonstrative.

Vocabulary.

artifex, icis (M.), craftsman.
colla, ae (M.), colleague.
formica, ae (F.), ant.
frugi (indecl. § 17, 2), thrifty.
mandatum, i (N.), command.
nonnullus, a, um, some (§ 41, 2 e, R.).
occa, us (M.), setting.
ortus, us (M.), rising.
pars, paris, equal (§ 16, 3, a),
poema, atis (N.), poem.
respondeo, answer.
rideo, laugh, laugh at.
seges, etis (F.), standing corn.
vehementer, exceedingly.

Translate into English.


1. envy to the ox his size, i.e. envy the ox for his size.
2. See p. 19. f.
3. my possessions.
4. Less. 13. a.
5. together.

**FABLE.** — Rānae stultae rēgem ā Jove ōrant. Pater deōrum ridet, atque eis dat parvum tigillum.

**Peloponnesus.**

Cum hāc parte Graeciae cohaeret ingēns penīnsula, platanī foliō simillima. Angustus ille trames inter Aegēum mare et Iōnium, per quem cum Megaride cohaeret, Isthmus appellātur. In eō templum Neptūnī est, ubi lūdi celebrantur Isthmīci. In ipsō Peloponnēsī aditū Corinthus sita est, urbs antiquissima, ex cūjus summā arce utrumque mare cōnspicitur.

**Write in Latin.**

1. Fools and the impatient are always fighting with themselves.¹
2. These apples are sweet, those [are] sour.
3. We are wretched, you are happy.
4. Covetous [men] are hostile to themselves.
5. You² praise yourself too-much.
6. These songs are most pleasing to us.
7. I am a shepherd, you are a robber.
8. He has his brother with him at-home.
9. One of these boys is diligent, the other lazy.

¹ *secum*, or *inter se.*
² *ipse.*

**Lesson 14.**

**Pronouns: Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite.**

**Vocabulary.**

aestus, ūs (m.), tide.
aliquamdiē, for some time.
auctōritās, ātis (f.), authority.
cruor, ōris (m.), blood (when shed).
fīnitīmus, a, um, neighboring.
insto,¹ to be at hand.
marītīmus, a, um, of the sea.
obtineo,² hold, keep.
ōra, ae (f.), shore.
postulo,¹ claim, demand.
quīvis (§ 21, 2. c), any, every.
sangulus, inis (m.), blood.
tolero,¹ endure.
tumultus, ūs (m.), confusion.


1 Supply locō, and translate before in quo. ² with. ³ of both of whom. ⁴ the . . . the. ⁵ such is, &c. ⁶ See p. 20. a. ⁷ any. ⁸ Translate was, as to us the name Thēbēs is singular. ⁹ is without, i.e. is clear from the stain.

Caesar's Description of Gaul.

Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam inco- lunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam [ī] quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hōrum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae; proximique sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dé causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt,
quod ferē quotidiānis proelīis cum Germānis contendunt;
because almost daily battle contend
cum aut suis finibus ēōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum finibus
while their-own keep-away
bellum gerunt.

Write in Latin.

1. The boys whom you praise are very idle.
2. What was the cause of the war? Who is-tending the wounded soldiers?
3. Those are good citizens who adorn the state by their warlike glory, and their own homes by their virtues.
4. Whatever I have of riches, I give all to you.
5. We honor Rome, which is the head of all Italy.
6. There was war between the Romans and Samnites, both of whom were brave and warlike people.
7. Anybody enters the town in-the-day-time.
8. Which do you consider the greatest general, Cæsar, Scipio, or Hannibal? Which the better orator, Cicero or Demosthenes?

1 causa. 2 vulneratus. 3 bellicus. 4 Neuter. 5 Nominative. 6 Plural. 7 quīvis. 8 interdiu. 9 § 17, 5. a.

Lesson 19.

Regular Verb: First Conjugation (Active).

Vocabulary.

āvoco,1 call away. litus, oris (N.), shore.
cānus, a, um, gray, hoary. lūctus, ūs (M.), grief.
colōnus, i (M.), farmer (colonist). lūstro,1 purify.
ēgregius, a, um, remarkable. nec, necis (F.), death.
foedus, a, um, disgraceful. occupo,1 seize.
gēnus, gentis (F.), race, nation. quondam, once, formerly.
illūstro,1 make famous. vehementer, exceedingly.

Translate into English.

1. In mediō campō errābant timidae ovēs.
2. Ferōx lupus agnum nece inōstā lacerāvit; nam fontem liquidum agnus miser nōn turbāverat.
Parallel Exercises.


Early Kings of Italy.


Write in Latin.

1. The enemy had seized\(^1\) the camp by night.
2. You had asked, I refused.
3. If the enemy are-holding\(^2\) the woods, they will easily drive our cavalry.
4. The soldiers carry ladders with them,\(^8\) and easily enter the town.
5. Let\(^4\) the soldiers carry\(^4\) corn with them into the camp.
6. A stag praised his branching horns, but blamed the extreme thinness\(^6\) of his legs.
7. Citizen (plur.) strove with citizen in valor.\(^6\)
8. Do not carry all the corn with you.
9. Let us take-a-walk\(^7\) in the garden.
10. The farmer sailed-over\(^8\) the fields which he lately ploughed.

\(^1\) occūpo. \(^2\) tēneo. \(^3\) secum. \(^4\) Present subj. \(^5\) nimia tenuitas. \(^6\) virtus. \(^7\) deambulo. \(^8\) navigo.
Lesson 20.

Regular Verb: First Conjugation (Passive).

Vocabulary.

appello,1 call, address.  oppugno,1 attack.
domo,1 ui, itum, subdued.  perturbo,1 alarm.
effeminó,1 ensueable.  repudio,1 reject.
extrá, outside of.  trepido,1 tremble.
fator, òris (m.), partisan.  voluntás, átis (f.), will.
honórisfícus, a, um, honorable.  vulneró,1 wound.

Translate into English.


1 in, &c.  2 of royal power.

A Snake Story.

In primó Púnico belló, ad flúmen Bágradam, serpéns cen-
near serpent 100
tum viginti pedum á Réguló, imperatóre Rómánó, ballístis et
twenty foot commander cross-bow
tormentís expugnátæ-est. Pellis éjus et maxillae diú Rómæ
engine conquer (by assault). skin jaw-bone long
in templó quódam asservátæae-sunt.

certain preserve

In Indiá serpentéæ perpetuum bellum cum elephantis gerunt.

continual elephant

Ex arboribus sē in praeteréuntēs praecipitánt, gressúsque

tree themselves passer-by plunge-down step
ligant nódís. Hós nódós elephantí manū resolvunt.

confine knot trunk (hand) untie

Write in Latin.

1. All the soldiers will be wounded.
2. The faithful1 guards were praised by all the citizens.

1 fidus.
3. The nightingale is charmed by her-own songs.
4. Wreaths had been given to the victorious soldiers.
5. Let the mountain be occupied by our men.
6. [A battle] will be fought to-morrow.
7. Between the wolf and dog there was a long dispute.
8. Are you alarmed, Romans, at the dangers of war?
9. There was-terror throughout the city.

2 luscinia.  3 dextra.  4 victor.  5 occupio.  6 cras.
7 diu.  8 Verb, impers. passive.  9 Ablative.  10 totus.

Lesson 21.

Regular Verb: First Conjugation (Noun and Adjective Forms).

Vocabulary.

aedifico, build.
apto, fit.
calco, tread.
dēbeo, owe, ought.
jubeo, jussi, command.
maneo, wait, await.
numero, count.

quamvis, however.
redundo, overflow.
vacat, there is leisure.
vasto, ravage.
veto, ui, itum, forbid.
virilia, e, manly.
volo, fly.

Translate into English.

1. Turpe est terga hostibus dare in armis. — 2. Beātus esse sine virtūte nēmo potest. — 3. Sine pennis volāre hau-

8. Summae dēmentiae est in vitiis perseverāre. — 9. Ae-
quam memento rébus in arduis servāre mentem. — 10. Divitem mē esse vicīni falsō existimant. — 11. Lēgēs duo ex ūnā fa-
miliā magistrātūs creāri vetuērunt. — 12. Contrā libidinēs est pugnandum. — 13. Ancō regnante, Lūcumo Rōmam com-

1 give back to, i.e. retreat before.  2 or.  3 i.e. goes fast enough.
4 [a mark] of, &c.  5 i.e. we must, &c.  6 in the reign of Ancus.
7 to Rome.
Horatius.

Tullō regnante, bellum inter Albānōs et Rōmānōs exortum-
aest. Forte in duōbus exercitibus erant trigemīni¹ frātrēs, nec
aetāte nec viribus disparēs, apud Rōmānōs Horātii, apud
Albānōs Curiātī. Cum his agunt rēgēs, ut prō suā quisque
patriā dimicēnt ferrō. Arma igitur capiunt, et in medium inter
duās aciēs prōcēdunt. Datur signum, infestisque armīs ternī²
juvenēs, magnōrum exercituum animōs gerentēs, concurrunt.
Ut primō concursū increpuēre arma, horror ingēns spectantēs
perstrinxit. Statim duo Rōmānī alius super alium exspirantēs
cecidērunt; trēs Albānī vulnerāti-sunt.

Write in Latin.

1. We are good men if we help¹ those² whom³ we can help.
2. Cæsar denies that he⁴ can⁵ give to any a way⁶ through
the province.
3. No-one beholding the whole⁶ earth will doubt of⁷ divine
providence.
4. While fighting⁸ keep an even temper.
5. I see that you are of a cheerful temper (gen. or abl.).
6. No one [when] about-to-sail ought to think of storms.
7. Can any-one⁹ be a good commander without knowledge
of soldiership?
8. For a soldier¹⁰ to refuse obedience is disgraceful.¹¹
9. The Germans were prepared to ravage Gaul.¹²
10. The ancient laws forbade a plebeian¹³ to be elected
consul.

¹ prosum. ² Dative. ³ se. ⁴ Infinitive. ⁵ iter.
⁶ universus. ⁷ de. ⁸ inter with acc. of gerund. ⁹ num quis.
¹⁰ Accusative. ¹¹ turpis (neut.). ¹² Gallia. ¹³ plebeius.
Parallel Exercises.

Lesson 22.

Regular Verb: Second Conjugation.

Vocabulary.

addicto,¹ dash about.
coetus, ūs (m.), assembly.
dēlectus, ūs (m.), a levy (of troops).
habeō,² ui, itum, have, hold.
improbus, a, um, wicked.
inrideo,² rīsi, rīsum, deride.
mītis, e, gentle.
pāreo,² ui, itum, obey (with dat.).

pendeo,² pependi, hang.
principium, i (n.), beginning.
sentēs, ium (m.), thorns.
stipula, ae (f.), stubble.
sustineō,² ui, tentum, sustain.
tondeō,² totondi, tōnsum, cut, mow.
vehementer, vigorously.
vigeō,² ui, thrive, flourish.

Translate into English.

5. Nullum ad nocendum tempus angustum ⁸ est improbis.
7. Bonus homo cīvibus suis grātum sē vidēri studet.

Horatius (continued).

Rōmānōs jam spēs dēserēbat. Unum Horātium trēs Curiātīi circumsteterant. Is, quamvis integer, quia tribus impār
surround although unhurt because unequal
erat, fugam simulāvit. Jam aliquantum spatiī ex eō lōcō ubi
flight feign something distance place
pugnātum-est, aufugerat, cūm respiciēns videt ūnum Curiātium
had-fled looking-back
haud procul ab sē esse. Hōc interfectō, alterum deinde occi-
not for killed slow
dit. Jam singuli supererant, sed nec spē nec víribus parēs.
single survived

Alterius erat intactum ferrō corpus, et geminātā victoriā ferōx
untouched steel redoubled victory fierce
animus. Alter fessum vulnere fessum cursū trahēbat corpus.
weary wound running drag

Nec illud proelium fuit. Curiātium, male sustinentem arma,
hardly holding-up

Romānus exsultāns conficit, jacentemque spoliat.
exulting despatch prostrate strip

¹ See p. 23, l. c. ² wise, i.e. the act of a wise man. ³ too-short.
Write in Latin.

1. You seem to me to be of a very cheerful mind.
2. The enemy kept themselves hidden in the woods.
3. The consul forbade the army to move from winter-quarters.¹
4. We shall always obey the laws of the country.
5. Here the soldiers stood, and stoutly² sustained the attack of the enemy.
6. Carthage was destroyed by the younger³ Scipio Africanus.
7. It is difficult for a coward⁴ to appear brave.⁴
8. No one should⁵ envy anybody.⁶
9. Gaul is bounded by the river Rhine and the ocean.
10. The power of the Romans was feared by all nations.
11. Our friends were warned in vain.
12. The frogs were frightened by the sound of the log.
13. A monkey sat [as] judge between a wolf and a fox.

¹ Ablative.  ² fortiter.  ³ minor.  ⁴ Accusative.  ⁵ debet.  ⁶ quisquam.

Lesson 23.

Regular Verb: Third Conjugation.

Vocabulary.

ago, εγι, actum, pass, act.
cēspes, itis (m.), turf.
cinna, eris (m.), ashes.
exsistō, stiti, stitum, arise.
mitto, misi, missum, send.
nātus, a, um, born.

peto, petīvi (ii), fitum, seek.
rector, ēris (m.), ruler.
rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, break.
tango, tetigi, tactum, touch.
tolērābilis, e, passable.
traho, xi, ctum, drag, bring.

Translate into English.

1. Ex ducentis vigintī nāvibus trigintā fūgērant, nōnāgintā
cum pugnātōribus captae sunt, dēmersae cēterae.—2. Rānae
ab Jove rēgem petiēre.¹ Pater deōrum risit, atque illis dedit
parvum tigillum.—3. Hominēs amplius oculis quam auribus
crēdunt.—4. Vita omnis Germānōrum in vēnātiōnibus atque
in rēbus militāribus agitur.

¹ See p. 27. c⁸.


12. Incipe, parve puer, risū cognōscere mātre.

13. Hominēs ad intellegendum et ad agendum nāti sumus. — 14. Thērāmenēs conjectus in carcerem venēnum hilariter ac fortiter bibisse dicitur. — 15. Nōn\textsuperscript{7} est injussū imperātōris, id est Dei, dē statīone vitae dēcēdendum.\textsuperscript{7}

\textsuperscript{2} man's part. \textsuperscript{3} not even. \textsuperscript{4} The Aedui, a people of Gaul. \textsuperscript{5} Supine. \textsuperscript{6} even. \textsuperscript{7} we must not.

\textbf{Horatius (concluded).}

Rōmānī ovantēs ac grātulantēs Horātiūm accipiant, et do-
rejoicing receiving rejoice
mum dēdūcunt. Princeps ibat Horātius, trium frātrum spolia
home conduct at-the-head went spoils
prae sē gerēns. Cui obvia fuit soror, quae dēspōnsa fuerat
before bearing to-meet sister betrothed
ūnī ex Curiātiis; vidēnsque super humerōs frātris palūdāmen-
on shoulder cloak
tum spōnsī, quod ipsa cōnfēcerat, flēre et crīnēs solvere coepit.
betrothed had-made weep hair loosen
Mōvit ferōcis juvenis animum complōrātiō sorōris in tantō
stirred fierce young-man’s temper lamentation so great
gaudīo publicō; strictō itaque gladiō trānsfīgit puellam, simul
joy public drawn therefore sword girl at-the-same-time
eam verbis increpāns: “Abī hinc cum immātūrō amōre ad
word chide go hence untimely love
spōnsum tuum — oblita frātrum, oblita patriae! Sic eat quae-
spous intimates so go who-
cunque Rōmāna lūgēbit hostem!”

\textbf{Write in Latin.}

1. Cicero wrote many letters to his friend Atticus.
2. Unrelenting\textsuperscript{1} labor conquers all [things].
3. Caesar with all [his] cavalry made an attack\textsuperscript{2} upon\textsuperscript{3} the Germans, who presently\textsuperscript{4} sent ambassadors to him to ask peace.

\textsuperscript{1} improbus. \textsuperscript{2} impetus. \textsuperscript{3} in (with acc.). \textsuperscript{4} max.
4. Antony married Octavia, the sister of Octavianus.
5. Octavia, the sister of Octavianus, married Antony.  
6. The mischievous boys were running through my garden.
7. The forces of the Romans were led by Crassus.
8. The [commander's] tent had been set on fire by the barbarians.
9. Two stags of vast size were caught by the hunters.
10. The women weeping threw themselves at Cæsar's feet.
11. After the log, Jupiter sent a water-snake to the wretched frogs, which devoured them daily.
12. The senate decreed rewards to the soldiers who had not betrayed the town.

Lesson 24.

Regular Verb: Fourth Conjugation.

Vocabulary.

***ahēneus, a, um, of brass.
aperio, ui, apertum, open.
catēna, ae (F.), chain.
coercee, ui, itum, check.
conscio, be-conscious.
invenio, vēni, ventum, find, discover.
maestus, a, um, sorrowing.

nūtrio, feed, nourish.
palūs, ūdis (F.), marsh.
saliō, ui, saltum, leap.
seitio, si, sum, feel, juviē.
ūro, ussi, ustum, burn.
urtica, ae (F.), nettle.
vincio, vinzī, vinc tum, bind.
vīnea, ae (F.), trellis (for vines).

Translate into English.


1 one thing. 2 caep.


The Death of Caesar.

Conjūrātum-est in Caesarem ā sexāgintā amplius viris, consipire sixty more (than) Cassiō et Brūtō ducibus cōnjūrātiōnis. Cūm igitur Caesar conspiracy when īdibus Martīīs in senātum vēnisset, assidentem speciē officiī
ides of-March senate come as-he-sat show duty
circumstetērunt, illicōque ūnus ē conjūrātīs, quasi aliquid rogā-
stand-round at-once conspirator as-if ask
tūrus, propius accessit, renuentique togam ab utrōque humerō
nearer advanced as-he-refused mantle both shoulder
apprehendit. Deinde clāmantem Ista quidem vis est, Casca
catch then (him) crying-out force
vulnerat paulō infrā jugulum. Caesar Cascae brāchium arrepi-
round little below throat. arm caught
 tum graphiō1 trājēcit, cōnātusque prōsilire, alid vulnus
style pierce attempting leap-forward
accēpit. Ubi autem Marcum Brūtum, quem locō filii habēbat,
receive when rushing
in sē irruentem vidit, Ťū quoque inquit fīt mī! Deinde, ubi
animadvertit undique sē strictis pugiōnibus peti, tugā caput
perceive on-all-sides drawn dagger attack
obvolvīvit, atque ita tribus et vigintī plāgis cōnfossus-est.
wrap so blow stab

1 A pointed instrument for writing.

Write in Latin.

1. The body of Cæsar was buried by his sorrowing friends.
2. The Roman camp had been fortified by Labienus with great labor.
3. The Helvetii had now arrived-at the territory of the Sequani.

4. A great crash is heard in the woods, from falling trees.

5. The Britons were clothed with skins, and lived in the woods and marshes.

6. Those scoundrelly robbers were severely punished.

7. Let the gates of the city be opened to the conquering army.

8. In spring the trees are clad with blossoms, in summer are laden with fruits.

9. The soldiers bound the prisoner with chains.

10. In punishing, anger is by-no-means to be admitted.

11. Let the voice of justice be heard.

---

**Lesson 25.**

**Deponent Verbs.**

**Vocabulary.**

adipisciō, adeptus, gain, get. loquor, locútus, speak.

adsequor, secūtus, gain, reach. màternus, a, um, of a mother.

aggredior, aggressus, attack. mentiō, speak falsehood.

arx, arcis (f.), tower. nascor, nātus, be born.

classis, is (f.), fleet. pollicēor, itus, promise.

ōgredior, ēgressus, go out. pōpuleus, a, um, of the poplar.

frōns, tis (f.), brow. quērō, questus, bewail.

fruor, fructus, enjoy. sequor, secūtus, follow.

irascor, irātus, be angry. ütor, üaus, use, employ.

---

Translate into English.

Parallel Exercises.


that it may not happen. 2 advantages (see p. 163, 31).
Imperative. i.e. safely.

Augustus and the Crow.

Cūm post Actiacam victōriam Augustus Rōmam ingrederētur, occurrit ei inter grātulāntēs opifex quidam corvum tenēns, quem instituerat haec dicere: Avē, Caesar victor, imperātōr! Augustus, avem officiōsam mirātus, eam vigintī millibus nummorum ēmit. Socius opificis, ad quem nihil ex illā libera-"'pence boy partner liber-
litāte pervēnerat, affirmāvit Augustō illum habēre et alium corvum, quem afferrī jussit. Adlātus corvus verba quae didi-
"'cerat expressit: Ave! Antōnī victor, Imperātōr! Nihil eā rē learned utter not-at-all exasperātus, Augustus jussit tantummodo corvōrum doctōrem enragēd merely teacher dividere acceptam mercēdem cum contubernāli. Salūtātus comme companion salute
similiter ā psittacō, emī eum jussit.
likewise parrot

Write in Latin.

1. The Rauraci go-forth1 along with the Helvetii into Gaul.

2. Many of2 the Greeks, who had gone forth [to] Troy never returned3 home.

3. Orgetorix persuades Dumnorix to-attempt4 the same.

proficiscor. 2 ex. reverto, sus. conor (use ut with pres. subj.).
4. Cato the elder died in the eighty-fifth year of his age.
5. On-every-side⁶ flowers sprang-up⁶ in the fields and meadows.
7. Speak little,⁧ promise with-caution,⁹ and remember always to keep [your] word.¹⁰
8. The lieutenant will measure-out¹¹ corn to the soldiers.
9. I entirely forgot myself.¹²
10. Pity me,¹² pity our hardships.
11. My son has reached¹⁸ the same grades¹⁴ of honor.

undique. nascor. in. pauca (n. plur.). caute.
servare fidem. metior. Genitive. consequor.
gradus.

LESSON 26.

Irregular, Defective, and Impersonal Verbs.

Vocabulary.

cōnspecio, spexi, otum, behold. prōfero, display.
dēsum, in short. repentinus, a, um, sudden.
finio, put an end to. retrō, backward.
Irācundus, a, um, passionate. supplex, incis, suppliant.
nemus, oris (n.), grove. vēnor, hunt.

Translate into English.

8. Aut prōdesse volunt aut délectāre poētae.

¹ alike. ² acquires.
Parallel Exercises.

The Sabine Wives.

Rōmānī Sabinique in mediā valle redintegrārunī proelium. valley renew
Tum Sabīnae mulierēs, crīnibus passis scissāque veste, ausae-
hair loose torn garment dare
sunt sē inter tēla volantia inferre, hinc patrēs hinc virōs
weapon flying throw here husbana
pray
ōrantēs. Movet rēs cūm multitūdinem tum ducēs. Silen-
tium et repentīna fit quiēs. Inde ducēs prōdeunt, nec pācem
sudden quiet advance peace
modo sed civitātem ūnam ex duābus faciunt, regnum cōnso-
city make kingdom ally
ciant, imperium omne cōnferunt Rōmam. Ex bellō tam tristi
power convey to sad
laeta repente pāx cāriōrēs Sabinās viris ac parentibus, et ante
glad suddenly dear
omnēs Rōmulō ipsi, fēcit.

1 See p. 27. c5. 2 Participle of pando.

Write in Latin.

1. Many cannot bear the pain of sickness.
2. Bad citizens bore arms against [their] country.
3. The river Rhine flows a long distance through the
territory of the Germans.
4. The Helvetii wonder that Cæsar has so-long borne the
wrongs brought on by them.
5. The sapling at length becomes a tree.
6. Do-not tell-a-lie.
7. What we wish we gladly believe.
8. Love others, if you wish to be loved yourself.
9. Many will hate you, if you love yourself alone.
10. We are-allowed to be free.
11. Remember that you are mortal.
12. Then the god said: “Because you would-not bear your
good, endure the evil.”
13. At length Cæsar (acc.) was weary of the business.
14. While the greedy dog wishes to grasp the shadow, he
lets-fall the meat from his mouth.

1 Lit. “is borne.” 2 Accus. and infin. 3 nōli.
4 licet. 5 Dative. 6 nōlo. 7 perfero. 8 omitto.
Latin Method.

Examples in Poetry.

1. Jam glacialis hiemps squalentia protulit ora,
   Terraque marmoreo candida facta gelu est;
   Nix jacet, et glaciem nec sol pluviaeve resolvunt,
   Indurat Boreas, perpetuanque facit. — Ovid.

2. Jam satis terris nivis atque dirae
   Grandinis misit Pater, et rubente
   Dexterā sacras jaculatus arces
   Terruit urbem. — Horace.

3. Diffugere nives, redeunt jam gramina campis,
   Arboribusque comae;
   Mutat terra vices, et decrescentia ripas
   Fluminā praetereunt;
   Frigora mitescunt Zephyris; Ver proterit Aestas. — Id.

4. Molli paulatim flavescet campus arista,
   Incultis rubens pendebit sentibus uva,
   Et durae quercus sudabunt roscida mella. — Virgil.

5. Cespes Tyrio mollior ostro
   Solet impavidos ducere somnos :
   Aurea rumpunt tecta quietem,
   Vigilesque trahit purpura noctes ;
   Pectora pauper secura gerit.

6. Beatus ille qui procul negotiis,
   Ut prisca gens mortalium,
   Paterna rura bubus exercet suis,
   Solutus omni fenore ;
   Neque excitatur classico miles truci,
   Neque horret iratum mare ;
   Forumque vitat, et superba civium
   Potentiorum limina. — Horace.

7. Justum ac tenacem propositī virum
   Non civium ardor prava jumentum,
   Non vultus instantis tyranni;
   Mente quatit solidā. — Id.
PART SECOND.

CONSTRUCTIONS OF SYNTAX.

NOTE. — It may be best to proceed at once from the foregoing lessons to the course of reading provided in Part Fourth, reserving the following section to be studied as the constructions occur in reading, and for systematic practice in writing Latin, once a week or oftener, at the convenience of the teacher. It should be compared with the "Synopsis of Constructions" given at the end of this volume. The letter R. refers to the short rules on pages 162, 163. Figures in brackets refer to the Revised Grammar.

A. — Uses of Cases: 1. As Objects of Verbs.

Notice that all of the four Oblique cases may be used in Latin with different classes of verbs, being represented alike in English by the Objective case. Thus,—

1. hominem video, I see the man (ACCUSATIVE).
2. homini servio, I serve the man (DATIVE).
3. hominis misereor, I pity the man (GENITIVE).
4. homine amico fitor, I treat the man as a friend (ABLATIVE).

1. Accusative as Direct Object.

Learn § 52, 1. (Object-Accusative), with a, b, d (verbs of feeling, cognate accusative, and compounds).

a. The accusatives in a are usually rendered with a preposition in English, though sometimes a transitive verb may be supplied: as, ridere, to laugh at or ridicule; dolere, to grieve at or lament, &c.

b. With the compounds in d compare those of § 228, d; noticing that there is usually no difference in the translation of the two classes of verbs, which are generally transitive in English: as, adire aliquem, to approach one; obstare alicui, to withstand one.
Examples.

1. Africano¹ industria virtutem, virtus gloriam, gloria aemulos comparavit.
2. Tres jam copiarum partes Helvetii flumen traduxerant.
3. Saepe suas Liber² miratus est uvas.
4. Rastros non patietur humus.
5. Paulatim Germani Rhenum transire consueverant.
6. Posthac vitam³ tuiorem vivemus.
7. Joca tua plena facetiarum risimus satis.
8. Iram demetitur Deus suam; clementiam profundit.
10. Nec te, juvenis memorande, silebo.

¹ Dative. ² A name of Bacchus. ³ Cognate accus. (§ 238).

Write in Latin.

1. A sudden tempest had delayed the ships.
2. A soft answer subdues¹ wrath.
3. Appius Claudius, the censor, brought² the Appian water into the city, and laid³ the Appian Way.
4. Hannibal had already crossed the Alps.
5. Caesár led his forces across the Rhine.
6. They afterwards lived a safer life.
7. Poverty teaches all the arts.
9. We shall go once [on] the last journey.
10. All men laugh-at folly: all men grieve-at misery.

¹ frango. ² induco. ³ sterno. ⁴ queror.

2. Two Accusatives.

§ 52, 2. with a and c (appositive and secondary object: R. 25); also b and d (compounds, and verbs of hiding).

Examples.

1. Te tua fata docebo.
2. Deos deasque omnes pacem oramus.
3. Quid me ista rogás? Stoicos roga.
4. Iter omnes celabo.
5. Nonnulli utilia solum pueros docent, honesta negligunt.
6. Tu modo posce deos veniam.
8. Consul primus rogatus est sententiam.
9. Illud puer saepe admonitus erat.
11. Helvetii pacem a Cæsare petierunt.

Write in Latin.

1. I will teach you your destiny.
2. We beseech peace [of] all the gods and goddesses.
3. I did not hide from you [my] friend's opinion.
4. Why do you ask me that? Ask your father.
5. The consul Nero¹ skillfully concealed his march [from] Hannibal.
7. Lucius Junius Brutus was called the liberator of Rome.
8. The people elected Lucius Junius Brutus and Lucius Tarquinius Collatinus [as] first consuls.

¹ Put the name before the title. ² oro.

3. Dative of Indirect Object.

§ 51, 1. and 2. with a and d (R. 14, 16); also c, e, f, reading carefully the classes of verbs in a and b.

a. These classes of verbs will be learned gradually, in the course of practice. Some of those in a (as to favor, envy, serve, &c.) seem to be transitive. In fact, however, the Latin retains a primary meaning which is lost in English: as, invidere (to envy) is to look [askance] at one; servire is to be a slave; suadere is to make [a thing] pleasant to any one (compare suavis, sweet). See Remark 1 (page 123), and the second paragraph of the Note on page 154 of the grammar.

b. The verbs in 2. c are to be compared with those of Giving, &c., in 1: though different in kind as seen from the English point of view, their construction in Latin is the same: thus in the sen-
tence invidet mihi divitiæs, he envies me for my riches, divitiæs is the direct and mihi the indirect object of invidéo, though the opposite is the case in English.

Examples.
1. Nil pictis timidus navita puppibus, fidit.
2. Homines amplius oculis quam auribus credunt.
3. Nonnulli levissimam delectionem gravissimæ utilitati anteponunt.
4. Dii immortales hoc tibi delictum ignoscent.
5. Servi dominis sui maledixerunt.
7. Innocentiae nostrae, judices, subvenite.
8. A bono filio matri semper parebitur.
9. A victore milite templis deorum parcendum est.
10. Uterque consul legioni illi indulserat.
11. Invídetur praestanti florentiæ fortunæ.
12. Mihi numquam persuaderi potuit, animos esse mortales.

Write in Latin.
1. The ant gets itself food in summer-time.
2. The sun shall give thee signs.
3. You pardon yourself; others you pardon not.
4. Men believe their eyes more than their ears. 6
5. Patience heals any 5 pain.
6. He told me every thing.
7. I mercifully spared the wretched man.
8. A faithful soldier serves the state.
9. The soldiers spared 8 the temples of the gods.
10. Our men pressed-hard 4 the flying Gauls.
   (Passive.)
11. Your glory is envied. 5
12. Liars are not believed. 7
13. The temples of the gods were spared.
14. That age is not envied, but even favored.
15. The authority of the senate will be obeyed.
16. Clodius was distrusted by all good citizens.

1 medoeor. 2 quivis. 3 tempero. 4 insto.
6 auris. 5 See Examples 10 and 19, on page 62. 7 credo.
4. Genitive as Object.

§ 50, 4. *a, b, c* (verbs of *memory, feeling,* &c.), observing the peculiar genitives of *b,* and the construction of the Impersonals in *c* and *d;* also *e* (*ego).*

**Examples.**

1. Senex veterum meminit dolorum.
2. Hunc puerum ignaviae suae neque pudet neque taedet.
3. Taedet me quotidianarum harum molestiarum.
4. At vos, Arcadii, caeci miserescite regis.
5. Catilina admonebat alium egestatis, alium cupidinis suae.
7. Arguitur Verres repetundarum.
8. Conjurati omnes capitis damnati sunt.
9. Reminiscere, inquit, pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum.

**Write in Latin.**

1. Cato admonished the judges of the laws and of [their] oath.¹
2. We have-no-need² of your help.
3. I shall always remember this day and place.
4. The man is neither ashamed nor sorry for his cowardice.
5. The Athenians charged Socrates with impiety.
6. Forget slaughter and conflagration.
7. I lack not gold or silver.
8. You have charged me in-my-absence³ with a capital offence.⁴
9. Brutus condemned to death⁴ his two sons.

¹ *religio.* ² *nihil indigère.* ³ *absens.* ⁴ § 220, a.
⁵ *res capitalis.*

5. Ablative as Object.


Observe that these are in reality ablatives of *means,* and that they may generally be represented in English by a phrase with a preposition: as, *vescitur carne,* *he eats (feeds on) flesh; amicitia meâ abutuntur,* *they abuse (take advantage of) my friendship.*
Latin Method.

Examples.
1. Impedimentis castrisque Romani potiti sunt.
2. Aliquando oculi suo munere non funguntur.
3. Omnibus in vita commodis unā cum amicis fruimur.
4. Frater meus omnibus vitae officiis fungitur.
5. Divitiis, nobilitate, viribus male utimini.
7. Dii nec escis nec potionibus vescuntur.
8. Lacte, caseo, carne vescor, scribit Anacharsis Scythes.
9. Quo usque tandem abutere, Catilina, patientia nostra?

Write in Latin.
1. The ancient Germans fed chiefly on milk and meat.
2. The Macedonian phalanx employed very-long spears.
3. We deem Cicero worthy of the highest praise of eloquence.
4. A brave man bravely performs his duty.
5. A base man takes-advantage-of the ignorance or folly of-others.
6. We enjoy the gifts of the earth, which therefore we call fruits and crops.
7. The soldiers of-the-legion used a shield, a javelin, and a short sword.

B.—Uses of Cases: 2. As Modifying Adjectives.

Note.—Some of the following are also to be classed among the adverbial uses of cases; but they are distinguished by being used to complete the meaning of the adjective on which they depend.

6. Genitive with Adjectives.

§ 50, 3. b, c, d (relative adjectives, genitive of specification, adjectives of likeness, &c.).

Compare the lists of adjectives in § 218, d with that in § 234, d. These adjectives, when followed by the genitive, have in fact become nouns (compare § 188: as, cognatus Ciceronis, Cicero's kinsman; Ciceroni cognatus, kindred with Cicero. [Compare such phrases as meus aequalis, my contemporary.]
Examples.
1. Galli sunt barbarn, et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti.
2. Mens hominum nescia fatti est, sortisque futurae.
3. Misi homines earum regionum peritissimos.
4. Habeis ducem memorem vestri oblitum sui.
5. Cassandreae inerat mens provida rerum futurarum.
6. Homini erat mens ferox, impotens irae.
7. Corpus patiens erat inediae, vigiliae, algoris.
8. Nostra vita insidiarum est et metus plena.
10. Orbus auxilii opumque ad te confugio.

Write in Latin.
1. This man is eager\textsuperscript{1} for glory and greedy\textsuperscript{2} of praise.
2. Most boys are careless\textsuperscript{3} about antiquities.
3. Catiline was able-to-endure\textsuperscript{4} fasting, watching, cold.
4. Gaul is full of Roman citizens.
5. Night alone was conscious of this deed.\textsuperscript{5}
6. This boy is very like his father.
7. The consul was full of plans, sparing\textsuperscript{6} in words.
8. The river Rhine is common to Gaul and Germany.
9. Achilles, bravest of the Greeks, was ungovernable\textsuperscript{7} in wrath.

\textsuperscript{1} cupidus. \textsuperscript{2} avidus. \textsuperscript{3} negligens. \textsuperscript{4} patiens. \textsuperscript{5} facinus.
\textsuperscript{6} parcus. \textsuperscript{7} impotens.

7. Dative of Nearness, &c.

§ 51, 6. (words of likeness, nearness, fitness, service or help: R. 15), with a, b (use of prepositions), and e (propior, &c.).

Examples.
1. Amara sunt vitiosus, ac male viventibus, praecepta justitiae.
2. Auctumnus gravis est urbi agrisque.
3. Tyrannis aliena virtus semper formidolosa est.
4. Rex infidis consiliis semper est obnoxious.
5. Ista oratio dignitati tuae alienissima est.
7. Unicumque virtutum finitimum vitium est.
8. Ceteri filii superstites patri erant.
9. Is dolor communis erat tribus fratribus.
10. Haec virtus fructuosa vobis, mihi periculosa est.
12. Rara avis in terris, nigroque simillima cygno.

Write in Latin.

1. Death is like a sleep.
2. To a frail ship all winds are contrary.
3. The death of Socrates was harmonious with his life.
4. I have noticed a harbor fit for our ships.
5. Livius was of-the-same-age with Ennius.
6. Not even the gods — so they boast — are a-match-for the Swabians.
7. Radishes are bad for the teeth, says Pliny.
8. This thing is easy for me, [but] hard for you.
9. Simple food is good for children.
10. The speech of Marius was very pleasing to the people.

1. consentaneus. 2. idoneus. 3. aequalis. 4. par. 5. Suevi.
6. raphanus, i, m. 7. inimicus. 8. utilis. 9. ait Plinius.

8. Ablative of Want.

§ 54, i. c. d (adjectives of freedom and want, with opus and usus: R. 28).

Examples.

1. Urbs nuda praesidio poscit opem.
2. Animus per somnum sensibus et curis vacuus est.
3. Nos plerique patriae, sed omnes fama atque fortunis expertes sumus.
4. Auctoritate tua mihi opus est.
5. Etiam sapienti amicis opus est.
6. Priusquam incipias consulta, et ubi consulueris mature facto opus est.
7. Exempla nobis opus sunt.
Constructions of Syntax.

Write in Latin.

1. What Roman is free from this dishonor\(^1\)?
2. The army was in lack\(^2\) of all necessaries.
3. The common-people were-in-terror [when] deprived of tribunes.
4. Cato, said his friends, was clear\(^3\) of every human fault.
5. This counsel is foreign to\(^4\) the dignity of the empire.
6. The senate was bereft\(^5\) of counsel and authority.
7. I have need\(^6\) of your help.

\(1\) dedecus. \(2\) egenus. \(3\) vacus. \(4\) alienus a. \(5\) orbus. \(6\) opus.


§ 54, 2. \(a\) (participles of birth and origin: R. 29).

Examples.

1. Ti. Gracchus, matre nobilissima genitus.
2. Nate deā, quae nunc animo sententia surgit?
3. Natus erat pulcra origine Caesar.
4. Consul loco obscurō tenuique fortuna ortus.
5. Non sanguine humano sed stirpe divina satus es.

Write in Latin.

1. Æneas was son\(^1\) of Anchises and Venus.
2. Thou art sprung\(^2\) not from human blood, but from divine stock.
3. The youth was born of a most noble mother.
4. The consul Marius was sprung from an obscure place and slender fortune.

\(1\) natus. \(2\) ortus.

10. Ablative of Comparison.

[247.]

§ 54, 5 (ablative after comparatives: R. 32), with \(a, c\) (use of quam, construction of \(plus, etc.\)).

Examples.

1. Honesta mors turpi vita potior est.
2. Quaedam remedia ipsis periculis sunt graviora.
3. Nihil inter homines rarius perfecto oratore inventum est.
4. Humana omnia inferiora virtute ducimus.
5. Non ego hac nocte longiorem vidi.
6. Punico bello secundo nullum neque majus neque periculosius Romani gessere.
7. Saepe dixi Graecam linguam locupletiorem esse quam Latinam.
8. Hujus orationes exiliores sunt et redolentes magis antiquitatem quam aut Laelii aut Scipionis.
9. Hispanorum non plus quam quattuor milium effugerunt.
11. Spatium est non amplius pedum DC.
12. Apes nunquam plus unum regem patiuntur.
13. Amplius sunt sex menses (it is more than, &c.).
15. Consilium magis honestum quam utile.

Write in Latin.

1. The earth is larger than the moon, the sun than the earth.
2. Ignorance of future evils is better than knowledge.
3. From the tongue of the old Nestor, says Homer, flowed speech sweeter than honey.
4. A base escape from death is worse than any death.
5. All riches we hold inferior to wisdom.
6. These things are harder than one would think.
7. In this march the Romans suffered more than usual from hunger and cold.
8. You have rendered no man more kindnesses than to me.
9. This thing has in it more joy than grief.
10. In the battle at Cannae the Romans lost more than 40,000 men.
11. The speech of the consul was more true than pleasing to the people.
12. A pestilence more threatening than destructive fell upon the city.
13. There is nothing stupider than a stupid laugh.

1 ex. 2 ait. 3 Genitive. 4 omnis. 5 opinio. 6 solitum. 7 tribuo.
8 Comparative (§ 192). 9 perniciosus. 10 incide. 11 ineptus.
Constructions of Syntax.

II. Ablative of Means and Supply.

§ 54, 6. (accompaniment, means, and instrument: R. 30), with c (words of filling, &c.).

a. All the words under § 248, c are either participles, like abundans, completus; or were originally participles, as plenus. When used as pure adjectives, they take the genitive under § 218.

b. The ablatives under Rule 30 (p. 163) are of various origin, and must be translated according to the English idiom: as, dignus, worthy of; praeditus, gifted with, &c.

Examples.

1. Verris domus plena erat raptis ornamentis.
2. Exercitum Ti. Sempronius domum reportavit plenissimum praeda.
3. Erant plena laetitia et gratulatione omnia.
4. Alveus Tiberis completus erat ruderibus.
5. Pater ille tuus florebat omni genere virtutis.
6. Sum pecore et multā dives tellure.
7. Macte virtute diligentiaque esto.

Write in Latin.

1. Twelve ships were laden1 with the spoil.
2. The house of Cræsus was full of treasures.2
3. The city was full of grief and lamentation.3
4. Sulla advanced with his army into a region abounding4 in all good things.
5. Corinth was the richest city of Greece in pictures,5 statues,6 and gold.

1 onustus. 2 divitiae. 3 lucus. 4 abundans. 5 tabula. 6 signum.


§ 54, 6. e, with Remark (degree of difference).

Notice that §§ 247, (ablative of comparison) and 250 (ablative of difference), expressing different relations, may be used together with the same adjective: as, multo divitiō Crasso, much richer than Crassus.
Examples.

1. Quo occultius est periculum, hoc difficiliorus vitatur.
2. Recte non credis de numero militum: ipso dimidio<sup>1</sup> plus scripsit Clodia.
3. Hibernia dimidio minor est, ut aestimatur, quam Britannia.
4. Iter alterum per provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius.
5. Quanto dieius abest, magis cupio tanto.
6. Galli segnius sequebantur, quanto longius ab domo trahebantur.
7. Romani duobus milibus plures erant quam Sabini.
8. Decem post diebus pugnatum est.
10. Sol multis partibus major atque amplior est, quam terra universa.

<sup>1</sup>Full half.

Write in Latin.

1. Cicero was six years older than Cæsar.
2. The empire of Rome was much more powerful and lasting than [that] of Athens.
3. The more cautiously you go, the sooner<sup>7</sup>you will arrive.
4. The greater severity he showed,<sup>1</sup> the more numerous<sup>2</sup> were the mobs.
5. Veii was<sup>8</sup> about twenty miles distant<sup>8</sup> from Rome.
6. The battle of Cannæ<sup>4</sup> was fought seventeen years before<sup>5</sup> [that] of Zama.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup>utor.  <sup>2</sup>creber.  <sup>3</sup>abesse a.  <sup>4</sup>Cannensis.  <sup>5</sup>Insert quam.  <sup>6</sup>Zamensis.  <sup>7</sup>citius.

C.—Uses of Cases: Miscellaneous.


§ 52, 3. with <i>a</i>, <i>b</i>, <i>c</i> (use with intransitive verbs, adverbial phrases, Greek accusative: R. 24).

Note.—The accusatives under <i>a</i> are usually translated as adverbs (see examples). Those under <i>c</i> are mostly poetical, and should be avoided in writing Latin prose.
Constructions of Syntax.

Examples.

1. Suevi maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt.
2. Tuam vicem magnopere gaudeo.
4. Vir erat cetera egregius.
5. Id temporis eos venturos esse dixeram.
6. Cum esset illud aetatis, imperator factus est.
7. Dexterum genu lapide ictus est.
8. Os humerosque deo similis.

Write in Latin.

1. The Suevi live for-the-greatest-part on milk and meat.
2. I am often sorry on your account.
3. At that time Romulus was king.
4. A man at that age ought to be more discreet than daring.
5. Hannibal was severely wounded right in the thigh with a dart.
6. They bind their [own] heads with wreaths of-myrtle.
7. The commander exhorted his [men] at-length.
8. The maidens put on a long robe.

1 plurimum. 2 vicis. 3 prudens. 4 audax (comparative).
5 adversum femur. 6 tragula. 7 multa.


§ 52, 4. a.

Examples.

1. Heu dementiam hominum!
2. Beatos quondam duces Romanos!
3. In balneis delituerunt: testes egregios!
4. Huncine hominem! hancine impudentiam, judices! lanc audaciam!
5. O fallacem hominum spem, fragilemque fortunam, et inanes nostras contentiones!

Write in Latin.

1. O the folly of man, and [his] uncertain fortune, and our idle hopes!

1 See Gr. p. 52, Note. 2 dementia. 3 inanis.
Latin Method.

2. A famous[set of] doctors!
3. Ah! the faith of gods and men!
4. What a man! what impudence! what audacity!
5. Happy the Roman chiefs of-old.
6. Ah! unhappy me!

nobilis. pro. quondam. heu.

15. Dative of Possession, &c.

§ 51, 3. with a, b (compounds of esse; nomen est:
R. 17).

Examples.

1. Est et fidei tuta silentio merces.
2. En Priamus! sunt hic etiam sua praemia laudi.
3. Addam cerea pruna: et honos erit huic quoque pomo.
4. Di, quibus imperium est animorum!
5. Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca.
6. Sunt nobis mitia poma,
   Castaneae molles, et pressi copia lactis.
7. Homini cum deo similitudo est.
8. Puero ab inopia Egerio inditum nomen.
12. Multis proeliis miles ille interfuit.
15. Origin Romanae et dui adfuere et non defuit virtus.

Write in Latin.

1. We have and shall have the same laws.
2. A sick man always has hope.
3. I had a dispute with your friend.
4. The surname of Lucius Scipio was Asiaticus; of Pub-
lilius his brother, Africanus.
5. A brave soldier will-be-at-hand in all dangers.

adsum.
6. The name of this disease is avarice.
7. In this man was a manly soul.
8. My letter will do you no good.
9. We used to give him the nickname of sluggard.
10. Caesar had been-present-at many battles.

16. Dative of Service.

§ 51, 5 (purpose or end: R. 20).

The Dative (of service) under § 51, 5, may sometimes be translated as *predicate nominative*; but more commonly with the preposition of. It is sometimes called the *Predicate Dative*.

Examples.

1. Mihi ea res curae erit.
2. Magno malo est hominibus avaritia.
3. Is fuit et mihi et liberis meis magno usui.
5. Ea res magno tibi erit impedimento.
6. Ea gens mihi semper odio erit.
7. Tua amicitia maximo mihi erat detrimento.
8. Testimonia hujus rei sunt clarissimi poëtae.
10. Consul Hannibali ludibrio erat.
11. Plerumque Gallis brevitas nostra contemptui est.
12. Veteribus Romanis divitiae oneri miseriaeque fuere.

Write in Latin.

1. This book was of great service to me.
2. Caesar left two legions as a guard to the camp.
3. That thing will be a great hindrance to you.
4. We are the care of the immortal gods.
5. We regard this as a fault in Cicero.
6. For whose advantage is this?
7. The Germans came to our relief.

1 usus. 2 praesidium. 3 impedimentum. 4 bonum. 5 auxilium.
17. Dative of Reference.

§ 51, 7 (dativus commodi et incommodi).

The Dative (of reference) in § 235, merely expresses a more remote relation than those in § 226 (indirect object): compare the first examples under each.

Examples.

1. Quis huic rei testis est?
2. Domus pulcra dominis aedificatur, non muribus.
3. E bestiarum corporibus multa remedia morbis et vulneribus eligimus.
4. Non mihi ex cujusquam amplitudine aut praesidia periculis aut adjunta honoribus quaero.
5. Duo milites nequaquam visu ac specie aestimantibus pares.
6. Sita Ortygia est in dextra parte portum magnum Syracusem intrantibus.
7. Hic mihi quisquam misericordiam nominat?
8. Quid sibi vult haec oratio?
9. Ova alia sunt candida, ut columbis, perdicibus; alia pallida, ut aquaticis; alia punctis distincta, ut meleagridum; alia rubri coloris, ut phasianis.

Write in Latin.

1. I seek for myself no defence against danger or helps to honors.
2. The Germans chose them a place for an abode.
3. A good man seeks wealth not for himself only, but for his children and friends.
4. The calamity of the Sicilians came-before my eyes.
5. [Is it] for Hannibal [that] you have saved this city?
6. Such lamentation stirs the temper of the fiery youth.
7. The wood strews you wild leaves and acorns.
8. We cull many remedies for sickness and wounds.
9. Anticyra is situated on the left as you enter the Corinthian gulf.

1 Dative. 2 sibi. 3 obversor. 4 tantus. 5 comploratio.
6 ferax. 7 spargo. 8 agrestis. 9 frons. 10 eligo. 11 situs.
18. Ablative of Separation.

§ 54, 1. (verbs meaning remove, deprive, &c.), with a (compounds), and f (ego, indigo, with genitive). For the translation, see examples.

Examples.

1. L. Brutus civitatem dominatu regio liberavit.
2. Usu urbis prohibere peregrinos sane inhumanum est.
3. Apud veteres Germanos quemcumque mortalium arecto¹ nefas habebatur.
5. Ea philosophia spoliat nos judicio, privat approba-tione.
6. Ne ab obsidibus quidem iram belli hostis abstinuit.
7. Ego te culpā absolvo, supplicio non libero.
8. Ciceroni aquā atque igni interdicitur.
10. Illa lex tyrannis redivum semper arcebit.
11. Adventus peditatus equites metu levaverat.

¹ i.e. to turn any stranger from the door.

Write in Latin.

1. The Helvetii, cast down from that hope, desisted from their attempt.
2. I am quite free from fever, and feel finely.¹
3. The engines⁸ presently stripped⁸ the wall of its de-fenders.
4. Caecilius had cheated⁴ Various of a large sum-of-money.
5. The barbarians, having caught-sight-of⁸ the standards afar-off,⁸ desist from the attack.
6. Cæsar departed from⁷ Italy, and led his army into Gaul.
7. Sulla laid-down⁸ the dictatorship.⁹
8. The engines drove the enemy from the walls.¹⁰

¹ bene se habere. ² nudo. ³ tormenta (plur.). ⁴ fraudo. ⁵ conspicor. ⁶ procūl. ⁷ ex. ⁸ se abdicare. ⁹ dictatura. ¹⁰ moenia.
19. Ablative of Cause.

§ 54, 3. with a, b, c (certain verbs and adjectives; ob or propter; causa, gratia).

Examples.

1. Ser. Tullius regnare coepit non jussu sed voluntate atque concessu civium.
2. Quidam morbo aliquo et sensus stupore suavitatem cibi non sentiunt.
3. Quod benevolentia fit, id odio factum\textsuperscript{1} criminaris.
4. Multi homines officia deserunt mollitia animi.
5. Quam multi luce indigni sunt, et tamen dies oritur!
6. Amplissimis honoribus dignus erat adulescens Scipio.
7. Ignavi\textae ac stultitia saepe fit\textsuperscript{2} ut res maxime dilabatur.
8. Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.

\* as being done. \* happens.

Write in Latin.

1. Tarquin, relying\textsuperscript{1} on [his] victories, was-wanton in insolence.
2. For the sake of the republic, I accuse Lucius Catiline.
3. He wept at the grief\textsuperscript{2} of his friends.
4. The Roman people held\textsuperscript{3} the young Scipio worthy\textsuperscript{3} of the highest honors.
5. I judge\textsuperscript{4} him most unworthy of every honor.
6. Do this for my sake.
7. Ducks delight\textsuperscript{5} chiefly in marshy\textsuperscript{6} places.

\textsuperscript{1} subnixus. \textsuperscript{2} dolor. \textsuperscript{3} dignor. \textsuperscript{4} aestimo. \textsuperscript{5} delector. \textsuperscript{6} paluster.


§ 54, 6. (accompaniment, means, instrument), with a, b, (use of cum).
Constructions of Syntax.

Examples.

1. Venatio et cibi genere et quotidiana exercitacione et libertate vitæ vires alit.
2. Non viribus aut celeritate corporum res maximae geruntur.
3. Dei providentia mundus administratur.
4. Summis supplicii fures afficiuntor.
5. Caelum hominibus virtute recluditur.
6. Pax ornata venit ramo felicis olivae.
7. Galli huic terræ igni ferroque minitantur.
8. Luctantes ventos vasto rex Aeolus antro
   Imperio premit, ac vincis et carcere frenat.
10. Armis munimenta, non munimentis arma, tuta esse debent.
11. Nutritur vento, vento restinguitur ignis;
    Lenis alit flammas, grandior aura necat.

\[\text{both.}\]

Write in Latin.

1. We accomplish more by wisdom than by force.
2. Rome fell by her own strength.
4. The priest's head was covered with a long mantle.
5. Great things are-done\(^1\) not by strength or speed of body, but by counsel and valor.
6. Links of-steel\(^2\) are worn-out\(^3\) by constant use.

\[\text{gero,}^{3} \text{ ferreus.} \text{ contereo.}^{3}\]


§ 54, 7. with \(a, b\) (description; manner with \(cum\));
compare § 215 & \(b\) (genitive of quality).

Examples.

1. Vir acerrimo ingenio civitatem tum regebat.
2. Campi suapte natura humentes inutiles sunt.
3. Regina ad templum formā pulcherrima Dido incessit.  
4. Sabini brachio laevo gemmatus magna specie anulos gerebant.  
5. Erat inter Labienum atque hostem difficili transitu flumen ripisque praeruptis.  
6. Duo virī egregia virtute consulatum eo anno petebant.  
8. Galli eadem celeritate ad nostra castra contenderunt.  
9. Horridiores sunt Britannii in pugna adspectu; capillo-que sunt promisso, atque omni parte corporis rasa praeter caput et labrum superius.  
10. Agesilāus et staturā fuit humili, et corpore exiguo, et claudus altero pede.

Write in Latin.  
1. The barbarians were of vast size\(^1\) of body (plur.).  
2. Three Graces, of exquisite\(^2\) beauty, wait-on\(^3\) Venus.  
3. A mountain of great height overhangs\(^4\) the town.  
4. Cæsar was a man of extraordinary force\(^5\) of intellect,\(^6\) and of remarkable skill\(^7\) in-war.\(^8\)  
5. A giant of monstrous stature, whose\(^9\) name was Poly-phemus, devoured\(^10\) the companions of Ulysses.

\(1\) magnitudo. \(2\) eximius. \(3\) comitor. \(4\) impendo. \(5\) vis. \(6\) ingenium. \(7\) scientia. \(8\) rei bellicae. \(9\) Dative. \(10\) devoro. 

22. Ablative of Price.  
§ 54, 8. with \(a\) (genitive of indefinite value: R. 11; compare § 215. c).

Examples.  
1. Viginti talentis unam orationem Isocrates vendidit.  
2. Eriphyle auro viri sui vitam vendidit.  
3. Hunc fundum maxima pecunia mercatus sum.  
4. Duobus millibus nummûm hunc equum emi.  
5. Ea Poenis victoria multō sanguine stetit.  
6. Tritici modius duobus sestertiis veniit.  
7. Domum meam ternis sestertiis locavi.  
8. Mea mihi conscientia pluris est quam omnium sermo.
Write in Latin.

1. I have sold my house for fifteen talents.
2. Virtue is not salable\(^1\) for gold or gems.\(^5\)
3. That oration cost\(^2\) him a-great-deal-of labor.
4. Mean men are bribed\(^8\) with money; the ambitious\(^4\) with honors and vain glory.

\[\begin{array}{l}
\text{1 venalis.} \\
\text{2 sto.} \\
\text{3 corrumpo.} \\
\text{4 ambitiosus.} \\
\text{5 gemma.}
\end{array}\]


\[\text{[253-]}
\]

§ 54, 9. (that in respect to which; in accordance with which).

Examples.

1. Specie urbs libera est, non re verā.
2. Ex omnibus filiis natu minimus Marcus erat.
4. Iste servus aeger est pedibus.
5. Altero oculo captus erat Hannibal.
6. Tota mente et omnibus artubus contremuit.
7. Omnes Galli lingua institutis legibus inter se differunt.
9. Latini Trojanis studio ac fide erga regem cessere.
10. Non tu quidem tota re sed temporibus erras.

Write in Latin.

1. In glory Cicero was far inferior to Cæsar,\(^1\) but superior in eloquence and wisdom.
2. In laws and language the Greeks widely\(^3\) differ from the Romans, but in warlike\(^8\) glory they are nearly equal.
3. My brother is lame of the left\(^4\) foot.
4. The Spartans excelled\(^5\) all the other Greeks\(^6\) in fidelity and reverence to the laws.\(^7\)
5. The Germans were a race of tall\(^8\) stature, fair complexion, blue\(^10\) eyes, courage in war,\(^7\) and great bodily\(^9\) strength.

\[\begin{array}{l}
\text{1 Ablative.} \\
\text{2 multum.} \\
\text{3 rei bellicae (gen.).} \\
\text{4 laetus.} \\
\text{5 antecelo.} \\
\text{6 Dative.} \\
\text{7 Genitive.} \\
\text{8 grandis.} \\
\text{9 corporis (gen.).} \\
\text{10 caeruleus.}
\end{array}\]
24. **Locative Ablative.**

§ 54, 10. (idiomatic expressions), with *b* (list of verbs and verbalis under this use).

**Examples.**

1. Castra opportunis locis posita erant.
2. Terra marique res maximae gestae sunt.
3. Meliore loco res nostrae sunt.
4. Parentis loco habebatur patris amicus.
5. Reliquis oppidi partibus acriter pugnatum est.
6. De amicitia alio libro dictum est.
7. Vehementer animo angebar.
8. Silvisque agrisque viisque corpora foeda jacent.
9. Urbe tota gemitus fit.
10. Caesar nuntios tota civitate Aeduorum dimittit.
11. Menippus tota Asia illis temporibus disertissimus erat.

**Write in Latin.**

1. At the death of Cæsar grief and terror prevailed throughout the city.
2. The Romans carried-on war by land and sea.
3. At this news I was glad at heart.
4. I regard my father's brother in the light of a parent.
5. Cæsar pitched his camp on favorable ground.
6. Your affairs are in excellent case.
7. This subject is discussed in the third book.

1 *existo.* 2 *gero.* 3 *habeo.* 4 *locus.* 5 *pono.*
6 *de hac re.* 7 *dissero* (impers.).
Constructions of Syntax.

25. Predicate Genitive.

§ 50, 1. c, d (for predicate appositive; use of phrase or clause), with Remark (sapientis, &c.).

Examples.

1. Omnia quae mulieris fuerant matrimonio viri fiebant.
2. Ego totus Pompeii sum.
3. Hic versus Plauti non est.
4. Thebae populi Romani belli jure factae sunt.
5. Non gloriam meam laborem illorum faciam.
6. Albani dicionis alienae facti sunt.
7. Hoc non est judicii mei.
8. Marcellus id nec juris nec potestatis suae esse dixit.
10. Ut Athenae et Lacedaemon Atheniensium Lacedaemoniorumque causâ condita sunt, omniaque quae sunt in his urbis eorum populorum recte esse dicuntur, sic quae-cumque sunt in omni mundo deorum atque hominum putanda sunt.

Write in Latin.

i. All the property\(^1\) of the father became the son's by inheritance.\(^2\)
2. That oration is not Cicero's.
3. After the battle of Cannae, Capua became [the possession] of the Carthaginians.
4. The kingdom was [the share] of Numitor ; the wealth,\(^3\) of Amulius.
5. That is not [an affair] for your decision.\(^4\)
6. Desire\(^5\) belongs more to the young\(^6\) than to the old.

\(^1\) *bona* (plur.). \(^2\) *hereditas.* \(^3\) *pecunia.* \(^4\) *judicium.* 
\(^5\) *libido.* \(^6\) *adulescens.*

26. Relations of Time and Space.

§ 55, 1. with \(b\) (relations of time); 3. with \(a, b, c, d\) (relations of place, with locative forms) and \(f\) (locative use of ablative).
Compare the Note, p. 178, (relations of Place) with § 152, (on prepositions) and the note on p. 145 (on the use of Cases).

**Examples.**

1. Proxima nocte Caesar castra movit.
2. Tota aestivalis vos exspectamus.
3. Quadragesimo annis Alba stetit.
4. Frater meus decimo aetatis anno Româ abiit.
5. Vere diffugiunt nives.
6. Primo silentio noctis Tiburtes Romam venerunt.
7. Tertia vigilia Caesar castris excessit.
8. Heroicis aetatisbus non multi florebat philosophi.
10. Sum totos dies cum Marco, noctisque saepenumber partem.

11. Hanc urbem decem aestates continuas circumsevimus.
12. Triduo servus miserrime peribit.
13. Paucis diebus ad te veniam.
15. Gaia testamentum fecit, atque his paucis diebus obiit.
17. Consul legiones per Italiam in Galliam duxit.
18. Ex Hispania per Galliam in Italiam exercitum duxit Hannibal.
20. Numa Curibus habitatbat; sed postea Romae quadraginta annos regnavit.
22. Milites Albae constitere, in oppido munito.
23. Archias Antiochiae vixit, celeberrima quondam urbe.
25. Frater meus mox rure domum redibit.
26. M. Regulus Karthagine Romam de pace missus est.
27. Multa corpora fessorum vulneratorumque humi jacebant.
29. Is dies erat ante diem sextum (A. D. vi.) Kalendas Martias (see § 259, e).
Constructions of Syntax.

Write in Latin.

1. In winter and summer the Arabs roam-over\textsuperscript{1} the plains.
2. At the beginning of summer the consul passed\textsuperscript{2} into Spain.
3. Agamemnon scarcely in ten years took one city.
4. Within three days I will finish\textsuperscript{3} the work.
5. Cæsar moves [his] camp, and in about fifteen days arrives at the bounds\textsuperscript{4} of the Belgæ.
6. I was yesterday at Cæsar’s house (apud Caesarem).
7. That most illustrious\textsuperscript{5} commander had strengthened\textsuperscript{6} the republic at home and abroad by his victories.
8. Brutus learned philosophy at Athens, eloquence in Rhodes.
9. My sisters are passing\textsuperscript{7} their life in the country.
10. I have lived in Rome, Carthage, Athens, Sardis, and Corinth; and have now been\textsuperscript{11} three years at home in Gaul.
11. Amyntander sent ambassadors both to Rome to the Senate, and to the Scipios in Asia.
12. Cicero after [his] exile sailed\textsuperscript{10} from Greece to Italy, and remained a few days at Brundisium; then, through friendly cities, returned to Rome.

\textsuperscript{1} peragro.\textsuperscript{2} transeo.\textsuperscript{3} perficio.\textsuperscript{4} fincs.\textsuperscript{5} clarus.\textsuperscript{6} augeo.\textsuperscript{7} ago.\textsuperscript{8} § 258, d.\textsuperscript{9} Accusative.\textsuperscript{10} navigo.\textsuperscript{11} Present.

D. — Use of Moods and Tenses.

27. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive.

§ 57. 2. with a (classification: R. 43); 3, 4, 6 (hortatory, optative, dubitative); compare § 311. a, b (potential, hypothetical); and § 269. a (prohibitions).

Examples.

1. Haec sint falsa sane: invidiosa certe non sunt.
2. Malim te esse bonum quam videri.
3. Hoc vero sine ulla dubitatione confirmaverim, eloquentiam esse rem unam omnium difficillimam.
4. Me quidem eo proficiscemtem haud sane quis facile retraxerit.
5. Jam vero quis audeat dicere vera omnia esse somnia?
6. Quid hoc homine faciatis?
7. Felix vivas, mòniare felix!
8. Valeant cives mei, valeant! Sint incolumes, sint flu-
rente, sint beati. Stet haec urbs praeclara. Tranquilla 
republica cives mei perfruantur.
9. Si certum est facere, facias; verum ne post conferas 
culpam in me.
10. Nihil ignorevis, nihil gratiae causa feceris, misericordia 
commotus ne sis.
11. Isto bono utare dum adsit; cum absit, ne requiras.
12. Vendat\textsuperscript{1} aedes vir bonus propter aliqua vitia, quae ipse 
norit ceteri ignorant: pestilentes sint\textsuperscript{1} et habeantur salubres; 
ignoretur\textsuperscript{1} in omnibus cubiculis apparere serpentes;\textsuperscript{2} male 
materiatae, ruinosae—sed hoc, praeter dominum, nemo sciat.\textsuperscript{1} 
Quaero, si hoc emporibus venditor non dixerit, num id 
injuste fecerit?

\textsuperscript{1} Render these subjunctives by "suppose," \&c.  \textsuperscript{2} vermin.

**Write in Latin.**

1. Let the advantage\textsuperscript{1} of the commonwealth prevail.\textsuperscript{3}
2. Let us accordingly\textsuperscript{3} bring up\textsuperscript{4} [our] child with every 
indulgence.
3. Plant\textsuperscript{6} no tree, Varus, sooner\textsuperscript{6} than the sacred vine.
4. This thou shalt do.\textsuperscript{7} this thou shalt not do.\textsuperscript{8}
5. Let him write to me what he has done.\textsuperscript{8}
6. I could not easily say\textsuperscript{9} that this is better.
7. I wish\textsuperscript{9} [that] Athens may conquer.\textsuperscript{9}
8. This thing may [perhaps] seem absurd\textsuperscript{10} to you.
9. Some-one\textsuperscript{11} may [perhaps] think that I am-wrong.\textsuperscript{12}
10. No one can easily restrain Cæsar from victory.\textsuperscript{18}
11. I would rather\textsuperscript{14} be at home than abroad.\textsuperscript{16}
12. Suppose your friend should fall sick\textsuperscript{16} or die, what will 
you do?

\textsuperscript{1} utilitas.  \textsuperscript{2} valeo.  \textsuperscript{3} proinde.  \textsuperscript{4} nutrio.  \textsuperscript{5} sero.  \textsuperscript{6} prius.  
7 Fut. imperat.  8 Perf. subj.  9 Pres. subj.  10 absurdus.  
11 quispiam.  12 erro (infin.).  13 Compare Latin example 4 (above).  
14 malim.  15 foris.  16 in morbum cadere.
28. **Historical Infinitive.**

§ 57, 8. *h.* R. 40. (For other uses of the Infinitive, see page 114.)

**Examples.**

1. Brevi spatio hostes ex omnibus partibus decurrere, lapides in vallum conjicere; nostri primo integris viribus fortiter repugnare, neque ullam frustra telum mittere: ut quaeque pars castrorum premi videbatur, eo occurrere et auxilium ferre.


3. Interea Catilina Romae multa simul moliri: consuli insidias tendere, parare incendia, opportuna loca armatis hominibus obsidere, ipse cum telo esse, item alios jubere; dies noctisque festinare, vigilare, neque insomniis neque labore fatigari.

**Write in Latin.**

1. Every single\(^1\) article-of-plate\(^2\) that\(^8\) maid would] take into [his] hands, praise, admire.\(^3\)

2. And now not even the back\(^4\) was spared \(^5\) some\(^6\) were beaten\(^7\) with rods,\(^8\) others brought to the block.\(^9\)

3. Under the dominion\(^10\) of Lucius Sulla, everybody [would] rob, carry-off, covet\(^11\) — one man a house, another lands;\(^12\) the victors kept\(^13\) no limit\(^14\) or restraint,\(^15\) [but] did shocking\(^16\) and cruel [things] among the citizens.

---

29. **Sequence of Tenses.**

§ 58, 9, 10. (tenses of the Subjunctive, and rule for Sequence of Tenses), with the classification as given in the Remark (Gr. p. 200), which is to be carefully studied, as well as the examples above.
Observe that the general rule for the sequence of tenses is the same as in English; but in Latin a dependent verb is put in a past tense by this rule, when either the principal or a subordinate verb, on which it depends, is in the past, even though the construction may be otherwise in English (see example 7, below).

Note. — The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive under this rule may express a relatively future action (see § 307, f), as representing in indirect discourse the future perfect indicative: as, si discessisset = if he shall depart (shall have departed) (Caesar, B. G. i. 45).

Examples.

1. Non possunt multi rem amittere, ut non plures secum in eandem calamitatem trahant.
2. Rex adeo saevus erat, ut filio suo non temperaret.
3. Mos est hominum, ut nolint eundem pluribus rebus excellere.
4. Quorum haec est condicio, uti omnibus in vita commodis una cum iis fruantur, quorum se amicitiae dederint.
5. Singulas naves nostrí expugnaverunt, ut perpaucæ ex omni numero ad terram pervenerint.
6. Cicero se ex patria excessisse dicit, ut bellum civile averteret.
7. Tantum profecisse videmur, ut a Graecis ne verborum quidem copia vinceremur.¹
8. Omnem coetum hominum vitat, quasi omnibus invitus sit.²

Write in Latin.

1. I write that I may admonish you.
2. I wrote yesterday that I might inform you.
3. He runs-away¹ as if he were² frightened.
4. He undertook this task as if he were a good workman.³
5. I will come to-morrow to-see⁴ you.
6. We went out yesterday to see⁴ the battle.
7. I have toiled⁵ so-long⁶ that I am completely tired-out.⁷

¹ effugio.² Present subj. ³ fæber. ⁴ ut, with subj. ⁵ laboro.¹ ⁶ tam div. ⁷ defessus.
8. Cæsar was so merciful⁶ that not even [his] beaten⁷ enemies⁸ feared him.

9. This man is so⁹ just that no one ever feared¹⁰ to confide in him.

6 clemens. 7 victus. 8 inimicus. 9 adeo. 10 Perfect subj.

E.— Subordinate Constructions.

30. Conditional Clauses.

§ 59: general definition, with 1. a, b (Protasis and Apodosis), and the Classification on page 216 (committing to memory the models, with their meaning); also 3. a, b, and 4. a, b, c (present, past, and future conditions).

N. B.—Notice the exceptional use of the Indicative in the apodosis contrary to fact, as given in 308, b, c; comparing these with § 311, c, and the Remark.

Examples.

1. Nisi me animus fallit, haud multum a me aberit infortunium.

2. Hoc si tecum patria loquatur, nonne impetrare debeat, etiam si vim adhibere non possit?

3. Si scripserim ad fratrem meum, Romam statim properet.

4. Si calamus mihi adesset, scriberem ad Marçum.

5. Sapientia non expeteretur si nihil efficeret.

6. Servi mei si me isto pacto metuerent, ut te metuunt omnes cives tu, domum meam relinquendam putarem.

7. Si te parentes tимерent atque odissent tui, neque eos uilla ratione placare posses, ab eorum oculis aliquo concederes.

8. Si meum consilium auctoritasque valuisset, tu hodie egeres, nos liberi essemus, respublica non tot duces et exer-citus amisisset.

9. Mens prope uti ferrum est: si exerceas, conteritur; nisi exerceas, rubiginem contrahit.

10. Nulla est igitur excusatio peccati, si amici causā pæc-coaveris.
Write in Latin.

1. If you should see your father to-morrow, what should you say?
2. If I had not known that you would come, I should have written.
3. I should not have gone yesterday, if I had known.
4. I should go to-day if you wished.
5. I should go to-morrow if you should be ill.
6. Hannibal would not have fought at Zama if he could have helped it.
7. I would not have gone unless Caesar had ordered.
8. You can always do that if you try.
9. If it is allowed, I shall be glad to speak.
10. If it would be allowed, I should be glad to speak.

31. Disguised Conditions.

§ 60, general remark, also 1. with a (usual forms of disguised conditions).

Examples.

1. Nemo unquam, sine magna spe immortalitatis, se pro patria offerret ad mortem.
2. Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium et industria.
3. Tum ego: "Etiamne, si te in Capitolium faces ferre vellet?" "Nunquam" inquit "voluisset."
4. Omnes labores contemnendo fiunt tolerabiles.
5. Nec ego Seraphius nec tu Atheniensis clarus unquam fuisses.
6. Illo tempore aliter sensisses.
8. Magnitudo animi, remota a communitate conjunctioneque hominum, feritas sit quaedam et immanitas.
9. Pons sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit, ni unus vir fuisse.
Write in Latin.

1. At another time I might think so.
2. Without friendship no man's life could be truly called happy.
3. [If he were] intending-to-return home, he would not delay so long in business.
4. A life remote from the society of men and the protection of laws would justly be reckoned wild and dreary.
5. Without help of the Gauls, Cæsar could not have overcome the Germans.
6. In extreme poverty old age cannot be a light burden.

§ 61, 1. (particles of comparison introducing conditional clauses); also the Remark, comparing § 59, 3. b (condition contrary to fact).

Examples.

1. Sed quid his testibus utor, quasi res dubia aut obscura sit?
2. Me juvat, velut si ipse in parte laboris ac periculi fuerim, ad finem belli Punicī pervenisse.
3. Parvi primo ortu jacent, tanquam omnino sine animo sint.
4. Quasi vero haec similia sint!
5. Perinde ac si in hanc formulam omnia judicia legitima comprehensa sint!
6. Quasi vero ego ad illum venire debuerim!

Write in Latin.

1. He walks as if he were lame.
2. You speak to me as if you thought I were deceiving you.

1 claudus. 2 decipio.
3. You spoke to me yesterday as if you thought I was deceiving you.
4. He spends [his] money as if he reckoned himself a rich [man].
5. He looks as if he had lived a year in-the-country.
6. He spoke of the monuments and antiquities as if he had lived a year at Rome.

33. Temporal Clauses.

§ 62, 2. with Note (absolute and relative time); also a, b (construction of ubi, postquam, etc., and of cum temporal), and c (cum causal and concessive).

a. Cum followed by the present or perfect subjunctive is almost always causal or concessive, and is to be translated since, while, or although.

b. Cum followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is more commonly temporal. In this case, it is sometimes to be translated when; but is often best rendered by a participle, present or perfect, in English.

Examples.

1. Cum ad villam veni, hoc ipsum nihil agere me delectat.
2. Cum fortuna reflavit, affligimur.
3. Ubi id Verres audivit, Diodorum ad se vocavit.
4. Pompeius ut equitatum suum pulsam vidit, acie excessit.
5. Simul ac primum Verri occasio visa est, consulem deseruit.
6. Postquam id difficilius visum est, neque facultas per-ficiendi dabatur, ad Pompeium transierunt.
7. Ita mulier, dum paucia mancipia retinere vult, fortunas omnes perdidit.
8. Dixerat hoc ille, cum puer rediit. (§ 325. b).
10. Cum ver esse coeperat, Verres dabat se labori atque itineribus.

1 and no opportunity. 2 See § 290. c.
Constructions of Syntax.

11. Jam ver adpetebat, cum Hannibal ex hibernis movet.
12. Argumentum tempestatis nautae putant, cum multae transvolant stellae.
13. Epaminondas cum vicisset Lacedaemonios apud Mantineam, atque ipse gravi vulnere examinari se videret, quae-sivit salvusne esset clipeus.
15. Cum vita sine amicis insidiarum et metus plena sit, ratio ipsa monet amicitias parare.
16. Homines, cum\(^3\) multis rebus infrmiores sint, hac re maxime bestiis praestant, quod loqui possunt.
17. Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, cum ditissimus esse posset.
18. Cum multae res in philosophia nequaquam satis adhuc explicatae sint, tum perdifficilis et perobscura\(^4\) quaestio est de natura deorum.
19. Cum sit in nobis consilium, ratio, prudentia, necesse est deum haec ipsa habere majora.

\(^2\) See § 282. \(^3\) while. \(^4\) See § 93, d.

Write in Latin.

1. When you come (fut. perf.), I shall go away.\(^1\)
2. I was asleep\(^2\) when the doctor came.
3. I had scarcely\(^3\) read your letter, when Lentulus approached.\(^4\)
4. When he had said this, he went away.
5. This he had said, when news-was-brought\(^5\) that the enemy were in sight.\(^6\)
6. When summer had begun,\(^7\) he used-to-make his quarters\(^8\) at Syracuse.
7. When I reached home, my father had already gone.\(^9\)
8. While he was speaking thus, his father arrived.\(^10\)
9. When I come home at night,\(^11\) I take-comfort\(^12\) in-doing\(^13\) nothing.

\(^1\) abeo. \(^2\) dormio. \(^3\) vix. \(^4\) appropinquò. \(^5\) nuntio (impers.). \(^6\) conspectus. \(^7\) Add "to be." \(^8\) statiusa. \(^9\) proficiscor. \(^10\) venio. \(^11\) vesperi. \(^12\) me deletor. \(^13\) Gerund.
10. As soon as he saw his father coming, he ran-away.\(^{14}\)

11. Since the time is-near,\(^{15}\) it becomes us all to be ready.

12. While I do not believe him to be a robber, yet I distrust him.

13. Will you not believe, when the thing is so plain?\(^{16}\)

14. I congratulate\(^{17}\) you that\(^{18}\) you have recovered\(^{19}\) your property\(^{21}\) at-last.\(^{20}\)

\(^{14}\) *effugio*; \(^{15}\) *adsum.* \(^{16}\) *manifestus.* \(^{17}\) *gratulor* (dat.).  
\(^{18}\) *quod* (followed by indic.). \(^{19}\) *recipio.* \(^{20}\) *tandem* (before the verb).  
\(^{21}\) *ret.*

34. **Purpose and Result.**

§ 64, i. with *a* (Final Clauses, with *ut, ne, quo*);  
§ 65, i. with *a, b* (Consecutive Clauses, with *ut, quominus, quin*).

\(a\). The clause of Purpose is often to be translated by **that**, or *in order that*, with *may* or *might* (English Potential); but oftener by the Infinitive with *to*: as, *veni ut viderem, I came to see (that I might see).*

\(b\). The clause of Result is expressed in English sometimes by the Infinitive with *to*, so-as-to, or an equivalent: as, *tam longe abfui ut non viderem, I was so far away that I did not see (too far away to see).*

\(c\). After verbs of hindering, *quominus* is most commonly rendered by FROM with the verbal noun in -ING: as, *turba impedivit quominus viderem, the crowd hindered me from seeing.*

\(d\). But if the verb of hindering is *negatived* by *not*, or some equivalent, *quin* is used instead of *quominus*: as, *turba non impedivit quin viderem, the crowd did not hinder me from seeing.*

\(e\). Purpose is **never** to be expressed in Latin by the simple infinitive, as it *often* is in English. For the ways in which it may be expressed, see § 318.

**Note.**—Observe that in Latin these two constructions are precisely alike in the affirmative, but that in the negative one takes *ne*, and the other *ut non*: Thus, *custoditus est ne effugeret, he was guarded so that he MIGHT not escape*; but *custoditus est ut non effugeret, he was guarded so that he DID not escape.*
Constructions of Syntax.

Examples.

1. Capuam proficiscar, quo facilius de Pompeii rebus cognoscam.
2. Ager non semel aratur, sed novatur et iteratur, quo meliores fetus posset et grandiores edere.
3. Haec ideo ad te scribem, ne me oblitum esse mandatorum tuorum putares.
4. Quamobrem discede, atque hunc mihi timorem eripe: si est verus, ne opprimar; sin falsus, ut tandem aliquando timere desinam.
5. Helvetii legatos ad Caesarem miserunt qui pacem peterent.
7. Verba reperta sunt quae indicarent voluntatem.
8. Arria gladium dedit marito quo se interficeret.
9. Helvetii diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes convenient.
10. Natura oculos membranis tenuissimis vestivit et sepsit, quas primum per lucidas fecit, ut per eas cerni posset, firmas autem, ut continerentur; sed lubricos oculos fecit et mobiles, ut et declinarent si quid noceret, et aspectum quo vellent facile convertent.
11. Non dubito quin hoc nuntio gaudeas.
12. In virtute multi sunt adscensus; ut is gloria maxime excellat, qui virtute plurimum praestet.
13. Exspectari diutius non oportuit, quin ad castra iretur.
14. Caesar cognovit, per Afranius stare quominus dimicaretur.
15. Non recusabo quominus omnes mea scripta legant.

1 See § 282. 2 See § 229. 3 See § 320.
4 appoint. 5 See § 73. 6 See § 93, d.
7 that it was owing to Afranius.

Write in Latin.

1. Aeneas, that he might win the hearts of the Aborigines, called both the nations Latins.
2. Romulus, lest the greatness of the city should be void, opened a certain place [as] an asylum.

1 sibi conciliare. 2 vanus.
3. The Clusians sent ambassadors to Rome, to ask aid from the Senate.
4. I sent [a man] to Antony, to tell [him] this.
5. A pen was given me to write with.
6. He lived honorably, that he might quit life [with] a more calm mind.
7. Again and again I beg you to do it.
8. Thrice I have begged you to come as-soon-as-possible.
9. What prevents you from coming at-once?
10. I shall not prevent your returning home to-morrow.

3 qui. 4 calamus. 5 quo scriberem. 6 quo. 7 excedo. 8 quam primum. 9 statim. 10 aquae.

35. Clause of Characteristic.
§ 65, 2. with a, b, c, d, e, f (relative Clauses of Characteristic).

The Clause of Characteristic is to be translated variously, according to the context: see examples in the Grammar, noticing particularly e (cause or hindrance).

N. B. — The constructions which have now been given are the only ones in which the Subjunctive affects the translation into English.

Examples.
1. Qui sunt qui audeant in provincia contra fortunas praetoris judicare?
3. Nulla acies ingenii humani tanta est, quae penetrare in caelum possit.
4. Nunc dicis aliquid quod ad rem pertineat.
5. Nihil bonum est, quod non eum qui id possideat meliora faciat.
6. Digna res est, quam diu multumque consideremus.
7. Nulla mihi videbatur aptior persona quae de senectute loqueretur.
8. Major est quam cui nocere possis.
10. Voluptas est sola quae nos vocet ad se.
Constructions of Syntax.

11. Nemo est tam senex, qui se annum non putet posse vivere.

12. Nemo est quin ubivis, quam ibi ubi est, esse malit.

Write in Latin.

1. Innocence is a quality of the mind which harms no one.

2. Who is there that does not laugh sometimes?

3. There is no one who has not heard this.

4. He is an honest man, so far as I know.

5. This man is not fit for you to imitate.

6. The load is too heavy for a boy to carry.

36. Intermediate Dependent Clauses.

§ 66 (the general statement, comparing R. 47); i. with c, d, and 2. (implied indirect discourse, and dependent subjunctive): compare § 67, 1. (general rule of Indirect Discourse).

Examples.

1. Caesar dat negotium Senonibus, uti ea quae apud Belgas gerantur cognoscant, seque de his rebus certiorem faciant.

2. Caesar graviter eos accusat quod ab iis non sublevetur, praeertim cum eorum precibus adductus bellum susceperit.

3. Laudat Africanum Panaetius quod fuerit abstinens.

4. Quinto die Volusenus ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset nuntiat.

5. Ariovistus respondit: "Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturumuisse." 1

6. Helvetii, auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, constituerunt ea quae ad proficisciendum pertinera comparare.

7. Xerxes inflammasse templum Graeciae dicitur, quod parietibus includerent deos, quibus omnia deberent esse patentiac libera; quorumque hic mundus omnis templum esse et domus.

1 would have come (see § 337).
Write in Latin.

1. He promised to-give¹ what I had asked.
2. I ordered him to bring² whatever was necessary.⁸
3. The lieutenant⁴ on-his-return⁶ reported to Cæsar what he had seen in the enemy’s camp.
4. Cicero praises Pompey [on the ground] that he was a commander of the highest merit.⁶
5. The ambassador⁴ replied that, if this [demand] were refused,⁷ the Romans would at-once⁸ declare⁹ war.
6. I will declare¹⁰ frankly¹¹ what I think to be for the advantage¹² of the state.

---

37. Indirect Discourse.

§ 67, General Definition with Remark; and 1. (general rule of Indirect Discourse) with a and b (use of subject-accusative, and of relative clauses).

a. The form of speech called Indirect Discourse, and distinguished by the use of the Infinitive and Subjunctive moods, is constructed as follows: —

1. The leading statement is put in the **main clause**, with its verb in the Infinitive and the subject in the Accusative: it is a **SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE**, construed as the Object of some verb or other expression of **knowing**, **thinking**, **telling**, or **perceiving** (see the following section, where examples of it will be given).

2. Subordinate clauses, introduced by Relatives, relative or conditional Particles, and the like, have their verbs in the Subjunctive: these are **INTERMEDIATE DEPENDENT CLAUSES** (as in the foregoing section).

b. The English word to introduce Indirect Discourse is **THAT**: as, *dicit scire se haec esse vera*, he says that he knows that this is true. But it is frequently well (as in the above example) to omit “that” in translation, or even to change the form to direct discourse, as if the statement were independent, inserting the verb of **saying**, &c. (if necessary) in a parenthetical clause. Thus, in the passage —
P. Scipionem, eum qui primus Africanus appellatus est, dicere solitum, scripsit Cato, qui fuit ejus fere aequalis, nunquam se minus otiosum esse quam cum otiosus, nec minus solum quam cum solus esset. — Cic. Off. iii. 1.

An attention to this remark will often make a sentence read easily and clearly in the English idiom, without departing from the order of thought or even of words as found in Latin.

c. The use of tenses in Indirect Discourse may be seen in the following examples:

**Present.**
1. *dicit se*
   - *scribere*, he says that he is [now] writing.
   - *scripsisse*, he says that he wrote (has or had written or was writing).
   - *scripturum [esse]*, he says that he will write.

**Past.**
2. *dixit se*
   - *scribere*, he said that he was [then] writing.
   - *scripsisse*, he said that he had written.
   - *scripturum [esse]*, he said that he would write.

**Future.**
3. *dicet se*
   - *scribere*, he will say that he is [then] writing.
   - *scripsisse*, he will say that he has written, &c.
   - *scripturum [esse]*, he will say that he is going to write.

Observe that in the future of Indirect Discourse, with the participle in -turus, the infinitive *esse* is more commonly omitted.

d. With verbs of *hoping*, *promising*, *threatening*, and the like, the Latin use differs from English in requiring the subject always to be expressed: as,
1. *sperat se venturum, he hopes to come* (lit. "he hopes that he shall come").
2. *minatus est se urbem deleturum, he threatened to destroy the city.

e. As in English, a double construction is found in the passive of indirect discourse, the verb of *saying*, &c., being either personal or impersonal. Thus we may say *dicitur Caesar abisset*, *Caesar is said to have gone*; or, *dicitur Caesarem abisset*, *it is said that Caesar has gone*. In the former case (as more commonly in Latin), the subject of the verb is *Caesar*; in the latter, the clause *Caesar abisset* (compare § 330, a).
F.—Substantive Clauses.

38. Infinitive Clauses.

§ 70, 2. (the infinitive clause as Subject and as Object: R. 38, 39), also § 57, 8. a and c. Compare the illustration and examples in Lesson 21, page 32.

a. In English the sign of the Infinitive is to. It is often used in such sentences as these: "I think it to be right;" "I know it to be true;" "He is said to be rich;" "You ordered it to be done;" when we might say, "I think that it is right," and so on. In Latin the infinitive construction is used in this way after any verb or other expression of knowing, thinking, telling, or perceiving.

b. The present infinitive (§ 288, with a), when depending on a past tense, is to be translated by a past tense: as, renuntiavit hostes esse in conspectu, he brought word that the enemy were in sight; sometimes by the perfect infinitive: as, scire potuit, he might have known; hoc fieri oportuit, this ought to have been done. In these cases, the past possibility, necessity, &c., are indicated in Latin by the leading verb, as they are not in English.

c. The perfect infinitive in Latin may stand in indirect discourse for any past tense of the indicative (see § 288, b, with the special use of memini).

Examples.

1. Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori.

2. Accusatores multos esse in civitate utile est.

3. Cives civibus parere aequum esse censeo.

4. Magna laus est tantas res solum gessisse.

5. Fama est ludibrio fratris Remum novos transiluisse muros.


7. Te hilari esse animo valde me juvat.

8. Majori parti exercitus placuit castra defendere.

9. Memini me epistolam scribere cum hic rumor adlatus est.

10. Mihi non licet esse otioso (non licet me esse otiosum).

11. Eum non licet ante tempus consulem fieri.
12. Vestrâ interest manus hostium distineri.
13. Oratorem irasci minime decet, simulare non dedecet.
15. Facinus est vincire civem Romanum; scelus verberare; prope parricidium necare: quid dicam in crucem tollere? verbo satis digno tam nefaria res appellari nullo modo potest.

Write in Latin.

1. It is a grand\(^1\) thing to be made consul.
2. It is beneficial\(^2\) for a sick\(^3\) man to sleep.
3. It is-better\(^4\) to live honorably\(^5\) than to be born honorably.
4. It is said that he was writing at the\(^6\) time.
5. There was, however, a rumor that the election\(^7\) would be\(^8\) put off.\(^9\)
6. It is lawful for no man to lead an army against [his] country.
7. The scouts\(^10\) report that the Germans have already crossed\(^11\) the Rhine.
8. It was to the interest of Clodius that Milo should perish.
9. I hear that Cicero has set out\(^12\) [for] Athens.
10. Divitiacus said that he knew these things were true.
11. I remember that [when] a boy I saw the orator Hortensius.
12. I take it ill\(^13\) that I am poor.\(^14\)

\(^1\) magnificus.  \(^2\) utilis.  \(^3\) aegrotus.  \(^4\) praestat.  \(^5\) honeste. \\
\(^6\) is.  \(^7\) comitia (plur.).  \(^8\) fore ut.  \(^9\) differe.  \(^10\) explorator. \\
\(^11\) transeo.  \(^12\) proficiscor.  \(^13\) aegre fero.  \(^14\) Compare § 333, b.

39. Substantive Clauses of Purpose.

§ 70, 3. (clauses with ut and ne developed from purpose), with a, b, c, d, e, f (clauses of influence, wish, permission, resolve, effort, and fearing), with the two Remarks on page 196 (omission of ut or ne).

The clause of Purpose may be translated by THAT with the auxiliaries may, might, shall, should (English potential); but often by the simple INFINITIVE (compare 37, above).
Examples.

1. Navem idoneam ut habeas diligenter videbis.
2. Videant consules ne quid respública detrimenti capiat.
3. Satis undique provisum atque praecautum est, ne quid adversus vos in pugna praeter hostes esset.
5. Caesar huic imperat adeat civitates, horteturque ut populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet.
6. Cave enim putes me pacem desperare.
7. Galli timebant ne Caesar sibi bellum inferret.
8. Ornamenta metuo ut possim recipere.
10. Tu ad me de istis rebus omnibus scribas velim quam diligentissime.
11. Publicola instituit primus, ut singulis consulibus alternis mensibus lictores praebent.

Write in Latin.

1. He gave-orders¹ that the Senate should return to [their usual] apparel.²
2. The Senate voted³ that the consuls should hold a levy.⁴
3. The general made-proclamation¹ that no one⁵ should fight without his orders.⁶
4. Divitiacus implores⁷ that Cæsar will pardon⁸ his brother⁹ [his] fault.¹⁰
5. I wish you would inquire,¹¹ and write to me.
6. Galba persuaded the soldiers to go away.
7. I fear he will come.
8. I fear he will not come.

¹ edico² vestitus³ decerno⁴ delectus⁴ ne quis⁶
⁷ imploro¹ ignoscó³ Dative
⁸ peccatum¹ interrogo¹
40. Substantive Clauses of Result.

§ 70, 4. (clauses with *ut* and *ut non*, developed from *result*), with *a, d, e, g* (clauses of *happening*, *tantum abest ut*, *facere ut*, and *hindering*). The clause of Result may be translated by *that*, with or without the auxiliaries *can, could*; occasionally by the simple Infinitive; sometimes by the participle noun in *-ING* (see examples under *g*), especially verbs of hindering.

In general, the learner may be advised to use the Infinitive in rendering a Latin object-clause, *wherever the English idiom permits*.

**Examples.**
1. Restat *ut* pausa *dicam* de senectute.
2. Reliquum est *ut officiis certemus* inter nos.
3. Sequitur *ut officiorum genera distinguam*.
4. Facere non possum *quin* quotidie litteras ad te *mittam* ut tuas accipiam.
5. Tantum abest *ut* nostra *miremur, ut* nobis ipse non *satisfaciat* Demosthenes.
6. Non est dubium *quin* totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii *possint*.
7. Sequitur *ut futurum sit* ut rex interficiatur.
8. Credidi *fore ut* puerum ignaviae *pudret*.
9. Haec prima lex amicitiae sanciat: *ut* ab amicis honesta petamus; amicorum causā honesta faciamus; ne exspectemus quidem, dum rogemur; studium semper adsit, cunctatio absit.

**Write in Latin.**
1. It remains¹ that I speak briefly² concerning peace.
2. It cannot be doubted that³ we ought to obey⁴ the laws of virtue.
3. Dionysius was so far⁵ from being happy, that he was of all men most wretched.
4. The soldiers were hardly⁶ held-back⁷ from bursting⁸ into the town.

¹ *restat.* ² *pauca.* ³ *quin.* ⁴ *pareo.* ⁵ *tantum aberat* (impers.). ⁶ *agre.* ⁷ *retineo.* ⁸ *quin.* ⁹ *inrumpo.*
41. **Substantive Clauses with Quod.**

§ 70, 5. with a and b (indicative clause with quod, introducing a statement of fact, specification, or object of feeling).

The quod-clause is generally to be translated by that, or the-fact-that; occasionally by whereas, or as-to-what.

**Examples.**

1. Non ea res me deterruit, quod tu ad me nullas litteras miserat.

2. Percommode factum est, quod de morte primo die disputatum est.

3. Non pigritia facio quod non mea manu scribo.


5. Me una consolatio sustentat, quod tibi nullum a me pietatis officium defuit.

6. Quod spiratis, quod vocem mittitis, quod formam hominum habetis, indignantur.

1 See § 93, d.

**Write in Latin.**

1. It alarms me that I hear nothing from my brother.

2. This is my chief comfort, that I have done no wrong willingly.

3. The Romans excelled the Greeks in this,—that they knew-how to give liberty to conquered states.

4. I am glad that you have returned at length to [your] country.

5. As to what you say of [your] health, I am glad to hear that you are recovering.

1 terreo. 2 illud. 3 solacium. 4 injuria. 5 volens. 6 scio. 7 victus. 8 revertor. 9 valetudo. 10 convalesce.

42. **Indirect Questions.**

§ 67, 2. (construction of the Indirect Question), with a and e (use of the periphrastic future, nescio quis, etc.); also the Remark, p. 246 (passive construction).
Observe that an Indirect Question occurs only when an *interrogative clause* (or one introduced by an interrogative word) *is made the subject or object of some verb*, or equivalent phrase. Thus the words *who is there?* are a *DIRECT QUESTION*; in the sentence *I do not know* [it is uncertain] *who is there*, the same words are an *INDIRECT QUESTION*. This form is to be carefully distinguished from dependent RELATIVE clauses under 39, above; also from direct questions in the subjunctive mood (*dubitative subjunctive*): as, *quid faciam?* *what shall I do?* *quid facerem?* *what was I to do?*

**Examples.**

1. Si quid in mentem venit, velim scribas et ipse quid sis acturus.
2. Caesar ab iis quaesivit, quae civitates quantaeque in armis essent, et quid in bello possent.
3. Incertum est quando domus nostras visuri simus.
4. Videamus deorumne providentia mundus regatur.
5. Quaero num quando amici novi veteribus sint anteponendi.
6. Deinde ex eo quaesitum est, Archelaum nonne beatum putaret.
7. Quaero utrum Alexandrum an Caesarem magis mireris.
8. Interrogatus scutumne amisisset, respondit id esse tutum.
9. Mihi non minori curae est qualis respublica post mortem meam futura sit, quam qualis hodie sit.

**Write in Latin.**

1. Do you not remember what I said a-little-while-ago.¹
2. No man knows when he shall die.
3. I wrote what I was going-to-do.²
4. I asked what you were going-to-do:³ what had to be done.⁴
5. You ask me whether I have lost my friend.
6. Bring-me-word⁵ whether your brother is at home.
7. I should-like-to-have-you⁶ inform⁷ me whether you will come or-not.⁸

¹ *paolo ante.* ⁰ *actus.* ³ *facturus.* ⁴ *faciendum esse.*
⁵ *remunio.* ⁶ *velim.* ⁷ *certiorem facere* (subj.). ⁸ *necne.*
G. — Participial Constructions.

43. Participles: Predicate Use.

§ 72, 1. with b (use of the participles; perfect of deponents); 2, 3. with Remark and a (adjective and predicate use); 4. with a, b (the future participle in urus).

In these constructions, the translation must be varied to conform to the English idiom (see § 292, with the Remark).

Examples.

1. Pastor elatam securim in regis caput dejectit.
2. Catilinam Lentulus et Cethagus deprehensi non terruerunt.
3. Non multo ante urbem captam, exaudita est vox e luco Vestae.
4. Ab orto usque ad occidentem solem pugnatum est.
5. Querimur de Milone per vim expulso.
6. Major ex civibus amissis dolor quam laetitia fusis hostibus fuit.
7. Post expulsos reges consules creati sunt.
8. Aër effluens huc et illuc ventos efficit.
9. Tarquinius elatum e curia regem in inferiorem partem per gradus dejectit.
10. Fugientes Gallos Caesar adsecutus trucidavit.
11. Intentum animum tanquam arcum habebat Appius senex.

Write in Latin.

1. Each man claimed$^1$ for himself the glory of having slain$^2$ the king.
2. From the founding$^3$ of the city to the expulsion$^4$ of the kings and the liberation$^5$ of the city was two hundred and forty years.
3. Cæsar overtook$^6$ the Helvetii in-their-flight,$^7$ at$^8$ the river Arar.

1 exsquo.$^8$ 2 interficio.$^8$ 3 condeo.$^8$ 4 exigo.$^8$ 5 libero.$^1$
6 adsequor.$^8$ 7 fugio.$^8$ 8 ad.
4. After the storming\(^9\) of Massilia a league was struck.\(^{10}\)
5. Six years after the capture\(^9\) of Veii, Rome was taken by the Gauls.
6. By the conquest\(^{11}\) of the Veientes, the consul had increased\(^{12}\) the Roman state.

\[\text{expugno.}^1 \quad \text{ico.}^3 \quad \text{devineo.}^8 \quad \text{augeo.}^2\]

44. Ablative Absolute.

§ 54, 10. \(b\), with Note (ablative absolute of \textit{time} or \textit{circumstance}), and \(c\) (impersonal use of adjective or participle).

\(a\). The Ablative Absolute is very rarely found except with the \textit{present active} and the \textit{perfect passive} participle.

\(b\). As the Nominative Absolute is rarely admissible in English, a change of form is generally required in translation. Thus the present participle is oftenest to be rendered by a relative clause with \textit{when} or \textit{while}; and the perfect passive participle by the perfect active participle in English. These changes may be seen in the following example:—

“At illi, intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris, atque occupatis in munitione castrorum, subito se ex silvis ejecerunt; impetuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro cas- tris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt; duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a Caesare, cum hae (perexigno intermisso loci spatio inter se) con- stitissent, novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris, per medios auda- cissime perruperunt, sequi inde incolumes receperunt.” — \textit{Caesar}, B. G. v. 15.

“But they, having paused a space while our men were unaware and busied in fortifying the camp, suddenly threw themselves out of the woods; then making an attack upon those who were on guard in front of the camp, fought fiercely; and, though two cohorts had been sent to their relief by Cæsar, after these had taken their position (leaving very little space of ground between them), as our men were alarmed by the strange kind of fighting, they dashed most daringly through the midst of them, and got off safe.”

Examples.

1. Caesar, confirmata re ab exploratoribus, omnem equi- tatum praemisit.

2. Paucis a me\(^1\) stantibus, non desperabo.

\(^1\) on my side.
3. Non te invito filium tuum Romam mittam.
4. Pythagoras, Tarquinio Superbo rege, in Italiam venit.
5. Latini exercitu a consulis deleto pacem Romanos poposcerunt.
6. Caesar castris munitis, vineas agere, quaeque ad oppugnandum usi erant comparare coepit.
7. Catilina necato filio vacuum domum scelstis nuptiis fecit.
8. Lysias, filio e civitate pulso, multos annos Sardibus vixit.
9. Cognito super humeros fratris paludamento sponsi, quod ipsa confecerat, virgo solvit crines.\(^2\)

\(^2\) A sign of mourning.

**Write in Latin.**

1. After ending\(^1\) the war with the Veneti, Cæsar put\(^2\) all the senate to death\(^2\) [and] sold the rest [of the inhabitants] at-public-sale.\(^3\)
2. We strive\(^4\) in vain when nature opposes.\(^5\)
3. The father, not-expecting\(^6\) the arrival of his son, set-out\(^7\) for Rome.
4. The Latins, having lost\(^8\) [their] army, begged peace of the Romans.
5. The Romans, when the city was taken by the Gauls, retreated\(^9\) to the Capitol.

\(^1\) **conficio** (abl. abs.). \(^2\) **neco** (abl. abs.). \(^3\) **sub corona.**

\(^4\) **contento.** \(^5\) **repugno.** \(^6\) **despero.** \(^7\) **proficiscor.**

\(^8\) **amitto.** \(^9\) **se recipere.**

**45. Gerundive Constructions.**

§ 72, 5. with c (participial and adjective use); § 73, 1, 2. (Gerund and Gerundive); 3. with a, b, c, d (the gerundive constructions).

**Note.**—In this Gerundive use the form in **dus** is always to be rendered by an active form in English (usually by the participial noun in -ING, followed by the objective; see examples 3, 4, 5); while in the Predicate use it is always passive (translated **ought, must, &c.;** see Lesson 16, 2. **d**).
Examples.

1. Vitia senectutis diligentia compensanda sunt.
2. Rem tibi omittendam esse censeo.
3. Helvetii legatos pacis petendae causae miserunt.
4. Vivis, et vivis non ad deponendum sed ad confirmandam audaciam.
5. Caesar pontem in Arari faciendum curavit.
6. Praetor decemviros agro Samniti metiendo dividendoque creavit.
7. Habenda ratio valetudinis; utendum exercitationibus modicis; tantum cibi et potionis adhibendum, ut reficiantur vires non opprimantur.
10. Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum proponendum, signum tuba dandum, ab opere revocandi milites, acies instruenda, milites cohortandi, signum dandum.

1 Dative.

Write in Latin.

1. The consul gives heed to propitiating the gods.
2. All hope of taking the town was lost.
3. Caesar perceives that the war must be put-off till summer.
4. The consul gave Fabius one legion to lead into Spain.
5. Conon provided-for the repair of the walls of Athens.
6. A short time of life is [long] enough to live well and happily.
7. By always obeying the magistrates, the youth won themselves good fame.
8. The grass here is very convenient for sleeping.
9. You have lost much time in play.

1 opera, 2 placuo, 3 animadverte, 4 differo, 5 ad, 6 curo, 7 reficio, 8 spatium, 9 ad, 10 adsequor, 11 commodus, 12 ludo, 13 gramine (N.).
PART THIRD.

ON READING LATIN.

NOTE.—The following section, consisting chiefly of hints and directions to aid the learner in his subsequent reading, is not designed to be used as lessons for class instruction, but to be reserved for reference or occasional use, according to the teacher’s judgment. Its chief advantage may perhaps be found at a later period of study than that covered by the Reading Lessons contained in this book.

1. THE MEANING OF WORDS.

In his reading, the learner should always be guided, not merely by the dictionary meaning of the words, but by the meaning of the Root, or Stem, and terminations, as explained by the laws of derivation and the groupings of families of words (see pages 42–45). To aid in this, the following illustrations may be of service.

1. Notice the meaning of the significant endings, and their force in the derivative words.

As an example of analysis, take the word pābulātio. The termination tio is seen to be a “verbal abstract;” that is, to express, in a general or abstract way, the action of a verb. The long ā points to a verb of the first conjugation, formed from an adjective or noun of the first or second declension. This leads us to the noun pābulum; and the verb would signify doing something with that noun. In the list (p. 43), bulum is found as a termination of nouns of means: pābulum is the means of doing the action expressed in the root pā. As roots are not given in our lexicons, we must learn to recognize them in the present stems of verbs (see Lesson 28). If the meaning of pascor is known, pābulum will appear to be a means of feeding; pābulor (deponent) is to obtain the means of feeding; and pābulātio, in the connection where we find it, can only mean foraging.
The Meaning of Words.

Even when the meaning of the root does not appear at all, the grouping of the derivations may still be very instructive. Thus, humus, ground; humilia, low (on the ground); homo (homin-), man (creature of earth); humānus, gentle, as belonging to man in distinction from brutes; humānitās, gentleness or refinement.

The chief advantage, however, is in the knowledge of immediate and conscious derivatives. Thus, aedilicus can only mean belonging to an aedile, while aedilis itself must have something to do with public edifices (aedificia); sernunculus must mean a little talk; esurio, desire to eat, hence to be hungry; emāx, eager to buy, and so on. Compare, for illustration, the following words from one root; medecor, medicus, medicīna, medicīnālis, medicor, medicāmentum, medicāmentarius, medicābilis, medicāmentōsus, meditor (frequentative, with an earlier meaning preserved). Notice the modes of formation in the foregoing words.

Even if no advantage were gained in acquiring or retaining the meaning, yet the words become more interesting and lively, and the knowledge of them more intelligent and fruitful. Thus in redintegratio we have the prefix red-, back again (to its former state); the ending -tio (verbal abstract); the verb is integro (āre), denominative from integer, whole or sound (in, not; tag, root of tango, touch; ra, participial = tus or nus): hence the meaning restoration (making uninjured again).

In such derivatives as amputo, computo, the meanings seem absurdly inconsistent. But the verb is a denominative from the adjective putus, a collateral form of purus, clean. The corresponding verb (which would be puo) is lost; but its original sense appears in puto, to clean up (as by trimming off a diseased branch), and also to clear up (as an account), and so to reckon, then to think, which meanings are divided between the above compounds.

2. Form words with the following meanings from their primitives, comparing the Vocabulary:

1. A reckoning (reor, reckon); 2. An assembly (convenio, come together); 3. Arrangement (dispōno, distribute); 4. A change (mūto, alter); 5. A joining (jungo); 6. A breaking (frango); 7. Length (longus); 8. Breadth (lātus); 9. Power of holding (capāx from capio, take); 10. Means of teaching (doceo); 11. Means of support (colo); 12. Means of covering (tego); 13. Brightness (clārus); 14. Softness (mollis, soft); 15. Sweetness
Latin Method.

(suāvia); 16. Means of trying (ex-peror); 17. A tray (for carrying: fero); 18. A piece broken (frangō); 19. Means of feeding (alo); 20. A bramble-thicket (dūmus); 21. A rose-garden (rosa); 22. A dove-cote (columba); 23. Lamentable (fleō); 24. Made of flowers (flō); 25. Blooming (flōreo); 26. Sickly (morbus); 27. Commerce (mercör); 28. A mingling (miscēo); 29. Belonging to a soldier (miles); 30. To grow mild (mita); 31. A little measure (modus); 32. A little pattern (forma); 33. A little man (homo); 34. A little puppy (catulus); 35. A means of defence (mūnio); 36. Changeable (mūto); 37. Teachable (docέo); 38. With a large nose (nāsus); 39. With horns (cornū); 40. Bearded (barba); 41. Belonging to a ship (nāvis); 42. Sinewy (nervus); 43. Snowy (nīx); 44. A little eye (oculus); 45. Son of Priam (Priamus).

3. Explain the following phrases from the meaning of the Root prefixed, with the significant ending:—

1. CAD, fall: cađo, accidō, etc.
   1. Casus est, cum aliquid cecidit, it is an accident when something befalls.
   2. Calamitas accidit, a misfortune has happened.
   3. Caduca spes, a futile hope.
   4. Decidua sidera, falling stars.
   5. Solis occasus, sunset.
   6. Ab oriente ad occidentem, from east to west.
   7. Succidua flamma, a dying flame.
   8. Occasio pugnandi, an opportunity for fighting.
   9. Pestis in urbem incidit, a plague attacked the city.
10. Post Trojae excidium, after the destruction of Troy.

COMPARE the English words case, accident, deciduous, occasion, incidental, casualty.

2. CAP, take: caplio, inciplio, etc.
   1. Litteras tuas accepi, I got your letter.
   2. Acceptus erat populo, he was a favorite of the people.
   3. Auceps multos passeres cepit, the fowler caught a good many sparrows.
   4. Captator aurae popularis, one who courts popular favor.
   5. Incidere in captionem, to be tricked.
6. Captura magna piscium, a great haul of fish.
7. Populus vult decipi, the people like to be taken in.
8. Inceptio operis, undertaking a task.
10. Multa pericula expei, I have encountered many a peril.
11. Frugum fructuumque perceptio, the gathering of crops and fruits.
12. Receptui canere, to sound a retreat.

ENGLISH: captive, capture, accept, receive, perception, incipient, except.

3. FAC, make: facio, efficio.
1. Dominationem adfectat, he aims at dominion.
2. Gaudium dolorque sunt affectus animi, joy and grief are affections of the mind.
3. Captivum morte adfecit, he put the prisoner to death.
4. Librorum confectio, the composing of books.
5. Confectio negotiorum, one who despatches business.
6. Dolore confectus, exhausted with grief.
7. Arma sanguine infecta, arms stained with blood.
8. Re infecta, without success (the thing undone).
9. Officia perfecte, to fulfil one's duties.
11. Facinus atroc hic fecit, this man has done a violent act.
12. Res factu facilis, a thing easy to do.
13. Per vim et factionem, by party violence.
14. Mature facto opus est, there is need of prompt action.
15. Praefectus castrorum (or castris), a quartermaster.
16. Pecunia multarum effectrix est voluptatum, money procures many delights.
17. Pontem reficere conantur, they try to repair the bridge.
18. Filius patri suffectus, a son put in his father's place.
19. Sufficit hoc dicere, it is enough to say this.

ENGLISH: —fact, factious, effect, efficacious, refection, confectionery, perfect, sufficient, factitious, facility, difficult, officious, affectionate, benefit, satisfy.
5. **TAG, touch**: tango,⁸ contingo.

1. Haec causa te non attingit, *this motive does not touch you.*
2. Versibus rem attingere, *to treat a subject in verse.*
3. Attactu nullo, *with no contact* (Æn. ii. 350).
5. Contagio sceleris, *a sharing in guilt.*
7. Sanguine se contaminare, *to stain one's self with blood.*
8. Turris contigit vallum, *the tower reaches the palisade.*
9. Romae nutriri mihi contigit, *I had the luck to be brought up at Rome.*
12. Simul ac tetigit provinciam, *as soon as he reached the province.*

**ENGLISH**: — tact, tangible, contact, contingency, integrity, contagion.
2. THE LATIN SENTENCE.

It may now be taken for granted that the learner has become acquainted with the meaning of many words, and has learned to distinguish the case, person, tense, &c.; by their inflections, so as to connect them readily in a simple sentence. He will have noticed that, while in English words almost always follow the order of Subject, Verb, and Object or Predicate, in Latin this order is very seldom found; while Latin has an order of its own (see § 343 of the Grammar), though it is much less rigidly followed than in English. The chief difficulty he will now have to meet will be in the long and complicated sentences, which are much more common in Latin than in English. And, before he attempts these, a few points should be carefully observed.

As early as possible, let him accustom himself to follow the thought and the words in their Latin order; not to pick out the words here and there, to make a natural (English) order, as if the sentence were a puzzle, to be taken to pieces and put together again. Let him attend carefully to the ideas in the order in which they are expressed, with their relations as denoted by the inflections. After a very little practice—reading over the words several times, if necessary—the meaning will begin to appear through a kind of broken English, and a habit can soon be formed of reading in the Latin order almost as well as in our own.*

The following special directions will now be of service:—

1. Read the Latin carefully, noting familiar words, and single out the Nominative (if there is one) and the Verb.

N. B.—All Latin words ending in t—except at, sat, et, post, tot, quot, ut, caput (with compounds), and the affix -met—are verbs in the third person; all in nt are in the third person plural.

* It will be noticed that English itself often deviates from the established order in its older forms or in poetry, without presenting any difficulty: as in the sentence, "Whom therefore ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you."
2. Notice the first word or words, as these will often hint the gist of the sentence.

3. Note the person, number, and voice of the Verb, before deciding on the relations of the other words.

4. Notice that Correlative expressions — as . . . as, not only . . . but also, &c. — immediately precede the same words or phrases which they must precede in English.

5. Translate by phrases and not by single words: taking an adjective with its noun, an adverb with its verb, and so on.

N. B. — An adjective usually follows its noun: when it goes before, it is generally for emphasis, and so often gives a hint at the meaning of the sentence.

So much for simple sentences. But Latin has the habit, more than most languages, of inserting Subordinate Clauses (§ 180. 6) in the body of the sentence. Such clauses are generally introduced by a Relative word or a Subordinate Conjunction (see the list in § 155. d-g). These — which we may call SUBORDINATE CONNECTIVES — suspend the sense, until the subordinate clause is finished; and this, again, may be suspended in the same way. Thus a Latin period often becomes very long and involved. If it gets to be confusing, then a subordinate clause may be dropped entirely, to be taken up afterwards. But generally the following directions will serve:

6. The words at the beginning of a sentence or clause belong with the first finite verb.* But —

7. Any clause, principal or subordinate, is suspended, when any subordinate connective appears between the first and last word of that clause.

* A Finite Verb is one limited by personal endings; neither an Infinitive nor a Participle.
8. In case such a connective appears, the rest of the main clause does not appear till the whole of the subordinate one is finished.

9. An Interrogative word often serves as a connective, introducing an Indirect Question.

10. A relative clause in Latin often comes before the principal or antecedent clause (see § 200. b, with Rem.).

Thus it will be seen that the next finite verb after any subordinate connective is the leading verb of that clause, unless the clause itself is suspended; a and that the main verb of the sentence may be known by not being introduced by any such subordinate word. b Rarely a verb may be omitted; but the sentence is then easily understood as elliptical.

Take now the following example: —

**Atque ego, ut vidi quos** maximo furore et scelere esse inflammatos **sciebam, eos** nobiscum esse et Romae **remansisse**, in eo omnes dies noctesque **consumpsi, ut** quid agerent, quid molirentur, **sentirem ac viderem**.

Here the leading clause *Atque ego* (6) is suspended (7) by the relative clause *ut vidi*, which again is interrupted by the words *quos . . . sciebam*. The latter clause being now complete (8), the object of *vidi* is seen to be the infinitive clause *eos . . . remansisse*, the antecedent coming after the relative (10). The main clause is now resumed, its verb being evidently *consumpsi*, which is the predicate of *ego*. This again is followed by *ut . . . viderem* in apposition with *eo*, this clause being itself suspended by the indirect questions *quid . . . molirentur* (9).

**Note.** — In applying the rule for the suspension of clauses, it should be remembered that a relative clause is very rarely suspended except by relative pronouns. In the very common phrases, *qui si, qui cum, quem quis*, etc., it is necessary, according to the English idiom, to translate the relative by a demonstrative word; as, *qui cum advenisset, when he had arrived; cui quis credat? who can believe him?* It may be added that the comparative conjunctions, *tamquam, quasi*, with * nisi* and some others, are often used without a verb.
The learner is now advised to study carefully the sub-
joined passages (which may be translated and explained to
him by the teacher), comparing the various phrases and
subordinate constructions with the foregoing notes. The
figures in these passages refer to the above points.

1. T. Labienus,⁶ castris hostium potitus,⁶ et ex loco
superiore quae⁹ res in nostris castris gererentur con-
spicatus,⁶ decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit.
Qui cum ex equitum et calonum fuga quo⁹ in loco res
esset,⁸ quantoque⁹ in periculo et castra et legiones et
imperator versaretur⁸ cognovissent,⁸ nihil ad celeri-

2. Occidisse⁲ patrem Sex. Roscius arguitur. Sce-
estum, di immortales, ac nefarium facinus! atque
ejus modi* quo uno maleficio scelera omnia complexa
esse videantur. Etenim si⁷ (id quod praecclare a
sapientibus dicitur) vultu saepe laeditur pietas,⁸ quod⁶
supplicium⁶ satis acre reperietur⁶ in eum qui mortem
obtulerit parenti, pro quo mori ipsum, si⁷ res postula-
ret, jura divina atque humana cogebant?⁸ In hoc
tanto, tam atroci, tam singulari maleficio, quod ita
raro exstitit ut, si quando auditum sit, portenti ac
prodigii simile numeretur,⁸ quibus tandem tu, C.
Erucli, argumentis accusatorem censes uti oportere?

3. Reliquum est ut de Q. Catuli auctoritate et sen-
tentia dicendum esse videatur. Qui⁥ cum ex vobis
quaereret, si in uno Cn. Pompeio omnia poneretis, si
quid eo factum esset,† in quo spem essetis⁹ habituri,‡
cepit⁵ magnum suae virtutis fructum ac dignitatis, cum

* The phrase ejus modi, "of such a sort," is here equivalent to tale.
† in case any thing should happen to him.
‡ The clause from in quo is the object of quaereret, suspended by the
two conditional clauses si . . . poneretis, si . . . esset.
omnes una prope voce in eo ipso vos spem habituros esse dixistis. Etenim talis est vir, ut nulla res tanta sit ac tam difficilis, quam ille non et consilio regere et integritate tueri et virtute conficere possit. Sed in hoc ipso ab eo vehementissime dissentio, quod, quo⁷ minus certa est hominum ac minus diurna vita,⁸ hoc magis res publica, dum⁷ per deos immortales licet,⁸ frui debet summi viri vita atque virtute. — Cic. Manil. 20.

3. READING AT SIGHT.

The most valuable knowledge we can have of a foreign language, whether for the pleasure and advantage to be derived from it, or for the convenience of a practical acquaintance with its forms, can be had only by the habitual practice of reading at sight. In attempting this, the following directions will be of service:

1. Look first at the endings of words, so as to become instantly aware of their grammatical relations.

2. Observe the significant endings, and always connect obvious derivatives with their primitives.

3. Even where derivations are not obvious, group words in families, so as to associate their meanings.

4. Associate the Latin words with English derivatives, however remote; and with other languages, if you happen to know any.

5. Use any mechanical device or "thumb-rule" possible, as to the position of words, or their probable meanings in such and such connections.

6. Commit to memory phrases, or (if possible) whole passages.

7. Notice constantly such idioms, or modes of expression, as are like or unlike our own.
8. In translating aloud, always use the English idiom; but take in the Latin first in its own idiom; if possible, without even thinking of the corresponding English words.

9. In translating any word, always bear in mind its leading or principal meaning.

This is not always the etymological meaning, though it may be usually traced to that; but it is the conscious meaning (as it were), the notion which the Roman himself attached to it. For example, the leading meaning of mittō seems to be let go, either with or without accompanying effort: and this meaning the Roman felt in it, though we may translate it by different expressions. Thus, mittere tēlum, to throw a weapon; mittere legatos, to send ambassadors; mittere aliquam rem (often), to let a thing go, to omit or pass over a thing; hence, mittere lacrīmas, to cease weeping; mittere dicere, to forbear saying (see mittō in Lexicon).

We may even say that this is more necessary in using a good dictionary than in using a poor one; for a good one gives meanings which—being correct in the corresponding English phrase—give a very inaccurate reflection of the true meaning of the word. Thus, capere poenas means in English to inflict punishment; but to a Roman it meant to receive or exact the penalty for a wrong. So also with the relations of words. Cæsar says that Orgetorix was required to plead his cause ex vinculis, for which our translation must be in chains; though this is exactly the opposite of what Cæsar says, viz. that, standing in chains, he should make his plea from them.

A few short passages are here appended, in order to illustrate the foregoing points, and show how to go to work.

1. Matrem<sup>a</sup> Phalaridis<sup>b</sup> scribit<sup>c</sup> Ponticus Heraclides, doctus<sup>d</sup> vir, auditor et discipulus Platonis, visam esse<sup>e</sup> videre in somnis<sup>f</sup> simulacra<sup>g</sup> deorum, quaē<sup>h</sup> ipsa domi consecravit<sup>i</sup>; ex iis<sup>j</sup> Mercurium<sup>k</sup> e patera,<sup>m</sup> quam dextera manu teneret. sanguinem visum esse fundere,<sup>n</sup> qui cum terram attigisset,<sup>o</sup> refervescere<sup>p</sup> videretur, sic ut tota domus sanguine redundaret.<sup>q</sup> Quod matris somnium<sup>r</sup> immanis<sup>s</sup> filii crudelitas comprobavit. — De Divinatione, i. 23.
Reading at Sight.

a. Notice that the first word is an accusative, mātre'm. This must probably be either the object of a verb, or the subject of an infinitive: it can remain in suspense till the verb appears. Its meaning, mother, naturally suggests a genitive: This we find in

b. Phalaridis, which has the genitive ending of the third declension; its nominative must be Phalaris, obviously a proper name. We may learn elsewhere that it is that of a Sicilian tyrant.

c. The verb scribit, writes, from its meaning naturally suggests an object-clause, accusative with infinitive. Such clauses are often best rendered by direct discourse in English. Thus we may translate as if mātre'm were nominative: the mother of Phalaris, writes Ponticus Heraclides (obviously a proper name, and subject of scribit).

d. The next words, being nominative, are probably in apposition with the name: doctus (participle of doceo) is taught, but as an adjective must be learned; auditor (noun of agency from audio) is hearer; discipulus (connected with disco) is clearly the same as our disciple; Platonis (as Phalaridis, above) explains itself.

e. As we have been expecting an infinitive for an object-clause, visam esse (having its participle in the feminine) is the natural verb for mātre'm; and as we have learned that the passive of video means seem, we may translate (in direct discourse, as above) with vidēre, seemed to see.

f. In the phrase in somnīs, the noun is probably ablative, since the connection requires in rather than into; and comes from somnus, or -a, or -um. Some English derivatives will probably suggest the meaning sleep; and the plural form, though odd, will give no trouble.

g. The next is a new word, but may be analyzed. The termination -crum, denoting means, is appended to a verb-stem simul-: hence the verb is simulō, are, suggesting the English verb simulate or perhaps the adjective similar. Its meaning will be something to represent; and we may render the phrase simulācre deorum, images of the gods.

h. The relative quae naturallly refers to a noun just preceding: this cannot be deōrum, which is masculine, and must be simulācra; ipsa might agree with quae, but will be more easily taken with the verb next following.

i. This verb, consecrāvisset, at once suggests the English consecrate. It is evidently a compound with con; and if we remember the common change of vowel in compound verbs, and connect its meaning with sacer, sacred (already given), this mean-
ing will be confirmed. The subjunctive form (see above, 37) does not affect the translation, which is by the simple indicative, because our idiom does not require any other mood.

k. The ablative fīs will refer to the last or most important plural noun, either deorum or simulacra, it will not matter which. The phrase may be rendered one of these.

l. Mercurium may be assumed to continue the same construction as matrem, and will take the infinitive visum esse, below.

m. Patera may be left as not important for the meaning of the whole: we may, for the present, call it "something" which he held in his right hand (the relative clause here explaining itself): in fact, a shallow bowl.

n. The infinitive fundere must be guessed at from the context or given by the teacher, unless its meaning is known, to pour.

o. The verb attingisset, as a glance shows, contains the root tag found in tango, touch; the subjunctive is required by cum, and does not affect the translation; its subject is quī, referring to the masculine sanguinem. But as two relatives cannot come together in English, we translate, and when this had touched the ground.

p. The verb refervescere should be seen to be derivative, and compounded from ferreo, which associates it with fervent, fervid; and its meaning, to boil up, is seen from our word effervescent.

q. The meaning of redundaret (overflowed) may perhaps require to be given, though a tolerably close idea may be gained by conjecture. Following ut, it is subjunctive expressing a result.

r. The phrase quod somnium may be either nominative or accusative; but, as the verb is directly preceded by the nominative crudelitas, these words must be accusative, and the object of comprobāvit. The meaning of somnium (dream), if not known, may be easily inferred from somnus, above.

s. The adjective immanis may be either genitive with filii or nominative with crudelitas: consider which needs an epithet. Its meaning (monstrous) will require to be given, as also that of comprobavit (proved), which should, however, be explained through the adjective probus, and kindred English words.

The above analysis is given in much greater detail than will often be required in practice. When the habit has once been formed, it is followed rapidly and almost unconsciously; in fact, it is impossible, when once the mind has been trained to it, to read a single sentence without deriving help from it. In succeeding passages, only a few hints will be given.
2. Hoc item in Sileni Graeca historia est: Hannibalem, cum cepisset Saguntum, visum esse in somnis a Jove in deorum concilium vocari; quo cum venisset, Jovem imperavisse ut Italiae bellum inferret; ducem-que ei unum e concilio datum, quo illum utentem cum exercitu progresi coepisse. Tum ei ducem illum prae-cepisse ne respiceret; illum autem id diutius facere non potuisse, elatumque cupiditate respexisse. Tum visam beluam vastam et immanem, circumplicatam serpentibus, quacumque incederet omnia arbusta, vir-gulta, tesca pervertere; et eum admiratum quæsisse de deo, quodnam illud esset tale monstrum. Et deum respondisse Vastitatem esse Italiam, praecepisseque ut pergeret protinus: quid retro atque a tergo fieret ne laboraret.—id. i. 24.

This passage may be somewhat harder than the foregoing, but a little attention will show that it is in the same general construction,—“Hannibalem . . . visum esse” like “matrem . . . visam esse,”—and that it contains several of the words and phrases already explained. It will greatly simplify the rendering of a passage like this, to drop the form of indirect discourse, beginning with the leading subject: Hannibal, having taken Saguntum, seemed in his sleep to be summoned, &c.: all the infinitives being translated by indicatives, and the subjunctive laboraret as an infinitive, not to trouble himself. A number of words must of course be suggested.


a. In this passage,—as we find it hard, with our habit of speech, to carry so many words in the mind undisposed of,—it may be
necessary after *bellum* to look for the verb to which it belongs. As *ut* is a relative word, the nearest verb will belong to that; so that we must take the next following, *obligisset*, the meaning of which must be given (in connection with the root *tag*); the object of *geraret* must be supplied from *bellum*; and it will read, *when the war had fallen to his lot to wage with king Perses*. This is not a good translation; but, having seen the Latin idea in this way, you can easily find a corresponding English expression: *It had fallen*, &c.

*b* To translate *ut*, notice at once *the mood of its verb*; because the two uses of *ut* have meanings very far apart in English, though the Romans did not probably feel the difference. As the verb is here indicative, *ut* means as or when: *rediit* (*red*, back; *eo*, go) signifies *returned*.

*c* The word *filiolam*, diminutive of *filia*, explains itself; while *animum advertit*, turned his mind, is to be rendered as a single transitive verb, observed; and its subject is *L. Paulus*.

4. Scipio Nasica cum ad poetam Ennium venisset, eique ab ostio quaerenti* a* Ennium ancilla dixisset domi non esse; *b* Nasica sensit, illam domini jussu dixisse et illum intus esse. Paucis post diebus, cum ad Nasicam venisset Ennius, et cum a janua quaereret, clamavit Nasica, se domi non esse. Tum Ennius, *Quid,* inquit, *ego non cognosco vocem tuam?* Hic Nasica, *Homo es impudens; ego cum quaererem, ancillae tuae credidi,* te* c* domi non esse; tu mihi non credis ipsi.*

*a* To him inquiring, &c. can only mean *when he inquired for Ennium*.

*b* The subject of the infinitive is here wanting, a rare usage in Latin; but it is obviously *Ennium*, to be supplied from the preceding.

*c* The clause *te domi non esse* is evidently a secondary object of *credidi*; but, as *believe* does not take two objects in English, some word like *saying* must be supplied.
PART FOURTH.

READING LESSONS.

NOTE. — The small figures in the following Lessons refer to the Brief Rules of Syntax, pp. 162, 163.

I. FABLES.

1. The Wolf and the Goat.

Lupus capram\textsuperscript{21} conspicatus est, quae in rupe pascebatur. Cum ad eam accedere non posset,\textsuperscript{44} praedicabat apud se mollia prata ac varias herbas esse,\textsuperscript{30} et eam hortabatur ut de rupe descendere. Ei autem capra respondit: "Mi amice, non me ad pascua vocas, sed ipse cibi\textsuperscript{12} indiges!"

2. The Fox and the Grapes.

Vulpes, extrema fame\textsuperscript{26} coacta, uvam adpetebat, quae ex alta vite dependebat; sed summis viribus saliens eam attingere\textsuperscript{28} non poterat. Tandem discessit, et, "Nondum matura est," inquit; "nolo acerbam sumere." — Sic saepe homines, quae facere non possunt, verbis elevant.

3. The Farmer and his Dog.

Rusticus in agros exiit ad opus suum. Filiolum, qui in cunis jacebat, reliquit cani\textsuperscript{17} fidei atque valido custodiendum. Adrepsit anguis immanis, qui puerulum extincturus erat. Sed custos fidelis corripit eum dentibus\textsuperscript{26} acutis, et, dum eum necare studet, cunas simul evertit super extinctum anguem. Paulo\textsuperscript{28} post ex arvo rediit agricola; cum cunas versas cruentumque canis rictum videret, irā accenditur. Temere igitur custodem filioli interficit ligone, quem manibus tenebat. Sed ubi cunas restituit, super anguem occisum reperit puerum. Vivum et incolumem. — Paenitentia facinoris temere patrati tum sera fuit.
4. The Farmer and his Sons.

Inter filios rustici cujusdam grave discidium ortum erat. Diu frustra operam impenderat pater, hortans ut pacem atque concordiam coherent.\textsuperscript{44} Tandem filii\textsuperscript{14} "Virgulas," inquit, "mihi adferete decem, et considite." Tum omnes virgulas in unum fasciculum conligavit, eumque constrictum singulis filiis obtulit, hortans ut frangerent. Illi autem, quamquam vim omnem adhibebant, frustra laborarunt, nec quicquam proffererunt. Tum pater nodum discidit, et illis singulas virgulas dedit, quas sine ullo labore confrigerunt. Quo facto,\textsuperscript{86} rusticus filios ita adlocutus est: "Haec res vobis exemplo\textsuperscript{20} sit. Tuti eritis ab inimicorum injuriis, quamdiu concordes eritis; at simul ac facta erit dissensio atque discordia, inimici securi in vos inrumpent."

5. The Boy that cried "Wolf."

Puer in prato oves pascabat, atque per jocum clamitabat, ut sibi auxilium ferretur, quasi lupus gregem esset adortus. Agricolae undique succurrebant, neque lupum inveniebant. Ita ter quaterque se elusos a puero viderunt. Deinde cum ipse lupus aggrederetur, et puer re vera imploraret auxilium, nemo gregi\textsuperscript{18} subvenit, et oves lupi praeda sunt factae. — Mendaci homini non credimus, etiam cum vera dicit.

6. The Fox and Crow.

Corvus, cum frustum carnis rapuisset, in arbore quadam consedit. Quo conspecto,\textsuperscript{85} vulpes, carnem cupiens, accurrit, eumque callidis verbis adoritur: "O corve," inquit, "quam pulcra es avis, quam speciosa! Te debebat esse avium regem. Sane omnes aves regis virtutibus antecederes,\textsuperscript{46} si vocem haberes."\textsuperscript{46} His laudibus corvus inflatus, ne mutus haberetur,\textsuperscript{44} clamorem edidit; sed simul, aperto rostro, carnem amisit; eam vulpes statim rapuit, atque inridens, "Heus," inquit, "corve! Nihil tibi\textsuperscript{17} deest praeter mentem."

7. The trained Monkeys.

Simiae purpuratae instituebantur ad saltationem. Cujus\textsuperscript{12} cum peritae viderentur esse, productae sunt in scenam. Cum
autem saltarent, object quidam nucis; quibus visis, omnibus
rebus posthabitis et neglectis, ad nucem discurretur, et de
eis inter se luctari atque depugnare coeperunt.

8. The Ant and the Dove.

Formica sitiens descendere ad fontem; sed undae eam
abripuerunt, nec multum aberat, quin misere periret. Cum
autem columba sortem ejus videret, misericordiâ tacta ra-
mulum in aquam injecit. Hunc adsecuta est formica, in eoque
natans effugit mortem. Paulo post venator, arcu instructus,
illuc venit, columbamque telo suo transfixurus fuit. Peri-
culum sentit formica; et, ut piae columbae opem ferret, ac-
currit, atque venatoris talum momordit. Dolore impeditus
ille telum non recte misit, et columba incolmis avolavit.—
Juva et juvabere; raro beneficium perit.

9. The Lion and his Troops.

Leo bellum meditans lustrat aciem suam in ordines divisam.
Cum ursus etiam asinum et leporem inter milites videret,
hiante ore ridens: "Piger hic asinus," inquit, "galeam et
gladium gerat? belli artes discat? Molae aptior est
quam castris. Ecquid autem firmus stabit lepus? proeliali-
tur?" "Erras, urse," inquit leo; "asinus portabit onera,
machinas, saxa; et, ubi opus erit, eum tubicinem faciam,
qui suo rugitu commilitones in pugnam ciebit; lepus autem ob
pedum pernicitatem celeris tabellarii officio fungetur."

10. The Nightingale and Cuckoo.

Luscinia verno quodam die dulcissime canere coepit. Pueri
aliquot haud procul aberant in Valle ludentes. Ii, cum lusui
esse intenti, lusciniae cantu nihil movebantur. Paulo post
cuculus coepit cuculare. Continuo pueri, lusu neglecto,
iadclamant, vocemque cuculi identidem imitantur. "Audisne,
luscinia," inquit cuculus, "quanto plausus me isti excipiant, et
quantopere cantu meo delectentur?" Luscinia, quae cum eo
altercari nolebat, nihil impediebat quominus ille suam vocem
admiraretur. Interea pastor fistulæ canens cum puella lento
gradu praeterit. Cuculus iterum vociferatur, novas laudes
captans. At puella pastorem adlocuta: "Male sit," 48 inquit, huic cuculo, 14 qui cantui 13 tuo odiosam vocem intermiscet."


II. DIALOGUES.

1. Study and Play.

Carolum. Veni, mi Ludovice!
Ernestus. Quo tandem?
C. In hortum; satis jam legimus et scripsimus; ludamus 43 quoque!
E. Ego pensum meum ante absolvam.
C. Nondumne absolvesti?
E. Nondum omnia. Tune jam omnia didicisti et scripsisti, quae praeeptor nos discere 88 et scribere jussit?
C. Non omnia.
E. Ergo nondum licet ludere. 89
C. Cur non liceat? 48 Reliqua discam et scribam post ludum.
E. Sed praestat primum discere, deinde ludere. 88
C. Quam morosum sodalem habeo!
E. Non sum morosus, sed facere volo, quae jussa sunt.
C. Ergo una ediscamus! Ego tibi recitabo, tu mihi. Deinde cum omnia didicerimus, statim ad ludum properabimus.
E. Placet; nam peracti labores jucundi sunt.
2. Early Rising.

Fredericus Heus, heus, Carole! Expergiscere! Tempus est surgere. Audisne?
C. Non audio.
F. Ubi ergo habes aures?
C. In lecto.
F. Hoc video. Sed quid facis adhuc in lecto?
C. Quid faciam? Dormio.
F. Dormis? et loqueris tamen mecum?
C. Saltem volo dormire.
F. Nunc autem non est tempus dormiendi, sed surgendi.
C. Quota est hora?
F. Septima.
C. Quando tu surrexisti e lecto?
F. Jam ante duas horas.
C. Num sorores meae jam surrexerunt?
F. Jam pridem.
C. Sed frater meus certe adhuc jacet in lecto?
F. Erras. Cum expergefacerem eum, statim reliquit nidum suum.
C. Mox igitur surgam.

3. An Afternoon Walk.

Fredericus. Age, mi frater, ambulemus; tempestas serena est.

Augustus. Placet; sed ubi ambulabimus? In pratisne?
F. Minime; prata enim pluvia inundavit, et viae lutulentae sunt. Placetne adscendere in montem, quem e fenestra prospectimus?
A. Placet; jam pridem enim in monte non fuimus.
F. Hiems nos prohibuit; hieme enim mons glacie et nive tectus erat. Quid stas autem?
A. Duae viae ducunt ad montem: altera recta, altera flexuosa. Utram eligamus? 43
A. Proinde eamus!
4. *Sport.*

*Paullus.* Trahit sua quemque voluptas; mihi\(^{18}\) placet venatio.

*Thomas.* Placet etiam mihi; sed ubi canes, ubi venabula, ubi casses?

*P.* Valeant apri, ursi, cervi, vulpes! nos insidiabimur cuniculis.\(^{18}\)

*Vicentius.* At ego laqueos injiciam locustis.\(^{18}\)

*Laurentius.* Ego ranas captabo.

*Bartholus.* Ego papiliones venabor.

L. Difficile est sectari\(^{18}\) volantia.

B. Difficile, sed pulcrum, nisi pulcrius esse ducis sectari lumbricos aut cochleas, quia carent alis.\(^{28}\)

L. Equidem mālo insidiari piscibus; est mihi\(^{17}\) hamus elegans.

B. Sed unde parabis escam?

L. Lumbricorum ubivis magna est copia.

B. Est, si tibi velint prorepere e terra.

L. At ego mox efficiam, ut multa milia prosiliant.

B. Quo pacto? incantamentis?\(^{26}\)

L. Videbis artem. Imple hanc situlam aquā.\(^{28}\) Hos juglandium summos cortices virentes contractos immittito. Hac aqua perfunde sólum. Nunc observa paulisper. Vides emergentes?

B. Rem prodigiosam video. Sic olim, opinar, exsiliebant armati viri ex satis serpentis dentibus. Sed plerique pisces delicatioris et elegantioris sunt palati,\(^{9}\) quam ut escā tam vulgari capiantur (*too dainty to be caught*).

L. Nōvi quoddam insecti genus, quo talibus insidiari soleo.

B. Tu vide, possisne\(^{46}\) imponere piscibus; ego ranis\(^{14}\) facessam negotium.

L. Quomodo? reti?\(^{28}\)

B. Non; sed arcu.

L. Novum piscandi genus.

B. At non injucundum. Videbis et fatebere.

V. *Quid, si certemus*\(^{46}\) nucibus?
Reading Lessons.

P. Nuc(es pueri)is relinquamus; nos grandiores sumus.
V. Et tamen nihil aliud adhuc quam pueri sumus.
P. Sed quibus derogare coram est ludere nucibus, eisdem non indecorum est equitare in arundine longa.
V. Tu igitur praescribito lusus genus; sequar, quocumque vocaveris.
P. Et ego futurus sum omnium horarum homo.

5. A Lesson in Manners.

Paedagogus. Tu mihi videris non in aula natus, sed in caula; adeo moribus es agrestibus. Puerum ingenium decent ingenui mores. Quoties adloquitur te quispiam, cui debebes honorem, compone te in rectum corporis statum, aperi caput. Vultus sit nec tristis nec torvus nec impudens nec protervus nec instabilis, sed hilari modesti temperatur; oculi verecundi, semper intenti in eum quocum loqueris; jacti pedes, quietae manus. Neve vacillato alternis tibiis, neve manus agant gestus, neve mordeto labrum, neve scabito caput, neve fodito aures. Vestis item ad decorum componatur, ut totus cultus, vultus, gestus, habitus corporis ingenuam modestiam et verecundam indolem prae se ferat.

Puer. Quid, si mediter?
Pat. Fac.
Pu. Sicine satis?
Pat. Nondum.
Pu. Quid, si sic?
Pat. Propemodum.
Pu. Quid si sic?
Pat. Hem satis est; hoc tene, ne sis inepte loquax aut praeceps. Neve vagetur animus interim, sed sis attentus, quid alter dicat. Si quid erit respondendum, id facito paucis ac prudenter, interdum praefatus honorem, nonnunquam etiam addito cognomine honoris gratia; atque identidem modice flectas alterum genu, praeertim ubi responsum absorveris. Neve abito, nisi praefatus veniam aut ab ipso dimissus. Nunc age: specimen aliquid hujus rei nobis praebet!
Quantum temporis abfuisti a maternis aedibus?

Pu. Jam sex ferme menses.⁹³

Pae. Addendum erat, domine.

Pu. Jam sex ferme menses, domine.

Pae. Non tangeris desiderio matris?

Pu. Nonnunquam sane.

Pae. Cupisne eam revisere?⁹⁸

Pu. Cupio, domine, si id pace liceat⁴⁶ tua.

Pae. Nunc flectendum erat genu. Bene se habet. Sic pergito! Cum loqueris, cave, ne praecipites⁴⁴ sermonem aut haesites linguā aut palato murmures, sed distincte, clare, articulatim consuescito proferre verba tua. Si quem praeteribis natu grandem, magistratum, sacerdotem, doctorem aut omnino virum gravem, memento aperire caput. In convivio sic te praebebis hilarem, ut semper memineris, quid deceat⁴⁵ aetatem tuam; postremus omnium admoveto manum patīnæ.¹⁸ Si quid dabitur lautius, recusato modeste; si instabitur, accipe et age gratias; mox, decertā particulā,⁵⁶ quod reliquum est, illi qui tibi obtulit reddito, aut alicui proxime ădcumbenti. Si quis praebibet, hilariter illi bene precator, sed ipse bibito modice. Si non sitis, tamen admoveto calicem labris. Adride loquentibus; ipse cave, ne quid loquare, nisi rogatus. Ne cui obtrcestato, ne cui temet anteponito, ne tua jactato, ne aliena despicito. Esto comis, etiam erga tenuis fortunae sodales. Ita fiet, ut sine invidia laudem invenias et amicos pares. Si videris convivium extrahi, precatus veniam ac salutatis convivis, subducito te a mensa. Vide, ut horum memineris.

Pu. Dabitur opera, mi praecceptor! Numquid aliud vis?

Pae. Adito nunc libros tuos.

Pu. Fiet.

IV. ANECDOTES.

1. Themistocles.

Noctu ambulabat in publico Themistocles, quod somnum capere non posset;⁴⁷ quaerentibusque respondebat Miltiadis tropaeis se e somno suscitari.⁵⁸
2. Socrates.


Lacedaemone cum tyrannus cenavisset Dionysius, neget se jure illo nigro, quod cenae caput erat, delectatum. Tum is, qui illa coxerat: Minime mirum; condimenta enim defuerunt. Quae tandem? inquit ille. Labor in venatu, sudor, cursus ad Eurotam, fames, sitis; his enim rebus Lacedaemoniorum epulae coniunctur.

4. Respect to Age.

Cum Athenis ludis quidam in theatrum grandis natu venisset, in magno consessu locus ei a suis civibus nusquam est datus. Cum autem ad Lacedaemonios accessisset, qui legati cum essent, certo in loco consederant, consurrexerunt omnes et senem illum sessum receperunt. Quibus cum a cuncto consessu praeus esset multiplex datus, dixit ex eis quidam: Athenienses sciunt, quae recta sunt; sed facere nolunt.

5. Fabius.

Cum, Tarento amisso, arcem tamen Livius Salinator retinuisset, multaque ex ea proelia praeclara fecisset, cum aliquot post annos Maximus id oppidum recepisset, rogaretque eum Salinator, ut meminisset operā suā se Tarentum recepisse: Quidni, inquit, meminerim? nunquam enim recepissem nisi tu perdidisses.


Nasica cum ad poētām Ennium venisset, eique ab ostio quaerenti Ennium ancilla dixisset domi non esse; Nasica
sensit illam domini jussu dixisse, et illum intus esse. Paucis
post diebus, cum ad Nasicam venisset Ennius et eum a janua
quaereret, exclamat Nasica se domi non esse. Tum Ennius :
"Quid? ego non cognosco vocem," inquit, "tuam?" Hic
Nasica: Homo (inquit) es impudens. Ego cum te quaererem,
ancillae tuae18 credidi te domi non esse; tu mihi non credis
ipsi?

IV. THE KINGS OF ROME.

1. Romanum imperium a ROMULO exordium habet, qui,
Rheae Silvae, Vestalis virginis, et Martis filius, cum Remo,
fratre gemino, urbem condidit, quam ex nomine suo Romam
vocavit (753 a. Chr.). Asylo aperto ad numerum civium au-
gendum, ingens hominum multitudo ex finitimis civitatibus
Romam86 confluxit. At viri non habebant feminas. Itaque
Romulus ludos sollennes instituit, invitavitque ad eorum spec-
taculum vicinas urbis Romae nationes. Cum alii multi con-
venerunt, tum Sabinorum omnis multitudo cum liberis et
conjugibus. Dum ludi eduntur, extemplo Romani discur-
runt, magnamque virginum partem rapiunt.

2. Propter raptarum mulierum injuriam Sabini Romanis38
bellum intulerunt. Res venit ad pugnam. Utrumque acerrime
decertatur. In medià acie repente raptae mulieres crinibus
passis scissaque veste ausae sunt se inter tela volantia inferre,
et precibus infestas acies dirimere. Rebus compositis, Romu-
lus centum ex senioribus legit, quorum consilio omnia ageret,
quos senatores nominavit propter senectutem. Anno84 regni
tricesimo septimo, cum orta subito tempestate non compar-
uisset, ad deos transisse creditus est (716).

3. Postea NUMA POMPILIUS, Curibus, in urbe agri Sabi-
norum, natus, rex creatus est (715—673). Qui bellum quidem
nullum gessit, sed non minus civitati quam Romulus profuit.
Nam legibus moribusque et sacris plurimis constitutis86 populi
barbari et bellicosi mores mollivit. Etiam annum descripsit
in decem menses. Omnia autem, quae faciebat, se nymphae
Egeriae jussu facere dictitabant. Regnavit tres et quadraginta
annis.23 — Huic18 successit TULLUS HOSTILIUS (673—640).
Is bella reparavit. Bellum Albanis inlatum certamine trigemino, fratum, qui forte in utroque exercitu erant nec aetate nec viribus dispers, finitum est. Deinde etiam Veientes et Fidenates bello superavit. Cum XXX annos regnasset, fulmine ictus cum domo sua arsit.


6. Hinc consules coepti sunt pro uno rege duo hac causa creari, ut, si unus malus esse voluisset, alter eum, habens eandem potestatem, coerceret. Et placuit, ut ne imperium longius quam annum haberent, ne per diuturnitatem potes-
tatis insolentiores fierent, sed aequitatem semper servarent, qui se post annum scirent\textsuperscript{17} futuros esse privatos. Fuerunt igitur anno primo, expulsis regibus, consules L. Junius Brutus, qui maxime egerat ut Tarquinius pelleretur, et Tarquiniius Collatinus, maritus Lucretiae. Sed Tarquinio Collatino\textsuperscript{19} statim sublata dignitas est. Placuerat enim, ne quisquam in urbe maneret, qui Tarquinius vocaretur.\textsuperscript{47} In ejus locum factus est Valerius Publicola consul.

7. Commovit tamen bellum urbi\textsuperscript{14} Romae rex Tarquinius, qui erat expulsus, et, collectis multis gentibus, ut in regnum posset restitui, dimicavit. In prima pugna Brutus consul et Ancus, Tarquinii filius, alter alterum occiderunt. Romani tamen ex ea pugna victores discesserunt. Brutum Romanae matronae, defensorem pudicitiae suae, quasi communem patrem, per annum luxerunt. Valerius Publicola Spurius Lucretium, Lucretiae patrem, collegam sibi fecit: quo\textsuperscript{36} morbo\textsuperscript{26} mortuo, iterum Horatium Pulvillum collegam sibi sumpsit. Ita primus annus quinque consules habuit.

8. Etiam secundo anno iterum Tarquinius, ut recipieretur in regnum, bellum Romanis\textsuperscript{18} intulit, auxilio ei ferente Porsena, Etruscorum rege.\textsuperscript{1} Is, ne Tiberim transiret, virtute Horatii Cocltis prohibitus est, qui, dum alii pontem rescindunt, unus Etruscus sustinuit, et, ponte rupto, armatus se in flumen misit, et ad suos transnavit. Cum Porsena urbem obsideret, Gaius Mucius Scaevola, adulescens nobilis, in castra hostium se contulit, ut Porsenam regem occideret. At pro rege scribam obturcat, qui propter eum sedebat pari fere ornatu indutus.\textsuperscript{2} Tum a regis satellitibus comprehensus ante tribunal regis constitutos est. Qui\textsuperscript{27} cum tormenta minitaretur, Mucius dextrā accenso ad sacrificium foculo injectā: "En tibi," inquit, "quam viles corpus sit\textsuperscript{46} eis qui magnam gloriam vident!" Qua animi virtute perculus rex juvenem intactum inviolatumque dimisit. Tum Mucius, quasi remunerans beneficium, trecentos principes juventutis Romanae in ejus vitam conjurasse ait. Qua re territus Porsena pacem fecit. Tarquinius autem Tusculum\textsuperscript{85} abiit, ibique cum Romanis privatus cum uxore consessit.
Reading Lessons. 151

V. The War with Porsena. — Livy.

1. Horatius holds the Bridge.


3. Duos tamen cum eo pudor tenuit, Sp. Lartium ac T. Herminium, ambos claros genere factisque. Cum his primam periculi procellam, et quod tumultuosissimum pugnae erat, parumper sustinuit; deinde eos quoque ipsos, exigua parte pontis relictā, cedere in tutum coēgit. Circumferens
inde truces minaciter oculos ad proceres Etruscorum, nunc singulos provocare,\(^{40}\) nunc increpare omnes: *Servitia regum superborum, suae libertatis\(^{12}\) immemores, alienam oppugnatum\(^{43}\) venire.* Cunctati aliquamdiu sunt, dum alius alium, ut proelium incipiant, circumspectant: pudor deinde commovit aciem, et, clamore sublato, undique in unum hostem tela conjiciunt.

4. Quae cum in objecto cuncta scuto haesissent, neque ille minus obstinatus ingenti pontem obtineret gradu, jam impetu conabantur detrudere\(^{88}\) virum; cum simul fragor rupti pontis, simul clamor Romanorum, alacritate perfecti operis sublatus, pavore subito impetum sustinuit. Tum Cocles, *Tiberinis pater,* inquit, *te sancte precor, haec arma et hunc militem propitio flumine accipias.*\(^{48}\) Ita sic armatus in Tiberim desiluit; multisque superincidentibus telis, incolmis ad suos natavit. *Grata erga tantum virtutem civitas fuit: statua\(^{7}\) in comitio posita, agr\(^{10}\) quantum uno die\(^{84}\) circumaravit, datum. Privata quoque inter publicos honores studia eminabant: nam in magna inopia pro domesticos copiis unusquisque ei aliiquid, fraudans se ipse victu\(^{28}\) suo, contulit.*

2. *The Deed of Mucius Scævola.*

1. Obsidio erat nihil\(^{88}\) minus, et frumenti cum summa caritate inopia; sedendoque expugnaturum\(^{89}\) se urbem sper Porsena habebat: cum C. Mucius, adolescens nobilis, primo sua sponte penetrare\(^{38}\) in hostium castra constituit: dein, metuens ne, si consulum injussu et ignaris omnibus iret,\(^{47}\) forte deprehensus a custodibus Romanis retraheretur\(^{44}\) ut transfuga,\(^{4}\) senatum adiit: *Transire Tiberim,* inquit, *Patres, et intrare, si possim,*\(^{46}\) castra hostium volo; *non praedo, nec populationum in vicem ultor: majus, si dii juvant, in animo est facinus.* Approbat Patres: abdito intra vestem ferro, proficiscitur.

2. Ubi eo venit, in confertissima turba prope regium tribunal constitit. Ibi cum stipendium forte militibus daretur,\(^{44}\) et scriba, cum rege sedens pari fere ornatu, multa ageret, eum
miłites vulgo adirent, timens sciscitari uter Porsena esset, ne ignorando regem semet ipse aperiret quis esset, scribam pro rege obtruncat. Vadentes inde, qua per trepidam turbam cruēento mucrone sibi ipse fecerat viam, cum, concursu ad clamorem facto, comprehensum regii satellites retraxissent, ante tribunal regis destitus, tum quoque, inter tantas fortunae minas, metuendus magis quam metuens:


4. Cum rex, simul ira infensus, periculoque conterritus, circumdari ignes minitabundus juberet, nisi expromeret propere quas insidiarum sibi minus per ambages jaceret: En tibi, inquit, ut sentias quam vile corpus sit ipsis qui magnam gloriam vident: dextramque accenso ad sacrificium foculo injicit. Prope attonitus miraculo rex, cum ab sede sua prosiluisset, amoverique ab altaribus juvenem juvississet, Tu vero abi, inquit, in te magis, quam in me, hostilia ausus. Jubereb macte virtute esse, si pro mea patria ista virtus staret. Nunc jure belli liberum te, intactum inviolatumque hinc dimitto.

3. The Escape of Cloelia.

1. Ergo, ita honorata virtute, feminae quoque ad publica decora excitatae. Et Cloelia virgo, una ex obsidibus, cum castra Etruscorum forte haud procul ripa Tibéris locata essent, frustrata custodes, dux agminis virginum inter tela hostium Tiberim tranavit; sospitesque omnes Romam ad propinquos restituit. Quod ubi regi nuntiatum est, primo, incensus ira, oratores Romam misit ad Cloelim obsidem deponendam; alias haud magni facere: deinde in admirationem versus, supra Coelites Muciosque dicere id facinus esse; et prae se ferre, quemadmodum, si non dedatum obes, pro rupto se foedus habiturum; sic deditam, inviolatam ad suas remissurum.


VI. MISCELLANEOUS SELECTIONS.


2. Inde inhabitantibus tristes diraeque noctes per metum vigilabantur; vigiliam morbus, et, crescente formidine, mors sequebatur. Nam interdiu quoque, quamquam abscesserat imago, memoria imaginis oculus inerrabat; longiorque causis.
timor erat. Deserta inde et damnata solitudine domus, totaque illi monstro relictā; proscriebatur, seu quis emere, seu quis conducere, ignarus tanti mali, vellet.


2. ASharper of Syracuse.

1. C. Canius, eques Romanus, nec infacetus, et satis litteratus, cum se Syracusas, otiandi (ut ipse dicere solet) non negotiandi causa, contulisset, dictatabat se hortulos aliquos velle emere, quo invitare amicos, et ubi se oblectare sine interpellatoribus, posset. Quod cum percrebusisset, Pythius
ei quidam, qui argentariam faceret Syracusis, dixit, venales quidem se hortos non habere, sed licere [eis] uti Canio, si vellet, ut suis: et simul ad cenam hominem in hortos invitavit in posterum diem.

2. Cum ille promisisset, tum Pythius (qui esset, ut argentarius, apud omnes ordines gratiosus) piscatores ad se vocavit, et ab his petivit, ut ante suos hortulos postridie piscarentur; dixitque quid eos facere vellet. Ad cenam tempore venit Canius: opipare a Pythio apparatum constrictum; cymbarum ante oculos multitudine pro se quisque, quod ceperat, adferebat: ante pedes Pythii pisces abjiciabantur.


5. Stomachari Canius, sed quid faceret? nonem enim Aquillius, collega et familiaris meus, protulerat de dolo malo formulam: in quibus ipsis cum ex eo quaseretur, Quid esset dolus malus; respondebat, Cum esset alius simulatum, alius actum. — Cicero, De Off. iii. 14.

3. The Vale of Enna.

Nam et natas esse has in iis locis deas, et fruges in ea terra primum repertas esse arbitrantur, et raptam esse Liberam, quam eadem Proserpinam vocant, ex Hennesium nemore: qui locus, quod in media est insula situs, umbilicus Siciliae nominatur. Quam cum investigare et conquirere Ceres vellet, dicitur inflammasse taedas iis ignibus qui ex Aetnae vertice erumpunt: quas sibi cum ipsa praeferret, orbem omnem peragrasse terrarum.

2. Henna autem, ubi ea quae dico gesta esse memorantur, est loco perexcelso atque edito, quo in summo est aequa agri planities et aquae perennes, tota vero omni aditu circumcisa atque directa est: quam circa lacus lucique sunt plurimi, atque laetissimi flores omni tempore anni, locus ut ipse raptum illum virginis, quem jam a puere accepiimus, declarare videatur.

3. Etenim prope est spelunca quaedam, conversa ad aquilonem, infinita altitudine, qua Ditem patrem ferunt repente cum curru exstisset, abreptamque ex eo loco virginem secum asportasse, et subito non longe a Syracusis penetrasse sub terras, lacumque in eo loco repente exstisset: ubi usque ad hoc tempus Syracusani festos dies anniversarios agunt celeberrimo virorum mulierumque conventu.

4. Propter hujus opinionis vetustatem, quod horum in iis locis vestigia ac prope incunabula reperiuntur deorum, mira quaedam tota Siciliâ privatim ac publice religio est. Cерeis Hennensis. Etenim multa saepe prodigia vim ejus numenque declarant: multis saepe in difficultimis rebus praesens auxilium ejus oblatum est, ut haec insula ab ea non solum diligi, sed etiam incoli custodiriique videatur.—Verr. v. 48.

4. *The Earth is made for Man.*

1. Terra vero feta frugibus et vario leguminum genere, quae cum maxima largitate fundit, ea ferarumme an hominum causa gignere videtur? Quid de vitibus olivetisque dicam? quarum uberrimi laetissimique fructus nihil omnino ad bestias pertinent. Neque enim serendi neque colendi nec tempestive demetendi percipiendique fructus, neque condendi ac repo-
nendi ulla pecudum scientia est, earumque omnium rerum hominum est et usus et cura.

2. Ut fides igitur et tibias eorum causa factas dicendum est, qui illis uti possent, sic ea, quae diximus, iis solis con-fitendum est esse parata, qui utuntur; nec si quae bestiae furantur aliquid ex iis aut rapiunt, illarum quoque causa ea nata esse dicemus. Neque enim homines murum aut formi-carum causā frumentum condunt, sed conjugum et liberorum et familiarum suarum. Itaque bestiae furtim (ut dixi) fruuntur, domini palam et libere.

3. Tantumque abest ut haec bestiarum etiam causa parata sint, ut ipsas bestias hominum gratia generatas esse videamus. Quid enim oves aliud adferunt, nisi ut earum villis confectis atque contextis homines vestiantur? Quae quidem neque ali neque sustentari neque ulla fructum edere ex se sine cultu hominum et curatione potuissent.

4. Canum vero tam fida custodia tamque amans domino-rum adulatio tantumque odium in externos et tam incredibilis ad investigandum sagacitas narium, tanta alacritas in venando quid significat aliud, nisi se ad hominum commoditates esse generatos?

5. Quid de bobus loquar? quorum ipsa terga declarant non esse se ad onus accipiendum figurata, cervices autem natae ad jugum, tum vires humerorum et latitudines ad aratra extrahenda. Quibus, cum terrae subigerentur fissione glae-barum, ab illo aureo genere (ut poëtae loquuntur) vis nulla umquam adferebatur.

Ferrea tum vero proles exorta repente est,
Ausaque funestum prima est fabricarier ensem,
Et gustare manu vinctum domitumque juvencum.

Tanta putabatur utilitas percipi ex bobus, ut eorum visceribus vesci scelus haberetur.

6. Longum est mulorum persequi utilitates et asinorum, quae certe ad hominum usum paratae sunt. Sus vero quid habet praeter escam? Cui quidem, ne putresceret, animam ipsam pro sale datam dicit esse Chrysippus. Qua pecude,
quod erat ad vescendum hominibus apta, nihil genuit natura fecundius.

7. Quid multitudinem suavitatemque piscium dicam, quid avium? ex quibus tanta percipitur voluptas, ut interdum Pronoea nostra Epicurea fuisse videatur. Atque hae ne caperentur quidem, nisi hominum ratione atque sollertia; quamquam aves quasdam et alites et oscines, ut nostri augures appellant, rerum augurandarum causa esse natas putamus.

8. Jam vero immanes et feras beluas nanciscimus venando, ut et vescamur iis et exerceamur in venando ad similitudinem bellicae disciplinae, et utamur domitis et condiciofactis, ut elephantis, multaque ex earum corporibus remedia morbis et vulneribus eligamus, sicut ex quibusdam stirpibus et herbis, quarum utilitates longinqui temporis usu et periclitatione percepimus.


5. The Heavens declare a Creator.

1. Praeclare ergo Aristoteles: 'Si essent,' inquit, 'qui sub terra semper habitavissent bonis et illustribus domiciliis, quae essent ornata signis atque picturis, instructaque rebus iis omnibus quibus abundant ii qui beati putantur, nec tamen exissent umquam supra terram, accepissent autem fama et auditione, esse quoddam numen et vim deorum; deinde ali-quo tempore, patefactis terrae faucibus, ex illis abditis sedibus evadere in hacc loca, quae nos incolimus, atque exire potuissent: 2. cum repente terram et maria caelumque vidissent, nubium magnitudinem ventorumque vim cognovissent, adspexissentque solem, ejusque tum magnitudinem pulchritudinemque, tum etiam efficientiam cognovissent, quod
is diem efficeret toto caelo luce diffusa; cum autem terras
nox opacasset, tum caelum totum cenerent astrar distinctum
et ornatum, lunaeque luminum variatatem tum crescentis
tum senescentis, eorumque omnium ortus et occasus, atque
in omni aeternitate ratos immutabilesque cursus; haec cum
viderent, profecto et esse deos et haec tanta opera deorum
esse arbitrarentur. — id. ii. 37.

6. An Active Old Age.

1. Nihil nescie est mihi de me ipso dicere, quamquam
est id quidem senile, aetatique nostrae conceditur. Videtisne
ut apud Homerum saepissime Nestor de virtutibus suis praed-
dicit? Tertiam enim iam aetatem hominum vivebat, nec
erat ei verendum ne vera praedicans de se nimi videretur
aut insolens aut loquax. Etenim, ut ait Homerus, ex ejsus
lingua melle dulcior fluebat oratio, quam ad suavitatem nullis
egebant corporis viribus. Et tamen dux ille Graeciae nus-
quam optat ut Ajacis similis habeat decem, sed ut Nestoris;
quod si sibi acciderit, non dubitat quin brevi sit Troja
peritura.

2. Sed redeo ad me. Quartum ago annum et octogesi-
mum. Vellem equidem idem posse gloriari quod Cyrus; sed
tamen hoc queo dicere: non me quidem iis esse viribus quibus
aut miles bello Punico, aut quaeestor eodem bello,
aut consul in Hispania fuerim, aut quadriennio post, cum
tribunus militaris depugnavi apud Thermopylas M'. Glabi-
one consule; sed tamen, ut vos videtis, non plane me ene-
vavit, non adherit senectus; non curia vir is meas desiderat,
on rostra, non amici, non clientes, non hospites. Nec enim
umquam sum adsensus veteri illi laudatoque proverbio, quod
monet mature fieri senem, si diu velis senex esse: ego vero me
minus diu senem esse mallem, quam esse senem ant quan
esse. Itaque nemo adhuc convenire me voluit, cui
fuerim occupatus. — De Senect. 10.
NOTES.

The preceding Lessons consist of—

I. FABLES, taken partly from Æsop, said to have been a Phrygian slave, who lived at Athens about 620 B.C. The shrewd, brief stories which pass under his name have made the basis of most European collections of fables since.

II. DIALOGUES written by different authors, some of them by Erasmus (A.D. 1467–1536), a very learned, witty, and indefatigable scholar, sometimes called the most accomplished of all modern writers of Latin. His Colloquia, first published in 1522, are, in part, sharply satirical; in part, like those here given, simply cheerful and amusing.

III. ANECDOTES of celebrated men of antiquity, taken from the miscellaneous writings of Cicero.

IV. THE KINGS OF ROME, chiefly from an epitome written (it is supposed) for the use of schools by Eutropius, secretary of the Emperor Constantine, about the year A.D. 330. The epitome continues the history into the times of the Emperors, and has afforded the staple of many of the popular abridgments. It is given here far enough to serve as an introduction to the narrative of Livy, which follows.

Up to this point, no explanatory notes have been given. There is nothing beyond the ability of any one who has well learned the preceding Lessons; and it is a great loss to the learner to miss the satisfaction of making out the narrative by his own skill and ingenuity. Notes should never be leaned on for help, until the student has done his very best without them; and the habit of doing this should be formed from the very start. A faithful use of the Vocabulary will, it is believed, fully explain every passage that has occurred thus far; and, for the simpler constructions of syntax, reference is made from time to time to the following:—
General Rules of Syntax.

1. Nouns meaning the same thing agree in Case.
2. Adjectives agree with nouns in Gender, Number, and Case.
3. Possessive adjectives are used for the Genitive, and in any case may have a genitive in agreement.
4. Relatives agree with their antecedents in Gender and Number; their Case depending on the construction of their clause.
5. A Verb agrees with its subject in Number and Person.
6. Two or more singular subjects—also collective nouns, with quisque and utrique—may take a plural verb.
7. The Subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative.
8. A Noun used to limit or define another, and not meaning the same thing, is put in the Genitive.
9. The Genitive is used to denote the author, owner, source, and (with adjectives) measure or quality.
10. Words denoting a Part are followed by the genitive of the word denoting the Whole.
11. Certain genitives of Quantity—as, magnum, parvi, nihil, pluris, minorum—are used to express indefinite Value.
12. Many words of memory and feeling, knowledge or ignorance, likeness and nearness, fulness and want—also verbals, and participles used as adjectives—take the genitive.
13. Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing take the genitive of the Charge or Penalty.
14. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object.
15. Words of likeness, fitness, nearness, service, and help, are followed by the dative.
16. Verbs meaning to favor, help, please, serve, trust, and their contraries; also to believe, persuade, command, obey, envy, resist, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative.
17. The dative is used with esse to denote the Owner; also with the participle in dux to denote the Agent.
18. Most verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, sub, super, take the dative.
19. Verbs of giving, telling, sending, and the like—sometimes of comparing and taking away—take the accusative and dative.
20. The dative is used to denote the Purpose or End; often with another dative of the person or thing affected.
21. The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object.
22. The Subject of the Infinitive mood is in the accusative.
23. Duration of time and extent of space are in the accusative.
24. The accusative is used adverbially, or for specification.
25. Verbs of asking and teaching take two accusatives.
26. The ABLATIVE is used of cause, manner, means, instrument, quality, specification, and price.

27. The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is in the ablative with ab.

28. Words denoting separation, and plenty or want, — also opus and usus, signifying need, — govern the ablative.

29. Participles denoting birth or origin take the ablative.

30. The adjectives dignus, indignus, with many verbals, as contentus, laetus, praeditus, take the ablative.

31. The deponents utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, and their compounds, take the ablative.

32. The comparative degree may be followed by the ablative.

33. Degree of difference is put in the ablative.

34. Time at or within which is put in the ablative.

35. A subject and predicate in the ablative are used to define the time or circumstances of an action (Ablative Absolute).

36. The name of the town where is in form like the genitive of singular names in us, a, um, otherwise dative or ablative; of that whither in the accusative, and whence in the ablative.

37. With other words (including names of countries) Prepositions must be used to denote where, whither, or whence.

38. The INFINITIVE is used like a neuter noun, as the Subject or Object, or to complete the action of a verb.

39. The Infinitive is used, with subject-accusative, after expressions of knowing, thinking, telling, or perceiving.

40. The Infinitive is often used for the tenses of the indicative in narration (Historical Infinitive).

41. The GERUND, governing the case of its verb, or the Gerundive in agreement with a noun, is construed as a verbal noun.

42. The SUPINE in um is used after verbs of motion, to express the purpose of the motion; the Supine in ë with adjectives.

43. The SUBJUNCTIVE is used independently to denote a wish, command, or concession, also in doubtful questions.

44. Relatives or Conjunctions implying purpose or result — also of relative time or characteristic — require the Subjunctive.

45. Indirect Questions take a verb in the Subjunctive.

46. The Subjunctive present and perfect are used in future conditions; the imperfect and pluperfect, in those contrary to fact.

47. Dependent clauses in Indirect Discourse, or in a subjunctive construction, take the Subjunctive.

48. In the sequence of Tenses, primary tenses are followed in the Subjunctive by primary, and secondary by secondary.

For the government of PREPOSITIONS, see page 41.

For the general meaning and use of CASES, see page 3.

For the rules of SUBJECT and PREDICATE, see Lesson 6.
THE WAR WITH PORSENA.

1. Horatius holds the Bridge.

1. 1. Clusinum: Clusium was an Etruscan town, about eighty miles north of Rome; according to Pliny, the seat of a magnificent court of Porsena.

4. res Clusina, the state of Clusium. — Understand adeo before magnum.

5. suosmet, their own: -met is emphatic.

6. receptis . . . accepseret, the kings being taken back, &c., i.e. should take back the kings and accept peace even with slavery.

8. datâ for data sunt. The omission of esse is very common in Livy. — adeo . . . ut . . . horrenter: observe the relation of these words.

10. nec quisquam = et nemo.

11. bene imperando = by good government.

2. Tiberi objecto, the Tiber being cast in their way = by the interposition of the Tiber: observe the force of ob (p. 45).

3. pons sublicius, built, it was said, by Ancus Martius.

5. cum . . . vidisset, when he saw the Janiculum taken by sudden assault, &c. The Janiculum was a hill on the further side of the Tiber, on which the Romans had a fort.

7. turbam relinquere, depending still on vidisset.

8. deum, the contracted gen. plur. for deorum, very commonly used in such phrases as this.

10. eos fugere. The passage in italics is in what is called indirect discourse (see pp. 112, 113). In direct discourse, we should change to the second person: In vain you desert your post and flee, (lit. “that they fled, the defence being in vain deserted”).

10. plus hostium, we should expect the plural: it may be rendered a greater force; plus is subject of fore, there will be.

12. monere, etc., these infinitives have for their subject se understood. Changing to first person: “I warn you,” &c.

16. ipso, etc., by the very marvel of his bravery.

3. tumultuosissimum pugnae = the stormiest onset.

4. exigua . . . relicta, while a little part of the bridge was still left (“a little part being left”).

(p. 152). 4. alius . . . circumspectant, one looks to another to begin the battle.

4. 1. quae cum cuncta, when all of these (see Note, p. 131). — objecto, held out before him.
2. *obtineret*, held against the enemy.
3. *impetu conabantur*, were just trying by a rush (imperfect).
4. *perfecti operis*, of the finished task = at having finished the task. The genitive is very often used, where we might expect a different case, when two nouns are closely connected, as here.
5. *sustinuit*, held in check.
7. *sic armatus*, armed as he was.
10. *comitio*: the *comitium* was the place of patrician gatherings. It was an elevated part of the Forum.—quantum, as much as.
12. *pro*, in proportion to.

2. The Deed of Mucius Scaevola.

1. 14. *obsidio erat*, the siege continued.—frumenti limits inopia.
2. *expugnaturum* [esse] se, that he should conquer, depending on *spem habebat*. In the future of indirect discourse, with the participle in *urus*, the infinitive *esse* is more commonly omitted.
5. *ne deprehensus retraheretur*, lest he should be seized and dragged back ("lest being seized," &c.).
7. *senatum*, governed by *adit* as a transitive verb, as often with compounds of *ad*, *trans*, and *circum*.
8. *si possim*, if I should be able: the present subjunctive with *si* is generally to be rendered with *should*.
9. *populationum* . . . *ultor* = to avenge in turn the plunder.
2. 2. *daretur*, was [in the act of] being given.
(p. 153.) 1. *adirent*: observe that this subjunctive depends on *cum*, two lines before.
3. *vadentem*, as he went, agreeing with *eum* (understood), object following *cum* . . . *retraxisset*: when the king's attendants had seized (comprehensum), and dragged him back ("him having been seized").
3. 1. *vocant*, understand me.—*hostis* is in apposition with *ego*, subject of *volui*.
2. *est*, understand *mihi*: I have ("there is to me") no less courage for death than I had for killing.
3. *fortia*, translate by an adverb, bravely.—Romanum, a Roman virtue.
4. *petentium*, of those seeking (or aiming at). The genitive *petentium* limits *ordo*, to be translated *series* or *succession*.
5. accingere (pass. imperat.), brace yourself up for this conflict if it pleases you. — in singulas horas = from hour to hour.

6. capite tuo, for your life: the stake or prize of the conflict being taken is the abl. of price. — dimicæs, habeæs, pres. subj., following ut, so that you may, &c.

7. juventus, in appos. with nos (understood), subject of indicium.

8. nullam timueris (the perf. subj., used for the imperative in prohibitions: see Lesson 16, i. c.): fear no army, &c.

4. 2. nisi . . . jaceret, unless he should instantly declare plainly the threats of plots against him, which he threw out by dark hints (ambages). The noun (minas) is here, as commonly in Latin, in the relative clause.

3. en tibi, look you! — vile, worthless.

8. in te . . . ausus, you who have dared hostile deeds against yourself, &c.

9. macte virtute, a common phrase of encouragement, like perseveræ in valor or merit. — macte is a vocative (=: magis aucte), though here used in indirect discourse.

5. ceciderit, fut. perfect, to be translated by the simple future, as it shall fall to each first [in his turn].


9. agro, ablative following ex in excessit.

3. The Escape of Clælia.

1. 2. una ex obsidibus, for una obsidum: this form is more common than the genitive after numerals.

6. quod ubi, when this, &c. (see Note, p. 131).

8. alias . . . facere, made the others of no great account.

10. præ se ferre, asserted or declared. — pro rupto, as broken.

11. sic . . . remissurum, so (on the other hand), if surrendered, he would restore her unharmed to her friends (suos).

2. I. constitut, remained firm. — ex foedere, according to the treaty.

6. probabile, etc., it was approved by the general feeling (consensu) of the hostages themselves, that [the persons of] that age should be released, &c.
Miscellaneous Selections.

Selection I. — 1. sonus is limited by ferri, and subject of reddebatur. — longius . . . e proximo, at a distance, close by.

2. inhabitantibus (dative), translate by (strictly on the part of).
— vigiliam, object of sequebatur. In English, the passive construction would be more natural: watching was followed by, &c. — causis, than the cause of it (the fear). — solitudine, to solitude.

The Latin often uses the ablative to denote the penalty. — tota, i. e. entirely. — proscribebatur: the imperfect means not it was advertised, but the advertisement was kept up. — seu . . . vellet, in case any one should wish.

3. quia gives the reason of percontatus. — audita is taken with simulacra.

4. ubique, i. e. everywhere else. — stabat: the imperfect describes the appearance of the phantom.

5. capit, over the head. — catenis: translate as accusative, rattled the chains, noticing the difference of idiom. — idem, governed by innuentem. — quod prius, i. e. inuerat. — nec, and not; as it is very often, much oftener than nor. — desertus, i. e. after he was thus abandoned. — signum, in apposition with herbas, etc., as a mark

6. quae corpus reliquerat, i. e. which had been left by the body (its decay). — exesa, i. e. by rust. — conditis manibus, the ghost being laid. — caruit, was relieved, i. e. of the disturbance which is implied by the whole of the preceding.

Selection II. — 1. otlandi depends on causâ. — quod cum, and when this (§ 45, 6). — Canio, dative following licere, that Canius might use them.

2. qui esset = inasmuch as he was. — apparatus, sc. est, was got ready.

3. tantumne, such a quantity: the ne only continues the question. — gravate, i. e. agebat, a kind of idiom. — quid multa, i. e. dicam: another common idiom which should be noticed as such. — impetrat, i. e. his request. — instructos, agreeing with hortos. nomina facit, makes out the bill (so used on account of the name in the account-book).

4. scalmum nullum, i. e. not so much as a thole-pin. — eos nulos, none of them, a regular Latin idiom. — nullae, sc. feriae. — quod, so far as (adverbial accusative.)

Selection III. — 1. constat, is made out from (lit. stands together). — hoc . . . persuasum est, are persuaded of this. Notice
the idiom, which is regular. — *quam eandem*, etc., *the same whom they call.*

Selection IV. — 1. *ea*, antecedent of *qua*, coming last, as usual in Latin. — *serendip* depends on *scientia*.

5. *se* refers to *terga.* — *latitudines*, plural (as often in Latin) because he is thinking of many cases or examples. — *fissione*, etc.; the early time when the ground had to be broken, and of course cattle were more necessary. — *aureo*, i. e. the golden age. — *fabricariet*: formerly the infinitive passive ended as here (an extract from an old poet) in *er.* — *manu*, connected with *vinctum.* — *vesei*, subj. of *haberetur*.

6. *longum est*: we should say in English it *would take too long* (see Gr. § 311. c). — *pro sale*, instead of salt, i. e. merely to keep it from spoiling (ne putescet). — *pecude* depends on *fecundius*.

7. *Pronoea*, *Providence*, in our modern sense; an idea of the Stoics, one of whom is here speaking, hence *nostra.* — *Epiceria* (pred.), *an Epicurean*; fem. on account of the gender of *Pronoea*. The idea is that Providence seems to be an Epicurean in providing so many good things for the appetite.

8. *stirpibus*, bushes, that have stems. — *herbis*, plants, grasses and the like without woody stems.

9. *licet*, you may, taken with *lusce* are. — *plurimarum*, etc., very many things of use (lit. the usefulness of many things).

Selection V. — *essent*, the subject is the implied antecedent of *qui*, men who. — *quoddam*, a. This word is used because the thing, though only referred to indefinitely, is however definitely known. — *esse deos*, that there are gods.

Selection VI. — 1. *senile*, characteristic of old men. — *praedicet*, from *praedico*, are. — *aetatem*, Gr. § 52, 1. b. — *quam* belongs with *suavitatem*: the relative is often displaced in this way by a preposition connected with it. — *dux ille*, Agamemnon, the chief of the Trojan expedition.

2. *equidem*: the force of this word is concessive. The idea is, “though I cannot make the same boast that Cyrus (I wish I could), still this I can say, &c.” The Latin particles have just this kind of force, and we cannot begin too soon to notice them. — *quidem*, again concessive (see preceding note). Translate, *though I have not, &c., still (sed tamen).* — *ego*: notice that it is emphatic, — *I for my part*. Do not get the habit, because in English the personal pronouns are expressed, whether emphatic or not, of disregarding their emphasis when expressed in Latin.
EXERCISES,

PREPARED BY WILLIAM DEUTSCH,

TEACHER IN THE ST. LOUIS HIGH SCHOOL.
SUGGESTIONS TO THE TEACHER.

1. Have the Grammar part and the Vocabularies well studied before passing to the translation.
2. Do not neglect blackboard and other written exercises.
3. Have the principal synonymes (found on pages 235 to 242) memorized.
4. Do not neglect frequent reviewing.
5. Assign short lessons during the first quarter.
EXERCISES.

Lesson I.

First Declension, Page 4.

(Omit Greek Nouns.)

Vocabulary.

älla, ae (F.), wing.
ämicitia, ae (F.), friendship.
aqua, ae (F.), water.
aquila, ae (F.), eagle.
columba, ae (F.), dove.
causa, ae (F.), cause.
Europa, ae (F.), Europe.
femina, ae (F.), woman.
filia, ae (F.), daughter.
gloria, ae (F.), glory.
hora, ae (F.), hour.
Incola, ae (M.), inhabitant.
Inimicitia, ae (F.), enmity.
nauta, ae (M.), sailor.
patria, ae (F.), native city.
poeTa, ae (M.), poet.
porta, ae (F.), gate.
puella, ae (F.), girl.
pugna, ae (F.), battle.
régina, ae (F.), queen.
Roma, ae (F.), Rome.
rösa, ae (F.), rose.
Sicilia, ae (F.), Sicily.
vita, ae (F.), life.
et or -que, and.
est, he is; sunt, they are.
hábēt, he has; hábent, they
have.
cum (with abl.), with.
in (with abl.), in.
in (with acc.), into.
ē, ēx (with abl.), out of.

Translate into English.

1. Horā, horārum, horā, horis; nautas, nautae, nautam.
2. Sicilia est insula Europae.
4. Filiabus reginarum.
5. Puella est feminae filia.
6. Roma portas habet.
7. Columbae alas habent.
8. Amicitia est vitae gloria.
9. Incolae rosas habent.
10. In aquam; ex aqua.
11. Cum nautis incolisque.
12. Inimicitia incolarum est causa pugnae.
Write in Latin.

1. Of girls; to the daughter; the queens (acc.).
2. Out of the water; in the water; into the water.
3. The eagles have wings.
4. The woman has a rose.
5. The inhabitants of Sicily are sailors.
6. The battle is the cause of glory.
7. The enmity of the inhabitants is the cause of battles.
8. With the daughters of the queens.
9. She is the daughter of the queen.
10. O Rome, the native-city of poets.

LESSON 2.

Second Declension, Page 5.
(Omit Greek Nouns.)

Vocabulary.

āger, agri (M.), field.
āmicas, i (M.), friend.
argentum, i (N.), silver.
aurum, i (N.), gold.
āvus, i (M.), grandfather.
bellum, i (N.), war.
dāt, he gives.
dant, they give.
dōminus, i (M.), lord, master.
dōnum, i (N.), gift.
equus, i (M.), horse.
filius, i (M.), son.
gēner, i (M.), son-in-law.
äädlus, i (M.), sword.
liber, ri (M.), book.
litterae, ārum (F.), letter.
īnīmicus, i (M.), enemy.
māgister, ri (M.), master, teacher.
mētāllum, i (N.), metal.
mūrus, i (M.), wall.
oppidum, i (N.), town.
praemūnum, i (N.), reward.
puer, i (M.), boy.
servus, i (M.), slave.
sōcer, i (M.), father-in-law.
templum, i (N.), temple.
vīr, i (M.), man.

Translate into English.

1. Amici, amicorum, amicos, amice.
2. Agro, agris, agrum, agri.
3. Templum, templum, templorum, templi.
4. Dominus servos equosque habet.
5. Socer agrum genero dat.
6. Templa sunt gloria Romae.
7. Aurum et argentum sunt metalla.
8. Amici avi poetae sunt.
10. Oppidum muros et portas habet.
**Exercises.**

**Write in Latin.**

1. The boys have books.
2. The teacher gives doves to the boys.
3. The enemies of the master have swords.
4. The friends of the queen are poets, not sailors.
5. The father-in-law gives gold and silver to the temples.
6. The metals are the cause of war.
7. The friends of the boy have the books of the men.
8. The queen gives rewards to the inhabitants.
9. [There] is the letter of the son-in-law.
10. The son and the friend of the sailor are poets.

1 non.

**Lesson 3.**


**Vocabulary.**

agricola, ae (m.), farmer.
Athēnae, ārum (f.), Athens.
Corinthus, i (f.), Corinth.
dēs, i (m.) God.
discipulus, i (m.), pupil, scholar.
dēa, ae (f.), Goddess.
ērant, he was.
ērant, they were.
Graecus, i (m.), Greek.

hortus, i (m.), garden.
Itālia, ae (f.), Italy.
morbūs, i (m.), disease, sick.
pōmum, i (n.), apple.
Rōmānus, i (m.), Roman.
scūtum, i (n.), shield.
taurus, i (m.), bull.
ubi? where?
vōcāt, he calls.
vōcant, they call.

**Translate into English.**

1. Vocatne filium?
4. Erantne filii filiaeque domini?
5. Discipuli cum magistro Romae et Corinthi erant.
6. Ubi amici libri sunt?
7. Romani gladios et scuta habent.
8. Bella morborum causa erant.
10. Avus donum dis dat.
Write in Latin.
2. Is not gold the cause of battles and wars? Yes.
3. Does the teacher give a reward to the girls?
4. The father-in-law gives fields and bulls to the friends of the queen.
5. The son of the poet was in Sicily, in Rome, and in Corinth.
6. In the garden of the master [there] are apples and roses.
7. The Romans give gold and silver to the goddesses.
8. Where were the servants of the grandfather? In Athens. In Italy.

Lesson 4.
Adjectives of the First and Second Declension, Page 6.

Vocabulary.
aeger, gra, grum, sick. molestus, a, um (with dat.), troublesome.
albus, a, um, white. multus, a, um, many.
altus, a, um, high, deep. niggrus, a, um, black, dark.
bōnus, a, um, good. nūmērus, i (m.), number.
densus, a, um, dense, thick. parvus, a, um, small, little.
dīligitās, ae (f.), diligence. pulcher, chra, chrum, beautiful.
dīditius, i (m.), river, stream. rāpĭdus, a, um, rapid.
Gāllia, ae (f.), Gaul (country). regnum, i (n.), kingdom.
Graecia, ae (f.), Greece. Rhēnus, i (m.), Rhine.
grātus, a, um (with dat.), pleasing, grateful. ripa, ae (f.), bank.
pleasing, grateful. silva, ae (f.), forest.
ignāvus, a, um, lazy. tēnēr, ēra, ērum, tender.
instūla, ae (f.), island. tīmīdus, a, um, timid.
lātus, a, um, broad, wide. trans (with acc.), across.
longus, a, um, long. vōlāt, he flies.
magnus, a, um, great, large. vōlant, they fly.
mīser, ēra, ērum, wretched.

Translate into English.
1. Servus ignavus est.
2. Columbae timidae sunt.
Exercises.

3. Oppidum est parvum.
4. Graecia multa templa habet.
5. Magister parvas puellas et bonos pueros vocat.
6. Nonne puero donum dat?
7. Aquila trans magnum fluvium in silvam densam volat.
8. Insula parva incolas multos habet.
9. Morbus tenero filio molestus est.

Write in Latin.

1. The swords were long.
2. The towns are large.
3. The kingdom is small.
4. The daughters of the women are good.
5. The queen gives broad swords to the inhabitants.
6. The roses of the high banks are white.
7. The Rhine is a rapid river of Gaul.
8. Great is the number of black slaves.
9. The master gives a beautiful book to the sick boy.
10. The disease is troublesome to the wretched girl.

Lesson 5.

Adjectives and Adverbs of the First and Second Declension, Pp. 6 & 41.

Vocabulary.

ācūtus, a, um, sharp.
bēllicōsus, a, um, warlike.
bēnē (adv.), well.
dōcēt, he teaches.
dōcent, they teach.
ēxēmplum, i (N.), example.
hērī (adv.), yesterday.
īntēr (with acc.), among, between.
Lātīnus, a, um, Latin.
lībēri, ērum (M.), children.
līngua, ae (F.), language, tongue.

lōcus, i (M.) (plur., masc. and neut.), place.
mēus, a, um, my.
nātāt, he swims.
nātant, they swim.
nōster, ra, rum, our.
nōxīus, a, um (with dat.), hurtful, injurious.
pēriōtūm, i (N.), danger.
proelīum, i (N.), battle.
scībit, he writes.
sorībunt, they write.
semper (adv.), always.
Translate into English.

1. Num puer natat in magno rapidoque fluvio?
2. In multis proeliis in periculo magno erat.
4. Nautae filius pulchre scribit.
5. Puellae litteras parvas aegrae reginae scribunt.
6. In alto loco parvi pueri cum avo erant.
7. Exemplum servi noxiwm puero est.
8. Templar diis et deabus grata sunt.
9. Erant multi pueri heri in horto; et inter pueros filius
10. Morbus tenerae filiae molestus erat.

Write in Latin.

1. The son of the warlike queen has a sharp sword.
2. Were the farmer’s sons in the large garden? No.
3. The sailor is in the garden with [his] sons, not with [his] daughters.
4. The example of a lazy boy is injurious to the pupils.
5. Our daughter writes a beautiful letter to the teacher.
6. The black horses are troublesome to the man.
7. The children of good [men] are not always good.
8. Our master teaches the Latin language well.
9. Where was the son of the farmer with the black horses?
10. Many books are injurious to the sick daughter of the sailor.

Lesson 6.


Vocabulary.

ä, äb (with abl.), by, from. gaudium, i (n.), joy.
absum, I am absent. intersum, I am among, between.
adsum, I am present.
bēātus, a, um, happy. īra, ae (f.), anger.
contentus, a, um, contented. liber, ēra, ērum, free.
cōplae, ae (f.), abundance. mōx (adv.), soon.
cōplae, ārum (f.), forces, nunc (adv.), now.
 tropes. prōbus, a, um, upright.
dēsum, I am away, wanting. sēd (conj.), but.
frūmentum, i (n.), corn, si (conj.), if.
grain.
Exercises.

Translate into English.

1. Estis, eramus, eris.
2. Abes, aberimus; adsumus,aderant.
3. Non beatus eras, mi fili.
4. Si contenti eritis, miser non eritis.
5. Bonis viris non desunt amici.
6. Semper a proelio abero.
7. Magnae copiae Romanorum in proelio aderant.
8. Estne copia frumenti in domini agris?
10. Incolae magni oppidi sumus.

Write in Latin.

1. We are, thou wilt be, he was.
2. He is present; they were among; she will be absent.
3. The town was small, but beautiful.
4. [There] were many wars among the Romans.
5. We shall soon be in the black forest.
6. You were in the town yesterday, where are now many boys and many girls.
7. The wicked [men] are not free.
8. To good [men] friends are not wanting.
9. Anger will be injurious to many.
10. Upright pupils are the joy of the teacher.

Lesson 7.

Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect and Imperative of sum, Page 25.

Vocabulary.

attentus, a, um, attentive. legatus, i (m.), legate, ambassador.
cur? why? ludus, i (m.), play, school.
deactus, a, um, learned. nullus, a, um, no one, none.
hood (adv.), to-day. officium, i (n.), duty, service.
judicat, a, um, unlearned. praesum, I am at the head.
laetus, a, um, joyful. vester, ra, rum, your.
Translate into English.

1. Fuisti, fueris, este, sunto.
2. Deeras, adfuère, praefueratis, praes! 
3. Estis, fuistis, abfuerit, inerant.
4. Cur abfuisti a ludo heri?
5. Mi bone puer, semper probus es!
7. Discipuli sunto attenti.
9. Contenti estote officio vestro.
10. Magister discipulis Esto amicus.

Write in Latin.

1. He will be, they have been, we were present.
2. Be ye absent, you shall be present, he will have been.
3. The teacher shall be just.
4. The contented are always joyful.
5. My son, be upright and attentive, and you will be the joy of the teacher.
6. Have you been in the grandfather's garden to-day?
7. Let [there] be no cause of enmity; we are good friends.
8. They had been unlearned; now they are learned.

Lesson 8.

Conjunctions and Prepositions, Pages 11 and 41.

Vocabulary.

äd (acc.), towards, to.
ambulât, he walks.
ambulant, they walk.
aula, ae (f.), hall.
campus, i (m.), field, plain.
castra òrum (n.), camp.
currít, he runs.
currunt, they run.
lupus, i (m.), wolf.
per (acc.), through.

saepè (adv.), often.
saxum, i (n.), rock.
sècât, he cuts.
sècant, they cut.
vènìt, he comes.
vènfunt, they come.
vesper, òri (m.), evening.
vìdèt, he sees.
vìdent, they see.
vìa, ae (f.), way, road.
Exercises.

Translate into English.
2. Parvi discipuli saepe trans latum fluvium natant.
3. Domini non semper boni fuerunt in (towards) servos.
4. Venit in castra; veniunt in hortum.
5. Avus nunc ab insula in campum ambulat.
6. Agricola venit ad oppidum cum magistri filio.
7. Lupus e silva currit et puellam videt.
8. Multae pulchraeque puellae in horto fuère ad vesperum.

Write in Latin.
1. The boys come across the large river into the town.
2. The boy walks in the garden with the master’s son.
3. The farmer runs towards the dense forest.
4. The sailor’s sons come out of the large hall into the garden.
5. We were often on the banks of the deep river.
6. The farmers cut a broad way through the forest.
7. A great and high rock is in the water.
8. God gives many gifts to the upright inhabitants.

Lesson 9.
Third Declension (p, b, m, x), Pages 12 and 14.

Vocabulary.

arx, arcis (F.), citadel.
clarus, a, um, bright, renowned.
delictat, he delights.
delictant, they delight.
dux, ducis (c.), leader, general.
factum, i (n.), deed.
firmus, a, um, firm, durable.
Germāni, ōrum (m.), Germans.
hīems, hiēmis (F.), winter.
jūcundus, a, um (with dat.), pleasing.

judex, judícis (M.), judge.
lex, lēgis (F.), law.
pax, pācis (F.), peace.
plebs, plēbis (F.), common people.
pōptulus, i (M.), people (in general).
princēps, cīpis (M.), chief.
rex, rēgis (M.), king.
sēvērus, a, um, severe.
trēba, trābīs (F.), beam.
urba, urbīs (F.), city.
Translate into English.

1. Trabes, trabium; urbis, urbibus.
2. Duci, duce, ducum; regem, regis, reges.
3. Pax regi jucunda fuit.
4. Judices erant justi.
5. Hiems longa agricolis molesta erit.
7. Incolae Romae severas leges habent.
8. Multae urbes Graeciae clarae fuerunt.
10. Facta principum Romanorum bellica sunt erant.

Write in Latin.

1. Of the city, for the cities, many cities (acc.)
2. By the law, of laws, the law (acc.)
3. Rome is the renowned city of Italy.
4. The Romans give rewards to good leaders.
5. The king gives a gift to the severe judge.
6. The laws of Athens were pleasing to the Greeks.
7. Bad examples are injurious to the people.
8. A long peace was pleasing to the chief of the Germans.
9. We are now in the city, but we shall soon be in our gardens.

Lesson 10.

Third Declension, continued (t, d), Page 13.

Vocabulary.

aestās, ātis (f.), summer.     mors, mortis (f.), death.
civitās, ātis (f.), state.     nātūra, ae (f.), nature.
custōs, ōdis (m.), guardian.  nox, noctis (f.), night.
dens, dentis (m.), tooth.      obsēs, ōdis (c.), hostage.
ēquēs, ūtis (m.), horseman.    occīdīt, he kills.
Galli, ōrum (m.), Gauls.       occīdunt, they kill.
hasta, ae (f.), spear.         pēdēs, ūtis (m.), foot-soldier.
lāpis, ēdis (m.), stone.       pons, pontis (m.), bridge.
libertās, ātis (f.), freedom.  tempestās, ātis (f.), tempest.
mīlēs, ūtis (m.), soldier.     voluntās, ātis (f.), wish, will.
mons, montis (m.), mountain.   comes, ūtis (c.), companion.
Exercises.

Translate into English.

1. Custodis, custodem; pediti, pedetes; pontem, pontium.
2. Morti, morte; civitatem, civitatibus; dentes; montibus.
3. Miles gladio obsidem occidit.
5. Nostri equites et pedites in proelio timidi fuerunt.
6. Mors naturae lex semper fuit.
7. Voluntas militum duci grata erit.
8. Pedites auri custodes gladiis occidunt.
10. Tempestatès aestatis agricolis nautisque noxiae sunt.
11. Trabes in pontibus longae sunt.

Write in Latin.

1. Of a companion, to companions; the nights, by night.
2. The horsemen, with horsemen; with a stone, of stones.
3. Long nights in winter are pleasant to the teacher and pupils.
4. The hostages kill the foot-soldiers with spears.
5. The inhabitants kill many soldiers with large stones.
6. The soldiers kill the timid guardians of the silver.
7. A tempest in summer is troublesome to the foot-soldiers.
8. The laws of the Roman state were renowned.
9. Freedom of the inhabitants shall be the law of the state.
10. The forces of the Romans kill the horsemen of the Gauls with swords.

Lesson II.

Third Declension, continued (i, n, r), Pages 13 and 14.

Vocabulary.

admiration, ōnis (f.), admiration. certus, a, um, certain.
constil, ūlis (m.), consul.
aggur, ēris (m.), mound. dolor, ōris (m.), pain.
fōs, fōris (m.), flower.
anser, ēris (m.), goose.
auctumnus, i (m.), autumn.
frater, trīs (m.), brother.
cālōr, ēris (m.), heat.
hōmo, ōnis (c.), man.
Latin Method.

invidus, a, um, envious.
jucunditas, atis (F.), delight.
labor, oris (M.), work, hardship.
laudat, he praises.
laudant, they praise.
leo, leonis (M.), lion.
mater, ris (F.), mother.
monstrat, he shows.
monstrant, they show.
mors, moris (M.), manner, custom.
noeo,enis (C.), nobody (no plural).

Translate into English.

1. Consulem, consulum; patri, patres.
2. Laboris, laboribus; more, mores.
3. Leonem, leoni; virgines, virginum.
4. Hoines invidi neminem laudant.
5. Magna fuit admiratio leonum.
6. Pueri caram matrem vocant.
7. Pastores venatoris lupum monstrant.
8. Pulilae fratres et sorores habent.
10. Sermo oratoris doctus fuerat.
11. Vita hominibus grata est, mors certa.
12. Aestate solis calor, militibus saepe molestus est.

Write in Latin.

1. To the flower, of flowers; brothers, with brothers.
2. A man (acc.), of men; geese, to geese.
3. The maidens of the city Rome were beautiful.
4. The heat in autumn is injurious to the mother.
5. The sermons of the orators are learned.
6. The sisters were in the garden with [their] father and mother.
7. The manner of the brother gives pain to the teacher.
8. The mounds of the camp are high and broad.
9. A good oration is the delight of learned men.
10. The strong hunter kills the lion with the sword.
Lesson 12.

Third Declension, continued (I), Page 14.

Vocabulary.

äter, ätra, ätrum, black.
cānīs, is (c.), dog.
civīs, is (c.), citizen.
clādes, is (f.), slaughter.
classis, is (f.), fleet.
caelum, i (n.), sky, heaven.
complūrātio, ōnis (f.), weeping.
dūrūs, a, um, hard.
Germanīa, ae (f.), Germany.

hostis, is (c.), enemy (public).
jūvēnīs, is (c.), young person.
nāvia, is (f.), ship.
nōtus, a, um, known.
nūbēs, is (f.), cloud.
pēritus, a, um, skilful.
rūpes, is (f.), rock.
tūris, is (f.), tower.
vallīs, is (f.), valley.
vestīs, is (f.), garment, dress.

Translate into English.

1. Cives, civium; cladem, cladibus.
2. Hoste, hostes; nubi, nubium.
3. Clades hostium magna fuit.
4. Multae urbes Italiae altas turrem habent.
5. Classis Romana duces peritos habet.
7. Nubes atrae causa tempestatis sunt.
8. Valles Germaniae hostibus notae fuerunt.

Write in Latin.

1. Of dogs, by a dog; the rocks, a rock (acc.).
2. The ships, of a ship; of citizens, with a citizen.
3. The boys kill the shepherd’s dog with stones.
4. The fleet of the Romans has many ships and a skilful leader.
5. The valleys of Greece are known to the citizens.
6. Many hard rocks are in the mountains.
7. The maidens give beautiful garments to the daughters of the sailors.
8. The beautiful young man is the friend of the soldiers.
9. My friend, be the leader of the inhabitants!
10. Black clouds in the sky are the cause of tempests.
Lesson 13.

Third Declension, continued. (Neuter Nouns in n, l, r, us, ta.)

Pages 12, 13, and 14.

Vocabulary.

animal, alices (n.), animal.
annus, i (m.), year.
aureus, a, um, golden.
avis, is (f.), bird.
Caesar, aries (m.), Casar.
calcar, aries (n.), spur.
caput, itis (n.), head.
corpus, oris (n.), body.
decus, oris (n.), ornament.
domus, i (n.), abode.
elphantus, i (m.), elephant.
fulgur, uris (n.), lightning.
genus, ares (n.), race, class.
Hannibal, alices (see p. 204).
novus, a, um, new.

Ira, ae (f.), anger.
littus, oris (n.), shore.
mare, is (n.), sea.
nomen, inis (n.), name.
opus, oris (n.), work.
ors, oris (n.), mouth.
ors, ossis (n.), bone.
pistorius, a, um, dangerous.
piscis, is (m.), fish.
poeema, atis (n.), poem.
scribas, oris (n.), crime.
nat, he stands.
stant, they stand.
tempus, oris (n.), time.
vulnus, aris (n.), wound.

Translate into English.

1. Nominis; fulgura; operi; corporum.
2. Mari; animalium; capitis; calcaria.
3. Multa animalia parva capita habent.
4. Maria piscium domicilia sunt.
5. Romulus nomen Romam novae urbi dat.
6. Tempore hiemis multae aves in litore stant.
7. Opera Graecorum poetarum clara sunt.
8. Calcaria sunt decus equitis.
10. Ira causa multorum scelerum semper fuit.

Write in Latin.

1. The animals; with a spur; of bodies; to the wound.
2. Of the poem; the races; of times; with names.
3. The crimes are known to the judge.
4. Elephants have strong bodies and large heads.
5. The time of the year is pleasant.
6. The fish has a small mouth.
7. The wounds of the soldier are large and dangerous.
8. The king gives golden spurs to the horsemen.
9. The deep sea is the abode of fishes.
10. The works of Hannibal and Caesar were renowned.

Lesson 14.
Third Declension, continued. (Gen. in utis, uris, and irreg. nouns.)
Page 14.

Vocabulary.

arbor, őris (F.), tree.
bēnignus, a, um, kind.
bōs, bōvis (C.), ox, cow.
cāro, cānis (F.), flesh.
divitiae, ārum (F.), riches.
Jūpiter, Jōvis (M.), Jupiter.
jūs, jūris (N.), right, law.
jūventus, ūtis (F.), youth,
ōvis, ēs (F.), sheep.
pālūs, ūdīs (F.), swamp.
sācer, ora, crum, sacred.
sālus, ūtis (F.), safety, health.
sēnectus, ūtis (F.), old age.
sēnex, īs (M.), old man.
stiprēmus, a, um, supreme.
tellus, ūris (F.), earth.
virtus, tūtis (F.), virtue.
vis, vis (F.), power, strength.

Translate into English.
1. Virtutem; telluris; paludi; senes.
2. Virium; bobus; Jovem; jura.
3. Salus populi suprema lex esto!
5. Vires leonis magnae sunt.
6. Donum senectutis hominibus jucundum est.
7. Numerus senum et juvenum Magnus est.
8. Multi boves et equi in litore insulae stant.

Write in Latin.
1. Virtues; with force; of the earth.
2. Jupiter (acc.); of oxen; to youth.
3. Many trees are sacred to Jupiter.
4. Oxen have great strength.
5. Virtues were the ornament of the Greeks and Romans.
6. The old man gives gold and silver to the young man.
7. The flesh of the sheep is pleasing to the wolf.
8. Great riches is the gift of the kind gods.
Lesson 15.
Adjectives with Genitive in unus, Page 7.

Vocabulary.

ällus, a, ĕlīs, another.
alter, ĕra, ĕrum, the other, one of two.
culpa, ae (f.), fault, blame.
cūra, ae (f.), care.
hōnōr, ĕrīs (m.), honor.
lāna, laundis (f.), praise.
neuter, tra, trum, neither of two.
nōvus, a, um, new.
nullus, a, um, none.
önus, ĕris (n.), burden, load.
pars, partīs (f.), part.
praeda, ae (f.), booty, spoil.
asōlus, a, um, alone.
tōtus, a, um, whole.
ullus, a, um, any.
ūnus, a, um, one.
tēter, tra, trum, which of two.
vērūs, a, um, true.
vōluptās, ātis (f.), pleasure.

Translate into English.

1. Uter nomen novae urbi dat?
2. Cives Caesari uni honorem dant.
3. Miles ex altera parte urbīs venit.
4. Virtus sola veram voluptatem dat.
6. Alii sunt docti, alii ignavi.
7. Alius vires, alius divitiae sunt magnae.
8. Alteri laudem, alteri culpam dant.
10. Neutra civitas laudem ullam habet.

Write in Latin.

1. Romulus gives another name to the new city.
2. The one was pleasing to the king, the other troublesome.
3. The soldiers praise each other.
4. The leader gives the whole booty to the soldiers.
5. Neither of the men has any abode.
6. Life is a burden to no good man.
7. To which of the two boys does the teacher give a reward?
8. Some praise one thing, some another.
Exercises.

Lesson 16.

Adjectives and Adverbs of the Third Declension, Page 15 and 16.

Vocabulary.

arma, ērum (N.), arms.
animus, i (m.), soul, mind.
ācer, āris, ācre, sharp.
eaquālis, e, equal.
agnus, i (m.), lamb.
audax, ācis, bold.
aspēr, ēra, ērum, rough.
brēvis, e, short.
cēlēr, ēris, ēre, swift.
commūnis, e, common.
consiliōrum, i (N.), plan, counsel.
fēlix, ēcis, fortunate, happy.
fērōx, ōcis, fierce.
fidēlis, e, faithful.
grāvis, e, heavy, severe.
hūmanus, a, um, human.
immortālis, e, immortal.
īter, itinēris (N.), journey.

Translate into English.

1. Tempus hūmanae vitæ breve est.
2. Rex ingentem numerum militum habet.
3. Miles vulnus grave patienter tolerat.
4. Vita est breve īter.
5. Consilia ducis audacia sunt.
7. Ira regis acris erat.
8. Regina cives fideles habet.
10. Agricolae vinum vetus habent.
11. Amicorum omnia sunt communia.
12. Ferox leo lacerat parvum agnum asperis dentibus.

Write in Latin.

1. A wise father often has a foolish son.
2. The labors are equal, the rewards are not equal.
3. Men have mortal bodies, but immortal souls.
4. Arms are useful to all soldiers.
5. The wounds of the horsemen are light.
6. The plan of the leader was prudent.
7. Solon gives excellent laws to the Greeks.
8. Lions are rapacious animals.
9. The present times are fortunate.
10. The grandfather gives old wine to the sick son of the teacher.

LESSON 17.

Regular Comparison, Page 17.

Vocabulary.

ādūlātiō, ōnis (f.), flattery.
āēr, āēris (m.), air.
āmābiliōs, e, lovely.
antiquus, a, um, old.
Cīcēro, ōnis (m.), Cicero.
diūcūlis, e, difficult.
diūcūle (adv.), difficult.
dulcis, e, sweet.
dūōquēs, ntis, eloquent.
sācūlis, e (adv. facile), easy.
sēlia, īs (f.), cat.
ferrum, ī (n.), iron, sword.
fortīs, e, brave, strong.
lūx, lūcis (f.), light.
nīhil (n.), (indecl.), nothing.
pernicīōsus, a, um, destructive.
pugnāt, he fights.
pugnānt, they fight.
sāgāx, ācis, sagacious.
similiōs, e, similar, like.
tranquillus, a, um, calm.
ventus, ī (m.), wind.

Translate into English.

1. Miles fortior; milites fortissimi.
2. Donum gratum; donum gratius.
3. Aqua est gravior quam aer.
4. Aestate noctes brevissimae sunt.
5. In bello agricolae sunt miserrimi.
6. Lūx velocior est; vento.
7. Ferrum utilissimum est omnium metallorum.
8. Nīhil amabilius est virtute.
10. Germani cum Romanis fortissime pugnant.
11. Veterrima vina non semper sunt dulcissima.
12. Itineria antiquis temporibus difficillima fuerunt.

(Note: — The Superlative is often translated by “very.”)
Write in Latin.

1. The swiftest animals are not always the strongest.
2. The soldiers fight more bravely.
3. The son was very like his father.
4. No one of the Romans was more eloquent than Cicero.
5. Care is swifter than the winds.
6. The Rhine is a very rapid river.
7. The nights are calmer in summer than in winter.
8. Nothing is more destructive to friendship than flattery.
9. A queen is often the most wretched of all women.
10. Dogs are more sagacious than cats.

Lesson 18.

Irregular Comparison, Page 17.

Vocabulary.

Alpes, ium (F.), Alps.
aetas, ätis (F.), age.
ämät, he loves.
ämant, they love.
callidus, a, um, cunning.
dissimilis, e, unlike.
Europa, ae (F.), Europe.
lüna, ae (F.), moon.
ōdium, i (N.), hatred.
pōtens, ntis, powerful.
confirmät, he establishes.
propior, fūs (prope), nearer.
saepe (adv.), often.
säplentia, ae (F.), wisdom.
stipērus, a, um, high.
stūis, a, um, his, their.
terra, ae (F.), earth, land.
tigris, ìs or ìdis (C.), tiger.
vulpes, ìs (F.), fox.
optimus, a, um, best.

Translate into English.

1. Bonus poeta, melior amicus, optimi libri.
2. Majores pueri, pessimum animal.
3. Nihil est melius sapientiä.
4. Luna minor est quam terra.
5. Plurima et maxima animalia in mari sunt.
6. Homerus est veterrimus omnium Graecorum poetarum.
7. Cicero optimus erat suae aetatis orator.
8. Omnium animalium ferociissimus est tigris, sagacissimus elephantus, callidissima vulpes.
9. Venit ex loco superiore.
Latin Method.

Write in Latin.

1. The best citizens love their native city.
2. Hatred is better than flattery.
3. The most wicked men kill the most excellent men.
4. Very many islands are larger than Sicily.
5. The worst men are often very happy.
6. The Greeks were more learned than the Romans.
7. Caesar establishes peace with the nearest states.
8. The Alps are the highest mountains in Europe.
9. The best kings are not always the most powerful.
10. The hunter was very often in the woods.

Lesson 19.

Fourth Declension, Page 18.

Vocabulary.

*äcu*s, *üs* (F.), *needle*.
*agmen*, *ünis* (N.), *army* (on march).
*äper*, *äpri* (M.), *boar*.
*auditus*, *üs* (M.), *hearing*.
*aurīs*, *ś* (F.), *ear*.
*cāsus*, *ūs* (M.), *fall, accident*.
*contrā* (with acc.), *against*.
*cornu*, *ūs* (N.), *horn*.
*dēns*, *dentis* (M.), *tusk*.
*dōmus*, *ūs* (F.), *house*.
*ēqulītātus*, *ūs* (M.), *cavalry*.
*exercitus*, *ūs* (M.), *army* (drilled).
*ficus*, *ūs* (F.), *fig-tree*.
*frōctus*, *ūs* (M.), *fruit*.
*genu*, *ūs* (N.), *knee*.
*hospitium*, *i* (N.), *hotel, inn*.
*intrīmentum*, *i* (N.), *instrument*.
*lācus*, *ūs* (M.), *lake*.
*mānus*, *ūs* (F.), *hand*.
*ōcūlus*, *i* (M.), *eye*.
*portus*, *ūs* (M.), *harbor*.
*quercus*, *ūs* (F.), *oak*.
*sensus*, *ūs* (M.), *sense*.
*splendīdus*, *a, um*, *bright, splendid*.
*ungula*, *ś* (M.), *claw*.
*visus*, *ūs* (M.), *seeing*.

Translate into English.

1. Casui, casum; exercitus, exercitium.
2. Quercubus, quercu; domos, domūs; cornua.
3. Visus et auditus hominibus utiles sunt.
5. Splendidae domus in oppido nostro sunt.
6. Pater multas altas quercūs in silva videt.
7. Mox pueri erunt in portu, ubi multas naves vident.
8. Tauri contra leones cornibus pugnant.
9. In alto lacu plurimi pisces sunt.
10. Non domus nostra corpus est, sed hospitium.
Exercises.

Write in Latin.

1. The hands, with hands; of a needle, of needles.
2. In houses, at home; the knees; with the senses.
3. The fruit of the fig-tree is sweet.
4. The soldier kills the tiger with [his] hand.
5. Cæsar, with all his cavalry, fights against the army of the Gauls.
7. Eyes and ears are the instruments of the senses.
8. The king gives a beautiful horn to the soldier.
9. The farmer comes home from the city.
10. Hearing and seeing are useful to all animals.

Lesson 20.

Fifth Declension, Page 18.

Vocabulary.

ācēs, ē (F.), line of battle.
dīēs, ē (M. and F.), day.
dōmina, ae (F.), mistress.
fāciēs, ē (F.), face.
fīdēs, ē (F.), faith.
glōriōsus, a, um, glorious.
infīnum, i (N.), beginning.
jūstītia, ae (F.), justice.
mōridēs, ē (M.), midday.

multītūdo, inīs (F.), multitude.
[downfall.
oocāsus, ĕs (M.), setting.
plānitīa, ē (F.), plain.
ṛēs, rē (F.), thing.
sērēna, a, um, serene, clear.
spās, ē (F.), hope.
sub (with acc. or abl.), under,
toward.

Translate into English.

1. Diei, dierum; rē, rebus.
2. Spem; in planitie.
3. Sub terra est magna multitudo rerum utilium.
4. Exercitus in magnam planitiem venit.
5. Soror fidei est justitia.
7. Fortuna est domina rerum humanarum.
8. Spes victoriae milites delectat.
10. In acie multi pedites erant.

Digitized by Google
Latin Method.

Write in Latin.

1. For hope; of things.
2. For the days; at midday (abl.).
3. Many things are hurtful to man.
4. In summer the days are longer than the nights.
5. The face of the goddess was most beautiful.
6. The reward was the beginning of hope.
7. Of all things the sun is most glorious.
8. The winter is the time of short days and long nights.
9. The leaders have very great hope of victory.
10. The next day (abl.) Cæsar will be in his camp.

Lesson 21.

Personal Pronouns, Pages 18 and 19.

Translate into English.

1. Mihi, te, nos, vobis.
2. Ad vos, vestri, nostrum, sibi.
3. Virtus et vitium semper inter se pugnant.
4. Omnes homines se amant.
5. Nos sumus potentes, sed vos estis potentiores.
6. Tu es tristior quam pater meus.
7. Pueri in horto nobiscum ambulant.
8. Ego et frater in oppido heri fuimus. [mortalis.
9. In me et in te et in nobis omnibus est animus im-
11. Omnia tua consilia nobis nota sunt.
12. Plurimi nostrum patriam amant.

Write in Latin.

1. We, you, me, for us.
2. Of you, himself, against thee.
3. I am a shepherd, you are a teacher.
4. Thy mother is dear to thee; mine to me.
5. He comes in company with you.
6. The teacher gives me a very beautiful book.
7. He has his brother with him at home. [selves.
8. Fools and the impatient are always fighting with them-
9. Wisdom and counsel are wanting to you, inhabitants!
10. To us the victory is joyful, to you most sad.
Exercises.

Lesson 22.
Demonstrative Pronouns, Pages 19 and 20.

Translate into English.

1. Hi pueri; haec dona; illius libri.
2. In eodem oppido; mei fratres ipsi.
3. Haec carmina suaviora sunt quam illa.
4. Liberi agricolarum illorum diligentes fuerunt.
5. Ista poemata nobis sunt grata.
7. Pastor canisque ejus sunt fessi.
8. Illa nox erat tristissima; hic dies est laetissimus.
9. Iste tuus amicus vir est optimus.
10. Vastae solitudines in iis locis erant.
11. Memoria harum rerum vobis jucunda erit.
12. Nomen hujus poetae clarissimum erit.

Write in Latin.

1. This city (acc.) ; the same words.
2. That letter ; of the parents themselves.
3. These apples are sweet, those sour.
4. The brothers themselves will be in school to-day.
5. These songs are most pleasing to us.
6. That man has always been hurtful to the commonwealth.
7. One of those boys is diligent, the other lazy.
8. In the same places [there] are many new buildings.
9. Why does the teacher give a reward to that tender boy?
10. The soldiers are in that town, and the enemy in this.

Lesson 23.
Relative and Interrogative Pronouns, Page 20.

Translate into English.

1. Is erit fortissimus, qui ipse suarum cupiditatum victor fuerit.
2. Cujus vox suavior est quam lusciniae?
3. Quis tibi hunc librum dat?
5. Quod animal ferocius est quam tigris?
7. Quibus diebus erit luna plena?
8. Illi pisces, quos frater in fluvio videt, ferciter mordent.
9. Eis estote amici, qui virtutem summam adhibent.
10. Quem Cicero eloquens doctusque oratione non tenet?

Write in Latin.
1. A boy, who studies, will be wise.
2. [He] who gives honors to the bad, is hurtful to the state.
3. Many men will be great, whose life has been obscure and full of dangers.
4. That king is fortunate, whom all the citizens praise.
5. Who of the Romans was more renowned than Cicero?
6. The bowls which are here had often been full of sweet wine.
7. Let the pupils be present, to whom the teacher gives rewards.
8. Whose life has been altogether\(^1\) free from cares?
9. To which jeweller does the queen give the greatest [sum of] money?
10. What animal has greater strength than the elephant?

\(^1\) altogether = omnino.

Lesson 24.

Cardinals and Ordinals, Pages 21 and 22.

Translate into English.

1. Duodecim; duodetriginta.
2. Quintus; trigesimus.
3. Illi duodequinquaginta pueri.
4. Mille passūs; duo millia passuum; ducenta millia passuum.
5. Hic murus est altus trecentos pedes, et latus novem pedes.
7. Agricolae filius primus est; amici filia secunda, ille puer autem undecimus.
8. Homo habet unum ōs, duas aures, duos oculos.
Write in Latin.

1. Fourteen; forty-nine.
2. The fifteenth; the nineteenth.
3. The wise [men] of Greece were seven.
5. The enemy kill five thousand men in the war.
6. What time is it? 7 o'clock; midday.¹
7. The seventh king of Rome was unjust and very wicked.
8. A Roman legion has five thousand foot-soldiers, three hundred horsemen. ¹ meridies, ét, (m.)

Lesson 25.

Active Voice. Four Conjugations. Present and Imperfect; Indicative.

Pages 28, 33, 34, 35, and 36.

Translate into English.

1. Laudatis, laudabas; cadunt, cadebam.
2. Tenemus, tenebamus; veniunt, veniebatis.
3. Miles ex altera parte urbis venit.
4. Romani contra hostes pugnant.
5. Helvetii Caesaris adventum exspectabant.
6. Timidae-ōves in medio campo errabant.
7. Occasu solis dominus cum servis ad oppidum veniebat.
8. Tota spes Romanos deserit.
10. Vita mortalibus nihil dat sine magno labore.
11. Homines amplius oculis quam auribus credunt.
12. Hostes impetum legionum atque equitum non sustinebant.

Write in Latin.

1. He laughs, they were laughing; they adorn, we did adorn.
2. You end;¹ he saw; they took, she takes.
3. Virtues adorn the state.
4. The general praised the valor of [his] soldiers.
5. The fierce enemy take the city.

¹ to end = finio.

13
6. This day ends the liberty of the commonwealth.
7. The Romans gave the greatest honors to good citizens.
8. The Gauls were fighting with great courage.
9. Many men were building houses, in which they do not live.
10. The soldiers carry ladders with them, and easily enter the city.

\[\text{to build} = \text{aedifico.}\]

Lesson 26.

Future; Indicative. Pages 28, 33, 34, 35, and 36.

Translate into English.

1. Scribam, scribemus; servabit; servabunt.
2. Habebis, habebitis; custodies; custodient.
3. Ad te semper scribemus.
4. Ego te laudabo, tu me vituperabis.
5. Omnes boni legibus divinis semper parebunt.
6. Discipulos diligentes non puniemus.
7. Tu exercitum duces, multasque urbes expugnabis.
8. Imperator hanc urbem custodiet.
9. Miles corpus paludamento teget.
10. Vos, viri fortissimi, urbem templaque defendetis.

\[\text{Hieme in urbe vivemus, aestate autem ruri vivimus.}\]

12. Ver nobis multos flores praebebit.

\[\text{punio}^{4} = \text{to punish.}\]

Write in Latin.

1. We shall see, they will see; he will lead, you will lead
2. They end, they ended, they will end.
3. The trees will bloom in spring.
4. We shall laugh, you will weep.
5. Hannibal will lead his army into Rome.
6. The next day Caesar will move his camp.
7. I will cover the bodies of the boys with [my] cloak.
8. You will not easily see a lion in Europe.
9. The soldiers will kill all the prisoners with swords.
10. Death will end all the hopes of life.
LESSON 27.


Translate into English.

1. Habueram, habuerunt; veneritis, venistis.
2. Contrahebat, contraxerat, contraxīre, contrahet.
3. Ille rex urbem Romam muris munitivit.
5. Si animum virtutibus ornaveris, semper beatus eris.
7. Multum iis debemus, qui nos virtutem docuère.
8. Cicero conjurationem Catilinae detexerat.¹
10. Militum corpora socii sepeliverint.
11. Ad rivum eundem lupus et agnus venerant.
12. Ingens monstrum virgo domuit.

¹ detego² = to discover.

Write in Latin.

1. We had seized, he will have seized.
2. They have covered, we shall cover, she had covered.
3. Nature has fortified Italy by the Alps.
4. Bad temper has often been-hurtful¹ to generals.
5. Cæsar arranged the line-of-battle.
6. Base fear of the enemy had seized the whole army.
7. We owe much to those, who have taught us virtue.
8. In spring the flowers will have covered the hills² and fields.
9. The senate decreed rewards to the soldiers, who had not betrayed the town.
10. This state had flourished [for] a long time, because it had always obeyed the laws.

¹ noceo². ² collis, is (M.).
LESSON 28.

Subjunctive; Present and Imperfect. Active. Four Conjugations and sum. Pages 94, 28, 33, 34, 35, and 36.

Translate into English.
1. Audiatis, audires; curemus, curaret; essemus.
2. Timeamus, timerem; dicant, dicerent; sis.
3. Laudabit puerum, ut litteras amet.
5. Curo, ut pueri corpus exerceam.
6. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italian ducet, ut cum Romanis pugnet.
7. Sint tibi omnia bona.
8. Sit pauper, sit miser; at est frater meus.
10. Non dubitabam, quin milites nostri hostes superarent.

Write in Latin.
1. He may fight, they might fight; you might send; I may be.
2. We may say, thou mightst say; you may sustain; he might be.
3. They ask [for] aid, that they may sustain the attack of the enemy.
4. Caesar hastened to Italy, that he might enroll 1 there two legions.
5. The general commanded, that the soldiers should keep their stations. 2
6. I will take care to train 3 [that I may train] the boy's mind.
7. Who does not fight, that he may preserve his country?
8. I do not doubt, that you may always praise the good.
9. My father commanded, that I should come home.
10. We did not doubt, that you might have faith in us.

1 to enroll = conscribo. 2 statio, ënis. 3 erudio.
LESSON 29.
Perfect and Pluperfect, Pages 25, 28, 33, 34, 35, and 36.

Translate into English.

1. Cognoscamus, cognosceremus, cognoverimus, cognovisset, fuerimus.

2. Studeant; judicarent; dubitaveris; convenisset; fuisse.

3. Saepe majores nostrī dimicaverunt, ut patriam liberarent.

4. Omnes parentes optant, ut filii litteras diligenter studuerint.

5. Nemo dubitat, quīn milites fortissime pugnaverint.

6. Convenitis, ut malum oratorem rideatis.

7. Quis dubitat, quīn bonos semper laudaverimus, malos semper vituperaverimus?

8. Ex captīvis cognovit, quo in loco copiae hostium consedissent.

9. Non erat dubium, quīn terrōr omnium civium animos occupavisset.

10. Ita judicat judex justus, ut in omni re rectam conscientiam servet.

1 majores, um (E.) = ancestors. 2 prisoner. 3 right.

Write in Latin.

1. We might have obeyed; he may have built; it might have been.

2. I may take care, you might take care, he may have taken care, we might have taken care.

3. Cæsar led an army to Italy, that he might liberate the city Rome.

4. There is no doubt, that he has changed his manner.

5. The Greeks took care, that the young men had obeyed all laws.

6. The father wished, that you had come home.

7. We had built houses, [in order] that others might have lived in them.

8. Nobody doubted, that we had always praised the good and blamed the bad (plur.).
Lesson 30.

Imperative. Active. Pages 29, 34, 35, and 37.

Translate into English.

1. Amate litteras, pueri!
2. Vires semper exercete in optimis rebus!
3. Lauda mare; litus ama!
4. Diligenter cura, mi amice, valetudinem tuam!
5. Praeceptor puerorum mentes erudito.
7. Dic, cur veneris!
8. Ne nomen muta; muta mores!
10. Narrate nobis, quid parentes scripserint!

Write in Latin.

1. The children shall obey [their] parents.
2. Set a good example to thy friends!
3. Learn these songs, boys; they are very beautiful.
4. Carefully train your children; praise the good; punish
   My son, obey thy mother! [the bad]
5. Let the master teach the boys the Latin language.
6. Do not destroy the city, soldiers!
7. Tell me, my son, what the friend has written (subj.)!

¹ honest. ² praebeo.

Lesson 31.

Infinitives: Active. Pages 29, 34, 35, and 37.

Translate into English.

1. Fuisse; habiturus esse; debere.
2. Recturus esse; intellexisse; studere; futurus esse.
3. Naturam mutare difficile est.
5. Hominis est animum praeparare.
7. Difficillimum est regere hominum animos.
8. Emisse facilius est quam solvere.
9. Aliud audire, aliud intelligere est.
Write in Latin.

1. To be; to have written; to be about to praise.
2. To have been; to be about to see; to please.
3. It is not easy to write well.
4. He prepared to obey the authority of [his] great father.
5. It is great praise to have pleased the good.
6. It is difficult to have learned many things.
7. The general said, [that] he [se] will come with the tenth legion.
8. He who knows not to obey, knows not to command.

Lesson 32.

Participles, Gerunds, and Supines. Pages 33, 34, 35, and 37.

Translate into English.

1. Exercitus pugnans urbem intravit.
2. Animus, se non videns, alia cernit.
3. Hostes, urbem expugnaturi, castra muniverunt.
4. Venio auditus, quid pater scripserit.
5. Ars scribendi utilissima est.
6. Sapientia est ars vivendi.
7. Homines ad intelligendum et ad agendum' nati sunt.
8. Legatos ad Caesarem miserant, rogatum auxilium.
9. Sitis difficillima est toleratu.
10. Ingens hominum, multitudo in urbem convenit, ludos publicos spectatum.

Write in Latin.

1. The soldiers [when] fighting entered the city.
2. We are about-to-remove into the city.
3. We have come to Rome to look-at the games.
4. Philosophy is the art of living uprightly.
5. The senate decreed rewards to the soldiers, not having [who had not] betrayed the town.
6. Ripe grapes¹ are sweet to taste.²

¹ līra, a, (f.)
² gusto.¹
Lesson 33.


Translate into English.

1. Terretur, terreatur; fugantur, fugemur.
2. Trahitur, trahatur; erudimur, erudiamur.
3. Castra e campo moventur, ut hostes terreantur.
4. Senex miser e domo trahitur.
5. Nonne litterae a me scribuntur?
6. Virtus semper doceatur.
7. Multa videntur, sed intelliguntur pauca.
8. Lupi a canibus fugantur, ut oves serventur.
10. Leo, ut interficiatur, a venatore petitur.

Write in Latin.

1. We are caught, he may be caught; he is charmed, they may be charmed.
2. You may be bound; they are taught.
3. The idle guards are caught.
4. The nightingale is charmed by her own song.
5. You are bound by honor.
6. The boy may be defended by his friends.
7. The enemy are hidden in the woods.
8. The power of the Germans is feared by all nations.
9. The soldiers fight very bravely, that the town may be saved.

1 luscinia, a, (f.)

Lesson 34.

Imperfect: Indicative and Subjunctive. Pages 30, 33, 34, 35, and 36.

Translate into English.

1. Arabatur, araretur; vincerer, vincebaris.
2. Praeberemur, praeebabis; custodirem, custodiremini.
3. Agri lai facile ararentur.
4. Frumentum agricolis praebetur.
5. Lupus ferox a pastore vincetur.
6. Fertilissima Germaniae loca colebantur.
7. Cives tantum laudabantur, ut furore occuparentur.
8. Litterae scribantur, ut ego admonerer.

Write in Latin.
1. We were chosen; they might be bounded.
2. It was fortified; you might be left.
3. The lion was chosen king by the animals.
4. The garden was bounded by a wall.
5. The province was left by the Germans.
6. We were fortified by a mind conscious of right.
7. You might be led home.
8. Ladders were furnished, that the walls might be destroyed.
9. The stag was held by [his] horns, that he might not escape.
10. We were deceived, that we might not receive the money.

Lesson 35.

Future. Pages 30, 33, 34, 35, and 36.

Translate into English.
1. Turbaberis; sustinebuntur; finiemini.
2. Amittemur; despiciar; vincieris.
3. Leges Romanae mox turbabuntur.
4. Animus meus justitiā sustinebitur.
5. Plus oculis quam auribus debetur.
6. In via amittar.
7. A legatis agnoscemur.
8. Tigillum a ranis conspicietur et despicietur.
9. Bellum a stulto incipiebatur et a sapiente finietur.
10. Vos, mei inimici, viciemini.

Write in Latin.
1. He will be blamed; they will be filled.
2. He will be received; you will be sent.
3. I shall be praised, but you will be blamed.
4. The ocean will be filled with fishes.
5. Our friends will be warned in vain.
6. The attack will be received by us all.
7. The power of the Romans will be broken.
8. We shall be destroyed, that you may be hidden.
9. The armies will not be sent across the Rhine.
10. The monkey will be punished, because he has seized the meat.

**Lesson 36.**

**Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect. Indicative and Subjunctive.**

Pages 30, 33, 34, 35, and 36.

**Translate into English.**

1. Distingueretur, distinctus sit; jubebitur, jussus erat.
2. Falsi sumus, fallamur; conficientur, confecti essent.
3. Pulchra puella abrepta est ab Appio Claudio, uno ex decemviris.
4. Vocati eramus Romani, ut a posteris memoraremur.
5. Ager divisus erit in tres partes.
6. Domus colore distincta esset.
7. Verba fallacia dicta sint.
8. Hostium equitatu erepti essetis.
9. Litterae confectae erunt a diligentibus discipulis.
10. Non prius dormiemus, quam negotia finita erunt

**Write in Latin.**

1. We had been heard; they will have been calmed. ¹
2. You may have been told; he might have been rescued. ²
3. A great crash has been heard.
4. The voice of anger will have been calmed.
5. The body might have been taken to Athens.
6. The horses have been frightened by the attack of the enemy.
7. Gaul is bounded (perf.) by the river Rhine and the ocean.
8. Who doubts that Socrates has been unjustly punished?
9. When the city shall have been fortified, the citizens will defend it.
10. Tell me, what had been written (subj.) to you by your sister.

¹ to calm = *lenio*.
² to rescue = *eripio*.
Lesson 37.

Imperative, Pages 31, 34, 35, and 37.

Translate into English.

1. Pueri, exercemini in artibus!
2. Scriba regis agnoscit.
3. Vox populi auditor.
4. Alti montes adscenduntur.
5. De rupe puella dejector.
6. Amici, edite et nutrimini! [clauduntor.]
7. Portae prima luce aperiuntur, et ante solis occasum
8. Mi fili, probe erudire in optimis rebus!

Write in Latin.

1. Be ye conquered, O gates!
2. Be thou sustained, O friend! [and Gauls.
3. The peace shall be maintained among the Romans
4. Let the arms be carried into the city.
5. Evils shall be prevented at all times.
6. The man shall be blamed on-account-of his guilt. 2
7. Be thou always sought, O virtue!
8. Let the meat be grasped-at by the dog.

LESSON 38.

Infinitives, Pages 31, 34, 35, and 37.

Translate into English.

1. Reddi; conjectus esse.
2. Paratum iri; erudiri.
3. Ager vastari non debet.
4. Timor leti deleri non potest.
5. Ciconiae in unum locum congregare solent.
6. Nuntiat se eruditum esse.
7. Leges civem Romanum verberari vetuerunt.
8. Magna pars sermonis responderi potest.
9. Sapientes semper ratione regi student.
10. De monte hastas torqueri imperator jussit.
Write in Latin.

1. To have been accused; to be about to be taught.
2. To be betrayed; to have been guarded.
3. To have been warned is not to have been accused.
4. It is not easy to be taught well.
5. For a man (acc.) to be changed in one day is very difficult.
6. The general commanded, [that] the line of battle be arranged.
7. It is a great wrong for a friend to be betrayed.
8. Nothing can be accomplished without labor.
9. No one, without a fault, ought to be accused.
10. The captive has been prepared to be cast into chains.

Lesson 39.

Translate into English.

1. Testis fidelis non mentitur.
2. Nunquam sapiens irascitur.
3. De multis rebus locuti sumus.
4. Subita tempestas classem morabatur.
5. Improbus plurima pollicetur, pauc a perficit.
6. Cur stulta ista rana bovem imitatur?
7. Frons, oculi, vultus, saepe mentiuntur.
8. Nox atque praeda hostes remorata sunt.
9. Omnia vetustate labuntur, nec quidqu a senectute tutum est.
10. Omnibus in vita unā cum amicis fruere!
11. Tu voluptate frueris, ego utor.
12. Senectutem omnes sperant, eandem accusant adeptam.

Write in Latin.

1. At the beginning of summer the enemy set out for Rome.
2. Many of the Greeks, who had gone forth to Troy, never returned home.
3. Orgetorix persuades Dumnonix, that he may attempt the same.
4. On every side flowers sprang-up\(^1\) in the fields and meadows.
5. Speak little, promise cautiously, remember always the benefits\(^2\) of your friends.
6. The lieutenant will measure corn to the soldiers.
7. My son has reached\(^3\) the same grades\(^4\) of honor.
8. The soldiers are about to attack the city, which the enemy occupy.
9. There is no doubt, that the generals have promised rewards to the brave soldiers.
10. On the same day, on which the most famous battle was fought, the poet Euripides was born.

\(^1\) orior.\(^2\) beneficium. \(^3\) adipiscor.\(^4\) gradus, \(\&c.\)

Lesson 40.

Translate into English.

1. Vulpes autem uam tangere non potuit.
2. Duos libros tibi dare possimus.
3. Praeterita mutare non possumus.
4. Aut prodesse poetae cupiunt aut delectare.
5. Agros Remorum depopulati sunt,\(^1\) quos adire poterant.
6. Vir sapiens luctum calcare potuerit.
7. Vix Caesar milites e castris educere potuerat, cum hostes impetum fecerunt.
8. Illi minus facile eam rem in imperio nostro consequi poterant.
9. Alterum deinde, priusquam tertius posset consequi, interfecit.
10. Non id potuit efficere.
11. Potest ex casa magnus vir exire; virtus in omni loco nascitur.
12. Cura, ut possis aequo animo vitam relinquere.

\(^1\) depopulor,\(^1\) to lay waste.
Latin Method.

Write in Latin.
1. Many cannot endure the pain of sickness.
2. He could not seize all places in Italy.
3. They will be able to enter the town to-day with all their troops.
4. He may be able to give me this letter.
5. The teacher always praises him because he is able to read better than all [other] pupils.
6. Cæsar could not defend the city, which the enemy had attacked.
7. They could not be taught the Latin language by others.

Lesson 41.
Volo; nolo; malo. Page 38.
Translate into English.
1. Noli esse amicus homini iracundo.
2. Ambo rempublicam, quam tueri potuissent, perturbare maluerant.
3. Iter Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolebat.
4. Visne scire, quae scripserim?
5. Ego domi manere nolo, tu ambulare non vis.
7. Oro te, ut mecum ludere velis. [debemus.
8. Si beati esse volumus, sorte nostra contenti esse
9. Si vis amari, ama!
10. Non dubitabam, quin prodesse mihi malles, quam obesse.¹

¹ obsum = to do harm.

Write in Latin.
1. What we wish, we gladly believe.
2. Love others, if you wish to be loved yourself.
3. While the greedy dog wishes to grasp the shadow, he lets-fall¹ the meat from his mouth.
4. Do you wish to walk in the fields with me? No; I prefer to remain at home.

¹ to let fall = sumitto.
Exercises.

5. They did not wish the soldiers to remain in the city.
6. Do the boys wish to play on the plain? No; they prefer to study.
7. If you wish to be happy, imitate the examples of good men!
8. We had rather be useful to our country than be rich.
9. A good man will prefer to be loved rather than feared.
10. Do not follow bad examples, my son!

\[1 \text{ imitor.}^{1}\]

Lesson 42.

Fero and compounds, Page 39.

Translate into English.

1. Quid est tam nobile quam opem ferre supplicibus?
2. Senectus affer\[t\] prudentiam.
3. Laudo vos, quod misero auxilium fertis.
4. Nihil potest praeferr\[i\] virtuti.
5. Curabamus, ut auxilium tibi ferretur.
6. Perfer patienter laborem.
7. Milites in itineribus multas aerumnas pertulerunt.\[2\]
8. Non omnis ager, qui seritur, fert fruges.
10. Domum redit\[u\] spes sublata est.

Write in Latin.

1. Bad citizens bear arms against [their] country.
2. Socrates bore hardships most patiently.
3. Learn to bear well pleasure and pain.
4. There is no doubt, that old age brings many sorrows with it.
5. Cæsar ordered two legions to bear aid to the cavalry.
6. A good man is able to bear with even mind the hardships of life.
7. Who can endure the discourse of this foolish man?
8. Bring back those books to me, which I gave you yesterday!

\[1 \text{ affero = to bring.}\]
\[2 \text{ perfeso = to endure.}\]
LESSON 43.
Flo, Page 39.

Translate into English.

1. Nemo fit casu bonus.
2. Ex amico inimicus, ex inimico amicus fieri potest.
3. Senectute prudentior sit.
5. Apud veteres Romanos ex agricolis siebant consules.
6. Themistoclis consilio factum est, ut Athenienses urbem relinquuerent.

7. Onus, quod bene fertur, leve sit.
8. Qui noxium adjuvabit, culpae socius sit.
9. His rebus sit, ut Helvetii minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possint.
10. Caesar litteris Labieni certior factus erat.

1 Athenians. 2 help. 3 ally, partner.

Write in Latin.

1. No one becomes, by chance, very base.
2. This heavy burden was made light by patience.
3. In time (max) our soldiers will become bolder.
4. In winter the days become shorter and the nights longer.
5. The Athenians had become the allies of the Romans.
6. Cæsar, having been informed by the legates, set out for Rome.

7. He wished to become friendly to me.

1 légatus, i, (m.).

LESSON 44.

Eo and compounds, Page 39.

Translate into English.

1. Ego abeo, tu ex itinere redis.
2. In pugna atrocidissima multi fortissimi milites perierunt.
3. Curare debemus, ne vitam silentio transeamus.
4. Milites e castris redeuntes occisi sunt.
5. Socrates aequo atque hilari animo mortem obiit.
6. Alexander ad Jovis oraculum adire constituit.
7. Alpes nemo unquam ante Hannibalem cum exercitu transierat.
8. Cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit.
9. Civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent.

1 oraculum, i (N.) = the oracle.

Write in Latin.

2. Let us go to the city; let us return from the country.
3. A brave man will meet his last day with even mind.
4. After the battle very many perished by hunger and cold.
5. Italy is fortified by the Alps, [those] very lofty mountains, which an army cannot easily cross.
6. Go to Rome, my son, and wonder [at] the monuments of the old Romans.
7. At the beginning of winter the general wished to cross the river with all his forces on a bridge.
EXTRACTS FROM CÆSAR.

Note. — In the special vocabularies, only such words are included as are not found in the Vocabulary at the end of the book. The figures refer to Notes on p. 218.

I.

Vocabulary.

Aquitāni, orum, m. (pl.), the Aquitani, a people of Gaul. Celtae, arum, m. (pl.), the Celts, inhabiting a division of Gaul. dēlīgo, lēgi, lectum, to select, appoint. inductus (induco), instigated, induced. inter se, from one another (among themselves). Orgētōrīx, Igis (m.), Orgetorix, chief of the Helvetians. orior, ari, ortus, begin (arise). praecēdo, cessal, cessum, to surpass, excel. quod, (namely), because. septemtriones, um, m. (pl.), the north. ut ... exirent (exeo), to go forth.

1. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; quorum una incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam Celtae.

2. Hi omnes linguā, institutis, legibus inter se differunt.

3. Quā de causā Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere quotidianis proeliiis cum Germanis contendunt.

4. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni, spectant in septemtriones et orientem solem.

5. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix.

6. Is, regni cupiditate inductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit, et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent.
7. His rebus adducti, et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, constituerunt ea quae ad proficiscendum\(^1\) pertinere com-
parare.

8. Ad eas res conficiendas\(^2\) Orgetorix deligitur.

\(^1\) to the journey(ing).

\(^2\) to effect these things.

II.

Vocabulary.

Casticus, 1 (m.), Casticus, a Sequanian chief.
cibāria, orum (n.), supplies, provisions.
ēnuntio, to announce, to report.
exsequor,\(^3\) sectus, to follow out, accomplish.
indicium, 1 (n.), disclosure, discovery.
jusjurandum, jurisjurandi (n.), an oath.
mōlo,\(^4\) molui, molltum, to grind.
obaerātus, 1 (m.), a debtor.
quum = omn, when (with subjunctive verb).

1. In eo itinere persuadet\(^1\) Castico (cujus pater regnum in
Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat, et a senatu populi Romani
amicus appellatus erat), ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet,\(^1\)
quod pater ante habuerat.

2. Hac oratone adducti, inter se fidem et jusjurandum
dant, et totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

3. Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata.

4. Die constitutā Orgetorix ad judicium omnem suam
familiam, ad\(^2\) hominum milia decem, et omnes clientes obae-
ratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, conduxit;
per eos se eripuit.

5. Quum civitas, ob eam rem incitata, armis jus suum exse-
qui conaretur, Orgetorix mortuus est.

6. Post ejus mortem, nihilominus Helvetii id, quod consti-
tuerant, facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeat.

7. Trium mensium molita cibaria quemque domo efferre
jubent.
III.

Vocabulary.

Allobroges, um, m. (pl.), the Allobroges, a people of Gaul.
Genæva (or Genna), ae (f.), Geneva.
Influit, fluxi, fluxum, to flow into.
Jura, ae (m.), Mount Jura, in Gaul.
Lemannus, i (m.), lake Lemannus (now Geneva).
mātūro,1 to hasten.
Perduco,3 duxi, ductum, to carry, to extend.
Sequani, ōrum (m.), the Sequani.
Ultŭrĭor, us (adj. in compar.), farther.
vādum, i (n.), a ford (wading).

Phrases:

certiorem facere, to inform.
sibi esse in animo, that it was their intention.

1. Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent; unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodanum; alterum per provinciam nostram multo facilius atque expeditius, propertea quod Rhodanum nonnullis locis vado transitur.

2. Extremum oppidum Allobrogum est, proximumque Helvetiorum finibus, Geneva.

3. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet.

4. Caesari quum id nuntiatum esset, maturat ab urbe proficisci, et quam maximis potest 8 itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit.

5. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, qui dicerent 4: Sibi esse in animo, sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere.

6. Interea — ea legione, quam secum habebat, militibusque qui ex provincia convenerant — a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, milia passuum decem novem 6 murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim fossamque perducit.
Extracts from Caesar.

IV.

Vocabulary.

Aeduus, a, um, Aeduan; (plural), the Aedui.
angustiae, arum (f.), narrowness, narrow pass, strait.
conscribo, scripsi, scriptum, to enroll, enlist.
dēprēcātor, oris (m.), an intercessor.
Dumnōrīx, īgis (m.), Dumnorix, an Aeduan chief.
ōdūco, duxi, ductum, to lead out.
pōptūlor, atus, to lay waste, devastate.
transdūco, ductum, to lead over, conduct.

1. Ubi ea dies quam constituerat cum legatis venit, et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat se posse iter ulli per provinciam dare.

2. Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua propter angustias ire non poterant.

3. His quem persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorīgem mittunt, ut eo deprecatore impetrarent.


5. Ipse in Italiām magnis itineribus contendit, duasseque ibi legiones conscribit, et tres ex hibernis educit, et in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpes ire contendit.

6. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias transduxerant, et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant eorumque agros populabantur.

V.

Vocabulary.

ōtrā (adv. and prep. with acc.), on this side.
concīdo, cidi, cīsum, to cut to pieces, destroy.
de tertiā vigilīā, at the third watch (midnight).
inopīnans, tīs (adj.), not thinking of it, unaware.
in utram partem, in which direction.
lēnītas, ātis (f.), gentleness, slowness.
Tigūrinus, a, um, Tigurian or Tigurine.
1. Aedui, quum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum (supine) auxilium.

2. Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat judicari non possit.

3. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est tres jam partes copiarum Helvetios id flumen transduxisse,11 quartam vero partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse, de tertia vigilia, cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus, ad eam partem pervenit quae nondum flumen transierat.

4. Eos impeditos et inopinantes aggressus, magnam partem eorum concidit.

5. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus; nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quattuor pagos divisa est.

6. Hic pagus Lucium Cassium consulem interfecerat et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat.

VI.

Vocabulary.

Cassiiānus, a, um, Cassian, of or with Cassius.
committo,3 mīsi, missum, to put together, commit, permit.
contāmēlia, ae (f.), insult, abuse.
Divico, ōnis (m.), Divico, a Helvetician.
eo . . quod, for this reason, that.
legātio, ōnis (f.), embassy.
quārē (adv.), whereby, why, for which reason.

1. Helvetii repentinio ejus adventu commoti, legatos ad eum mittunt, cujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat.

2. Is ita cum Caesare egit: Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum.12

3. Quare ne committeret ut is locus ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi Romani nomen caperet.
4. His Caesar ita respondit: Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res quas legati Helvetii commemorassent memoria teneret.

5. Si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num recentium injuriarum deponere posse?

6. Tamen si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea quae pollicieantur facturos intelligat, et si Aeduis de injuriis quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus, satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum.

VII.

Vocabulary.

comporto,\textsuperscript{1} to bring together, collect.
dūco,\textsuperscript{3} dux, ductum (with time), to put off, delay.
fiāgīto,\textsuperscript{1} to demand.
mājōres, um (c.), ancestors.
pābulum, i (n.), fodder.
praesentia, ae (f.), presence; in praesentia, at present, for the present.
prōhibeo,\textsuperscript{2} ut, in, to keep back, restrain, prevent.
rāpīna, ae (f.), plundering, rape.
suppēto,\textsuperscript{3} petivi, petitum, to be supplied, to be at hand.

1. Divico respondit: Ita Helvetios a majoribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere non dare consueverint; ejus rei populum Romanum esse testem.

2. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar, et equitatum omnem praemittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant.

3. Caesar suos a proelio continebat, ac satis habebat in praesentia hostem rapinis prohibere.

4. Interim quotidian Caesar Aeduos frumentum quod essent publice pollicii flagitare.

5. Nam propter frigora non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppettebat.

6. Diem ex die ducere Aedui; conferri, comportari, adesse dicere.\textsuperscript{18}
VIII.

Vocabulary.

affinitas, atis (F.), marriage, alliance.
cupio, to wish well (desire).
designo, to mark out, designate.
diminuo, ui, utum, to diminish.
Liscus, i (m.), Liscus, an Æduan chief.
plurimum valère, to have very great weight.

1. Tum demum Liscus proponit: Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat.

2. Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem, designari sentiebat; sed, quod pluribus praesentibus eas res jactari nollet, celeriter concilium dimittit.

3. Liscum retinet; dicit liberius atque audacius.

4. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse; magnum numerum equi-
tatus semper alere et circums se habere.

5. Favere et cupere Helvetiis propter eam affinitatem; odisse etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu potentia ejus diminuta et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus.

6. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem per Helve-
tiios regni obtinendi venire.

IX.

Vocabulary.

obsecro, to beg, entreat.
offendo (obfendo), fendi, fensum, to offend, displease.
prendo (prehendo), ndi, nsum, to take, grasp.
stātuo, uti, utum, to determine, decide, place.
suspicio (or suppicio), onis (F.), suspicion.
temperantia, ae (F.), temperance, moderation.
1. Quum ad has suspicione sem certissimae res accederent, satis esse causae arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere jubaret.

2. His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fraternum summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat; nam ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet verebatur.

3. Divitiacus, multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, obsecrace coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret.

4. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, quum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimatum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur.16

5. Caesar ejus dextram predivit; Dumnorigem ad se vocat; fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat ostendit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet.

X.

Vocabulary.

<captivus, i (m.), captive, prisoner.>
<circuLTus, us (m.), circuit, a going round.>
<comperio,4 perl, pertum, to ascertain, disclose.>
<insigne, is (n.), a standard, ensign.>

Phrases: —

<equo admissu, at full speed.>
<summus mons, the top of the mountain.>
<primu luce, at break of day.>

1. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte conscendisse millia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent misit.16 Renuntiatum est facilem esse.

2. De tertia vigilia Titum Labienum legatum pro praetore cum duabus legionibus et his ducibus summum jugum montis ascendere jubet.
3. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere quo hostes ierant ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit.

4. Prima luce, quem summus mons a Tito Labieno tene-retur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitus esset, Considius equo admissò ad eum acoußit, dicit montem quem a Labieno occupari voluerit ab hostibus teneri; id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse.

NOTES.

1. persuadet . . ut . . occuparet, persuades to seise.
2. ad = to the number of.
3. quam maximís potest, the greatest possible; contendit, pushes on.
4. qui dicerent, to say (who were to say).
5. su legione, with that legion (a military phrase); secum (= cum se), with him.
6. miiia . . novem, nineteen miles (in length); pedum, etc., 16 feet in height.
7. negat se posse, says he cannot; ulli, to anybody.
8. eo deprecatore = by his intercession.
9. plurimum poterat, = had very great power; in matrimonium duxerat, had married.
10. magnis itineribus, = by forced marches.
11. tres . . transduxisse, that the Helv. had already taken across, &c.
12. See page 251 of the Grammar. The teacher should explain this and the following constructions, familiarly and orally.
13. conferri, etc., it (the corn) was being got together, was on the way, was close by, they said) hist. infin.: Rule 40, p. 163.
14. animadvertere in = to punish.
15. futurum uti averterentur = would be turned away.
16. qui cognoscoerent misit, he sent [men] to learn.
Caesar’s Landing in Britain.

Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quōd nāvēs propter magnitudinem in altō constituit non poterant; militibus autem — ignōtis locis, impeditis manibus, magnō et gravi onere armōrum oppressī — simul et dē nāvibus dēsiendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum; cum illī aut ex aridō, aut paulum in aquam progressī, omni-bus membris expeditis, nōtissimis locis, audacter tēla conjicent, et equōs insuefactōs incitārent.

Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās (quārum et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitātior, et mōtus ad ūsum expeditiōnem) paulum removērī ab onerāris nāvibus, et rēmis incitārī, et ad latus apertum hostium constitūrī, atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentis hostēs submovērī jussit. Atque, nōstrīs militibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitudinem maris, [is] qui decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, contestātus deōs ut ea rés legiōni feliciter evenīret: Dēsilite, inquit, militēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere. Ego certē meum rei publicae atque im-abandon有大量的词 restoration are added. 
VOCABULARY.

No. I.—ENGLISH AND LATIN.

Note.—For the principal parts of verbs (when not given in full), and for
the inflection of some proper names, see Vocabulary No. II. For Numerals,
see pages 21, 22. The figures in parenthesis refer to the Table of Synonymes.

A, usually not expressed; a certain,
qui•dam, quaedam, quoddam.
Abode, domicilium, i, n.; habitatio,
ōnis, f. (39).
About (adv.), circiter, ferē; (prep.),
circē, circum.
Abroad, foris (place where); forās
(whither).
Abundance, cōpia, ae, f.
Accomplish, pericio,3 efficio, 3 feci, sectum.
Accuse, accūso,1 arguo, 3 ī, ītum.
Acorn, glāns, dis, f.
Across, trāns (acc.).
Admire, mīror,1 āri, ātus.
Admonish, moneo,2 admoneo,2 uī, uītum.
Adorn, orno.1
Advance (v.), prōgressior, gressus.
Advantage, utilitätēs, ātis, f.
Advantageous, utiles, e.
Affair, rēs, rei, f.
After, post (acc.).
Afterwards, postē.
Again, iterum; again and again,
etiam atque etiam.
Against, contrā, in (acc.).
Age, aetēs, dis, f. (7).
Aid, auxilium, i, n.
Alarmed, territus, a, um.

All, every, omnīs, e; whole, tōtus,
a, um (gen. tōtus); all things,
omnia (77).
Allowed, it is —, licet, sit, situm.
Alone, sōlus, a, um (gen. sōlus).
Along with, ānd cum (abl.).
Already, jam.
Also, quoque, etiam.
Always, semper.
Am, see Be.
Ambassador, légātus, i, m.
Among, inter (acc.).
Ancient, antiquus, a, um.
And, et, atque (ac), -que.
Anger, ira, ae, f.
Animal, animal, dis, N. (14).
Another, alius, a, us (gen. aibus);
of two, alter, era, erum (p. 7)
Answer (v.), respondeo, 2 di, sum.
Answer (n.), responsum, i, N.
Ant, formēa, ae, f.
Antiquities, rēs antiquae (plur.).
Antony, Antōnīus, i, m.
Any, ullus, a, um (gen. īus); after
negatives, quisquam; anybody
(emphatic), quīvīs, quaevīs; in-
terrog. numquīs.
Apparel, vestītus, ās, m.
Appear, videor, 2 visus; appāreo, 2 uī.
Appearance, specīs, ēs, f.

Digitized by Google
Apple, pōnum, i, N.
Approve, probō.¹
Are, sumus, estis, sunt; a sign of the present.
Arms, arma, ōrum, n. (16).
Army, exercitus, ūs, m. (5).
Arrange, dispōno,² posuī, postum.
Arrangement, dispositio, ōnis, F.
Arrive, pervenio,⁴ vēni, ventum.
Art, ars, artis, F.
As, ut; as . . . as, tam . . . quam;
such . . . as, tālis . . . quālis
(see quantus, quot, quoties, § 106);
as if, quasi, tamquam.
Ashamed, usually with pudet
(impers. see § 221. b, c); as,
I am ashamed, mē pudet.
Aside (in composit.), sē-: as, sē-voco,¹
to call aside.
Ask, ōro,¹ rogō (two acc.); peto,³
iūi, iūnum (ad), (79).
Asp, aspis, idis, F.
Assembly, conventus, ūs, m.
Asylum, asylum, i, N.
At, locative (see § 258. c, d); =
near, ad; = on account of, on
occasion of, ad (acc.); at last,
dēmum; at length, tandem.
Attack (v.), aggregērior,⁶ oppugno,¹
Attack (n.), impetus, ūs, M.
Attempt (v.), cōnor.¹
Attempt (n.), cōndatus, ūs, M.
Attention, to give, operam dare.
Audacity, audācitās, ātis, F.
Authority, auctoritās, ātis, F.
Avarice, avaritia, ae, F.
Axle, axis, is, M.

Bad, malus, a, um; bad people,
improbī (66).
Barbarian, barbarus, a, um.
Barbarous (in character), im-
mānis, e (93).
Base (adj.), turpis, e.
Battle, proelium, i, N. (22).
Be, esse (sum, fui, futūrus).
Bear (v.), fero, ferre, tūi, lātum;
(suffer), patior,² passus.
Bear (n.), ursus, i, M.; ursa, ae, F.
Beard, barba, ae, F.; bearded, bar-
bātus, i.
Beautiful, pulcher (or cer), cra,
crum (91).
Beauty, pulcritūdo, inis, F.; decor,
ūris, M.
Because, quia, quod.
Become, fīō, fieri, factus; it is
becoming, decet (acc.).
Before, as prepos., ante (acc.); as
conj., ante . . . quam.
Beg, ōro,¹ implōro,¹ peto³ (79).
Beginning, initium, i, N.; in the
— of summer, prīma aestāte.
Behalf (in behalf of), prō (abl.).
Behold, spectō.¹ Believe, crēdo.³
Beseech, implōro¹ (acc. of thing
and abl. of person with ab); ōro.
Betray, prōdo,³ dīdi, ditum.
Betrothed, spōnsus, i, m.; spōnsa,
ae, F.
Better, melior, melius.
Between, inter (acc.).
Bind, nectō,³ xui, c tum; vincio,⁴
nxi, nctum (63).
Bitter, acerbus, a, um.
Bitterness, acerbītās, ātis, F.
Blame (v.), culpo,¹ vituperō,¹ repre-
hendo,³ dī, sum.
Blame (n.), culpa, ae, F.
Blessing, bonus, i, N.
Blood, sanguis, inis, M.; when
shed, cruor, ūris, M.
Vocabulary: English and Latin.

Blooming, flòrens, tis.
Blossom, flòs, flòris, M.
Boar, aþer, aprì, M.
Boast (v.), glòrior.¹
Boast (n.), glòria, ae, F.
Body, corpus, orís, N.
Bond, vinculum, ì, N.
Book, liber, libri, M.
Border, finis, is, M. (rarely F.).
Born, to be, nascor,² nàtus.
Both, ambo, ae, o; uterque, utraque, utrumque (gen. utrusque); — of whom, qui utrique; both . . .
and, et . . . et; on both sides, utrique.
Bound (v.), contineo,² uī, tentum.
Bountiful, beneficus, a, um.
Bounty, beneficium, ì, N.
Bowl, pŏculum, ì, N.
Boy, puer, puéri, M.
Bramble-thicket, dûmètum, ì, N.
Branching, rāmòsus, a, um.
Brave, fortis, e.
Bravely, fortiter.
Breadth, latótúdo, inis, F.
Break, frango,³ frēgī, fractum.
Breaking, fractūra, ae, F.
Brevity, brevitàs, ìtis, F.
Brief, brevīs, e.
Bright, clārus, lūcīdus, a, um.
Brightness, clāritās, ìtis, F.
Bring, adfero (afferò); bring on (cause), efficio,³ infero.
Broad, látus, a, um.
Broken, fractus, a, um; — piece, fragmentum, ì, N.
Brother, frater, tris, M.
Bull, taurus, ì, M. [levior, us.
Burdensome, gravīs, e; less —, Bury, sepelio,⁴ īvi, sepultum.
Business, negotium, ì, N.
Busy, occupàtus, a, um.
But, sed; autem (following one or more words).

By (agent after passives), ã, ob (abl.); by no means, nùllō modō, nèquàquam; by day, interdiū; by night, noctū; of means, abl.

C.

Caius, Gàius, ì, M. (initial, C.).
Cake, lūbum, ì, N.
Calamity, calamitās, ìtis, F.
Call, vocō, appello.¹
Camp, castra, òrum, N. plur.
Can, possum, posse, potui; cannot, non possum, nequeo, ìre, ìvi, itum (87).
Cannae, at —, Cannènsis, e (adj.).
Capital (chief town), caput, itis, N.
Capitol, Capitolium, ì, N.
Care, cūra, ae, F. (38).
Carry, porto,¹ fero (irr.).
Carthage, Carthāgo, inis, F.
Cast down (v.), déjicio³ (dēicio), jèci, jectum.
Cat, fēlis, is, M. or F.²
Catch, capio,³ excipio³ (25).
Cautious, cautious, a, um; prudēns.
Cautiously, cautē, ius, issimē.
Cavalry, equitās, ìs, M.
Censor, censur, òris, M.
Certain(a), guidam (see A.).
Chain, calēna, ae, F.
Change (v.), múto.¹
Change (n.), versūra, ae; miūtātio, ìnis, F.
Changeable, miūtābilis, e.
Charge (v.), arguo,³ accusō¹ (acc. and gen.); = attack, impetum facere in (acc.).
Charge (n.), crīmen, inis, N. (32).
Charm (v.), délectō.¹
Cheerful, hilaris, e.
Chief (n.), dux, ducis, M. or F. (42).
Chief (adj.), maximus, a, um.
Chiefly, maximē.
Child, puer, erī, m.; children (of the family), liberi, ērum; (in general), puerī.
Choose (prefer), mālo (irreg.); (select), dēligō, lēgi, lectum; (elect), creō.1
Citadel, arx, arcis, f.
Citizen, civis, is, m. or f.
City (buildings, &c.), urbs, is, f.; (as organized state), civitās, ētīs
Clad, vestīs, a, um. [(98.)
Claw, unguis, is, m.
Clear (as the sky, weather, &c.), serēnus, a, um; (transparent), lūcidus, liquidus.
Clothe, vestīo.4
Clothing, vestīs, ēs, m.; vestīs, ēs, f. (99).
Cold (n.), frīgus, oris, N.; algōr, orīs, m.
Cold (adj.), frīgidus, a, um.
Clusiana, Clāsīnī, ērum, m.
Come, venīo, venī, ventum.
Comedy, comōedia, ae, f.
Coming, adventūs, ēs, m.
Command (v.), jubeō, jussī, jussum (acc. and inf.); imperō (dat. and ut with subj.).
Commander, imperātor, orīs, m.
Command, commendo.1
Commerce, mercātūra, ae, f.
Common, commūnis, e; common people, plēbs, bis, f. ; common-wealth, rēs publica.
Companion, socius, i, m.; comes, itīs, c. (29).
Compare, comparō.1
Complain, quercū, questus.
Complete, perfectus, a, um.
Compleately, omnūnō, penitūs.
Complexion, color, orīs, m.
Conceal, cēlo (two acc. : 2).
Concerning, dē (abl.).
Condemn, damnō.1
Confess, fator, fessus.
Confide, fidō (confīdō), fīsus (dat. or abl.).
Conflagration, incendium, ē, N.
Conquer, vicino, vīċi, victum.
Conquering (adj.), victor, ēris, m.; victrix, ēris, f.
Conscious, conscius, a, um; to be —, sibi consciēre.
Consent, consensio, onis, f.; consensus (ad-sensus), ēs, m.
Consider, exīstimo (92).
Conspicuous, to be —, ēmineo, uī. 
Conspiracy, conjūrātio, onīs, f.
Conspirator, conjūrātus, ī, m.
Conspire, conjūro.1
Constant, perpetuus, a, um; as moral quality, constāns, tis.
Consult, consul, ulis, m.
Corinth, Corinthus, ī, f.; adj. -us.
Corn, frumentum, ī, N. (94).
Could, past tenses of possum.
Counsel, consilium, ī, N. (31).
Countenance, vultus, ēs, M.
Country (native), patria, ae, F.; (opposed to city), rūs, rūris, N.; in the —, rūrī; from the —, rūre; to the —, rūs (acc.).
Courage, virtūs, ētis; fortitūdo, inis, F.
Court (pay respect to), colo.3
Cover, tegō, textī, lectum; operio, uī, operītum.
Covered, operūtus.
Covering (means of), tegmentum, ī, N.
Covetous, avārus, a, um (20).
Cow, vacca, ae, F.
Coward, ignātus, a, um (adj.).
Cowardice, ignāvia, ae, F.
Crash, fragor, orīs, m. (97).
Creature, animal, ālis, N. (14).
Crocodile, crocodilus, ī, m.
Crops, frūgēs, um, F. plur. (94).
Cross (v.), trānseo (irreg.).
Cruel, crūdēlis, e; saecus, a, um.
Cure, remedium, i, N. [(93).
Custom, mōs, mōris, M. (70).

D.
Daily, quotidiē; adj. quotidiēnus, a, um.
Danger, periculum, i, N.
Darkness, tenebrae, ärum, F.
Dated, datus, a, um (of a letter; i.e. given to the messenger).
Daughter, filia, ae, F. (p. 4. a).
Day, diēs, ei, M. (§ 73; see p. 18) by day, interdī; in one day, ūnō diē; every day, quotidiē.
Deal (a great), multum, plūrumum.
Dear, cārus, a, um.
Death, mors, is, F.; condemn to —, capitis damnēre.
Deceitful, fallāx, ācis.
Deceive, fallo,3 sefelli, falsum (45).
Decree (v.), dēcerno, crēvī, crētum.
Decree (n.), dēcretum, i, N.
Deed, factum, i, N.; facinus, oris, N.
Deeds, rēs gestae, F.
Defence, praesidium, i, N.; means of —, minūmentum, i, N.
Defend, dēfendo,8 dī, sum; tueor.2
Defender, dēfensor, āris, M.
Delay (v.), moror.1
Delay (n.), mora, ae, F.
Delight (v.), trans. dēlectō1; intr. gaudēo,2 gāvīsus.
Delight (n.), gaudium, i, N.
Dense, densus, a, um.
Deny, nego,1 recūso,1
Depart, dēcēdo,8 cessī, cessum; (set out), proficiscor, sestus (3).
Departure, profectio, ānis, F.
Deprive, privō.1
Desire (v.), cupio,8 āvi, ītum (33).

Desire (n.), cupīdo, ānis, F.
Desist, dēsisto, stītī, stītum.
Destiny, fātum, i, N.
Destroy, dēleō, āvi, ītum; perdo,8 didī, dītum.
Devour, voro,1 dēvorō.1
Dle, morior,3 mortuus.
Differ, disto1 (no perf.), dīfero (irr.) ab; — in opinion, dissentiō,4 si, sum.
Difficult, difficilis, e.
Difficulty, difficūltās, ātis, F.
Dignity, dignitās, ātis, F.
Diligent, dīligēns, īs.
Disaster, clādes, is, F. (24).
Discussion, disputātio, ānis, F.
Disease, morbus, i, M.
Dispute (v.), disputō.1
Dispute (n.), disputātio, ānis, F.
Distance, spatium, intervallum, i, N.; at a —, procūl.
Distrust, diffido,3 fīsus (dat.).
Divine, divīnus, a, um; or expr. by the gen. deōrum.
Do, facio,8 faciō, factum; ago,8 ēgī, actum; as auxiliary, in questions or commands, not translated; to be done, fierī; do not, nōtī, nē.
Doctor, medicus, i, M.
Doe, cerva, ae, F.
Dog, canis, is, c. (gen. plur. um).
Doubt (v.), dubito.1
Doubt (n.), dubitātio, ānis, F.
Doubtful, dubius, a, um.
Doubtless, sānē.
Dove, columba, ae, F.
Dove-cote, columbārium, i, N.
Dread, reformīdo (69).
Dreadful, terribilis, e; formido, lōsus, a, um.
Drive (in defeat), fugo.1
Dropping, gutta, ae, F.
Duck, anas, atis, C.
Duty, officium, i, N. (57).
Each, quisque, quaque, quodque; (of two), uterque, traque, trumque.
Eagle, aquila, ae, F.
Early, priscus, a, um (100).
Earth, terra, ae, F.
Easily, facile, facilium, facillimē.
Either, uter, utra, utrum (gen. īus);
either . . . or, aut ... aut, vel ... vel; not —, nec, neque.
Elder, major nātū.
Elect, creō.1
 Eloquence, eloquentia, ae, F.
 Eloquent, eloquēns, tis (72).
 Empire, imperium, i, N.
 End, finis, is, M. (rarely F.).
 Endure, tolerō.1
 Enemy (public), hostis, is, M.; (personal), inimicūs, ī, M. (54).
 Enjoy, fruor,3 frūctus (abl.).
 Enter, intro.1
 Entirely, omnīnō, plānē.
 Envy (v.), invideo,2 ā, sum (dat.).
 Envy (n.), invidīa, ae, F.
 Equal, par, pārīs; (well-balanced) aequus, a, um (6).
 Escape (v.), effugio,3 fugī, fugi-tum.
 Escape (n.), fugā, ae, F.; effugium, ī, N.
 Even, et, etiam, vel; not —, ne ... quidem.
 Even (adj.), aequus, a, um (6)
 Ever, unquam (umquam).
 Every, omnīs, e; — thing, omnia.
 Evil, mālus, a, um (66); as noun, mālum, ī, N.
 Excel, praesto,1 stiti, stitum; ante-cellō3 (dat.).
 Excellent, excellēns, tis; praestāns, tis.
 Exhort, horrōr.1
 Exile, exsilium, ī, N.
 Extraordinary, singularis, e; ex-imius (egregius), a, um.
 Extreme, summus, a, um.
 Eye, oculus, ī, M.; dim. ocellus.

F.
 Face, vultus, īs, M.
 Fair, serēns, a, um; albus.
 Faith, fidēs, ei, F.
 Faithful, fidus, a, um; fidelis, e.
 Fall, cado,3 ceceūs, cāsum; rūo.3
 Famous, ēgregius, a, um; nōbilis, e.
 Far, longē.
 Farmer, agricola, ae, M.
 Fasting, inēdia, ae, F.
 Father, pater, trīs, M.
 Fatherland, patria, ae, F.
 Fault, viērum, ī, N.; culpā, ae, F.
 Favor (v.), favīo,2 fāvī, fāvūm (dat.).
 Favor (n.), grātia, ae, F.
 Favorable, secundus, a, um.
 Fear (v.), timeo,2 ui, metuo,3 ui; vereor,2 itus (69).
 Fear (n.), timor, ōris, M.
 Fertile, fertilis, e.
 Fever, febris, is (im, ī), F.
 Few, pauci, ae, a.
 Fidelity, fidēlitās, ādis; fidēs, ei, F.
 Field, aēr, agrī, M. (8).
 Fierce, ferōx, ōcis (93).
 Fight, pugno (90), cōnīgō.
 Fill, compleo (implēo),2 ēvi, ētum.
 Finger, digitus, ī, M.
 Fire, ignis, is, M.; set on —, incendo,3 di, sum.
 Fish, piscis, is, M.
 Fit, idōnes, a, um (30).
 Flattery, adsentātio, ōnis, F.
 Flock, pecus, orīs, N. (51).
 Flow, fluo,8 flūxi, flūxum.
 Flower, flōs, flōris, M.; made of flowers, flōreus, a, um.
Vocabulary: English and Latin.

Fly (flee), fugio, fugi, fugitum.
Follow, sequor, secutus (95).
Folly, stultitia, ae, F.
Food, cibus, i, M. (36).
Fool, stultus, i, M. (adj. as noun).
Foolish, stultus, a, um.
Foot, pès, pedis, M.
Footstep, vestigium, i, N.
For (conj.), nam, enim; (prep.), pro (abl.); often expressed by dative.
Forbid, veto, i, itum (acc. and inf.); prohibeo, ui, itum (with nē and subj.)
Force, vis, vim, vi; pl., vīrēs, F. (p. 14).
Forces (troops), cópiæ, ārum, F.
Foreign, externus (aliēnus), a, um.
Foreigner, peregrinus, i, M.
Forest, silva, ae, F. (96).
Forget, obliviscor, oblivitus.
Forgetful, oblivitus, a, um.
Fortify, mūnio.
Fortunate, fēlix, iēs; fortūnātus, a, um (47).
Fortune, fortūna, ae, F.
Fountain, fōns, fontis, M.
Fox, vulpēs, is, F.
Frail, fragilis, e.
Free, liber, era, erum (62).
Frequent, frequēns, tis.
Fresh, recēns, tis.
Friend, amīcus, i, M.
Friendly, amīcus, a, um.
Friendship, amīcitia, ae, F.
Frighten, terreo, ui, itum.
Frightened, territus, a, um.
Frog, rāna, ae, F.
From, away from, ā, ab (abl.); out of, ē, ex; as denoting cause, express by ablative (1).
Fruit, fructus, ās, M.
Full, plēnus, a, um (gen. or abl.).

Furnish, praebeo, ui, itum; ministro.
Future, futūrus, a, um.

G.
Garb, habitus, ās, M.
Garden, hortus, i, M.
Gate, porta, ae, F. (86).
Gathering, conventus, ās, M.
Gaal, the country, Gallia, ae, F.; the people, Gallus, i, M.
General, imperātor, ĕris, M.
Get together, comparo.
Giant, gigās, antis, M.
Gift, dōnum, i; beneficium, i, N.
Give, do, dedi, datum (37).
Glad, laetus, a, um; I am — to hear, libenter audio; to be, gaudeo.
Glady, libenter.
Glorious, clārus (praeclārus), a, um.
Glory, glōria, ae, F. (46).
Go, eo, ire, iī (iī), itum (§ 141); — away, abeo, discedo; — out or forth, exeo, proficiscor, fectus (3).
God, deus, i, M. (p. 5. e).
Goddess, dea, ae, F. (p. 4. a).
Gold, aurum, i, N.
Good, bonus, a, um (p. 6).
Goose, ānser, eris, M.
Grace, grātia, ae, F.
Grasp, prehendo (comprehendo), di, sum; grasp at, adripio.
Great, magnus, mājor, maximus.
Greatness, magnitūdō, inīs, F.
Greece, Graccia, ae, F.
Greedy, avidus, a, um.
Greek (Grecian), Graecus, a, um.
Grief, dolor, ĕris; lūctus, ās, M. (38).
Grieve, doleo, ui; lūgeo, xi, itum.
Guard, custōs, ēdis, C.
Gulf, surges, itis, M.; sinus, ās, M.
H.

Hand, manus, ās, F. (p. 18).
Happily, bētē.
Happy, beātus, a, um (47).
Harbor, portus, ās, M.
Hard, dūrus, a, um.
Hardship, labor, ēris, M. (58).
Hasten, festino,1 (propero).1
Hate (v.), ēdi, ēsus (§ 143. b)
Hate (n.), odium, ī, N. (76).
Have, habeo;2 I —, est mihi.
He, īs, ille; but generally implied
in 3d person (52).
Head, caput, itis, N.
Health, salūs, ātis, F.; state of,
valētūdo, inis, F.
Healthful, salūber, bris, bre.
Heart, cōr, cordis, N.; animus, ī.
Heaven, caelum, ī, N.; plur., caeli.
Hear, audio.4
Heavy, gravis, e.
Height, altitūdō, inis, F.
Helm, gubernāculum, ī, N.
Help (v.), prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui;
subvenio,4 vēnī, ventum (dat.).
Help (n.), auxilium, ī, N.
Hence, hinc.
Her (obj.), eam; (poss.), ejus; her
own (emph.), īpius; (refl.), suus,
a, um.

Herdman, babulcus, ī, M.
Here, hic.
Hidden, occultus, a, um.
Hide, cēlo1 (2 acc.); occulto,3 ī, um.
occupūm.
High, altus, a, um (10).
Highest, summus, a, um.
Himself (emph.), īpse; (refl.), sē.
His, ejus (gen. of īs); his own
(emph.), īpius; (refl.), suus, a, um: omitted when it is implied
from the context.

Hold, teneo (obtineo),2 ī, tentum;
habeo,2 ī, itum; (regard), dūco.3
Holding, power of, cypactus, ātis,F.
Home, domus, ās, F. (p. 18); at —,
domi; towards —, domum; from
—, domō.
Honey, mel, mellis, N.
Honest, probus, a, um (23).
Honesty, probitās, ātis, F.
Honor (v.): do honor to), honōro.1
Honor (n.), honor, ēris, M. (46).
Honorably, honestē.
Hope (v.), spēro1 (acc.).
Hope (n.), spēs, spēi, F.
Horn, cornū, ās, N.; with horns
(horned), cornūtus, a, um.
Horse, equus, ī, M.
Horseman, eques, itis, M.
Hostile, infensus, inimicus, a, um.
Hotly, ācriter.
House, domus, ās, F. (p. 18: 39).
How? quōmodo; however, quam-
vis (=yet, tamen); how great,
quantus, a, um; how many, quot.
Human, hūmānus, a, um.
Humble, dēmissus, a, um.
Hunger, famēs, īs, F.
Hunter, vēnātor, ēris, M.
Hurl, torquō,2 ī, tum; jacio (con-
jicio)3, jēcī, jactum (jectum).

I.

I, ego, mei, mihi, mē.
Ibis, ibis, is (idris), F.
Ice, glacēs, ē, F.
Ides, idūs, uum, F. If, sī (p. 103)
Idle, ignāvus, a, um; iners, tis.
Ignorance, ignōrantia, ae, F.
Ignorant, ignārus, a, um.
Immortal, immortalis, e.
Impatient, impatiēns, tis.
Impiety, impiētās, ātis, F.
Implore, implorō (79).
Impudence, imputation, ae, F.
In, in (abl.) often by abl. alone.
Inconstant, levis, e.
Indulgence, indulgentia, ae, F.
Inferior, inferior, us (with abl.).
Inform, certūrem facere (de).
Innocence, innocencia, ae, F.
Insolence, insolentia, ae, F.
Intending to, express by future participle.
Interest, it is one’s interest (gen.); it is my —, mea interest.
Into, in (acc.).
It, id, illud; it is, est; itself (for itself), sibi.
Italy, Italia, ae, F.

L.
Labor, labor, ēris, m. (58).
Lack, egeo (indigeo), uī (gen. or abl.); carce, uī (abl.: 26).
Ladder, scala, ae, F.
Lake, lacus, ēs, M. [bus
Lame, claudus, a, um; aeger pedi-
Lamentable, fēibilis, e.
Land, terra; native —, patria, ae, F.; by — and sea, terrā marique.
Language, lingua, ae, F.
Large, magnus, a, um (65).
Last, ultimus, a, um; at —, dīmum.
Lasting, diūtūrus, a, um.
Lately, nūper, paulō ante.
Latin, Latinus, a, um.
Laugh (v.), rideo, rīsi, rīsum.
Laugh (n.), rīsus, ēs, M.
Law, lex, légis, F. (57).
Lawful, fās (indecl.), légitimus, a, um.
Lay aside, dēpōno, posui, situm.
Lazy, piger, gra, grum; iners, tis.
Lead, dūco, xī, etum.
Leader, dux, ducis, C.
Leaf, folium, ē, N.
League, foedus, eris, N.
Learn, disco; learned, doctus.
Leave, relinquo, liqui, lictum.
Left hand, sinistra, ae, F.; (adj.), laevus; on the —, ad laevum.
Leg, crūs, crūris, N.
Legion, légio, ēs, F. (61).
Length, longitūdo, inis, F.; at —, tandem.
Less, minor, minus.
Lest, nē (followed by subjunctive).
Letter, epistola, ae, F.; letters (literature), litterae, arum, F.
Liar, mendāx, ēcis.
Liberator, liberātor, ēris, M.
Liberty, libertās, ētis, F.
Lie (speak falsely), *mentior*.
Lieutenant, *legátus*, i, m.
Life, *vita*, ae, f. [inis, n.
Light (n.), *lux*, lúcis, f.; lúmen, Light (adj.), *levi*, e.
Like, *similis*, e (gen. or dat.); very —, *consimilis* (6).
Link, *hamus*, ī, m.
Lion, *leo*, ōnis, m.
Live, *vivō*, 3 vixi, victum; *habito*.1
Log, *tignum* (tigillum), i, n.
Load, onus, oneris, n.
Long, *longus*, a, um; (time), diū; so —, tamdiū.
Longer, diūtius; no —, non jam.
Love (v.), amo.1
Love (n.), *amor*, ĕris, m.

**M.**

Magistrate, *magistrátus*, īs, m.
Maiden, *puella*, ae; virgo, inis, f.
Maintain (keep), *teno*, 2 ut, tenantum; (hold an opinion), disputo.1
Make, *facio*, 3 feci, factum; passive, fio, fieri, factus.
Man, *vir*, virī, m. (53); a person in general, homo, inis; a little —, homunculus, ī, m.; meaning persons of a certain quality or descent, expressed by adjectives.
Manly, *virīis*, e; fortis, e (23).
Many, *multī*, ae, a; very —, plū-
March (of), *Martius*, ā, um.
Master (teacher), *magister*, trī; (of property), dominus, ī, m.
May (it is permitted), *licet*, § 146. d; in purpose clauses, ut with subj.; of wish, pres. subj.
Meadow, *prātum*, ī, n. (8).
Mean, *vīlis*, e; *abjectus*, a, um.
Means: by no —, nullō modō, nē-guāquam.
Measure (v.), *metior*, 4 mēnsus.
Measure (n.), *modus*, ī, m.; a little —, modulūs, ī, m.
Meat, *cāro*, cārnis, F.
Meeting, *conventus*, ēs, m.
Merciful, *clémens*, tis.
Mighty, *magnus*, a, um; ingēns.
Mild: to grow —, *milesco*.3
Mile, *mille passuum.*
Milk, *lāc*, lactis, n.
Mind, *animus*, ī, m. (13).
Mindful, *memor*, oris.
Mingling, *mixtūra*, ae, F.
Misery, *miseria*, ae, F. (38).
Mob, *tūbs*, ae, F.; tumulus, īs, m.
Money, *pecūnia*, ae, F.
Monkey, *sīmia*, ae, F.
Monstrous, *immānis*, e (93).
Monument, *monumentum*, ī, n.
Moon, *lūna*, ae, F.
More, *plūs*, plūris (§ 86. c); adv., magis; also, sign of comparative.
Mortal, *mortālis*, e.
Most (men), *plūrique*; adv., plūri-
Mourn, *lūgeo*, 2 lūxī, lūctum.
Mournful, *tristis*, e.
Mouth, *ōs*, ōris, n.
Move, *movo*, 3 moiov, mōtum; in-
trans., use passive.
Much, *multum*; by —, multō.
Must, generally by part. in dus.
My, *meus*, a, um; voc. m., mī.
Myrtle (of), *myrtēus*, a, um.
N.

Narrow, angustus, a, um.
Name, nomen, inis, N. (74).
Nation, gens, is; natio,onis, f.
Native land, 
Native city, 
Near, prope (acc.); nearly, ferē.
Necessary, opus (§ 243. e); necessaries, res necessariae.
Neck, collum, i, N. [a, um.
Neighbor, proximus, fīnitimus,
Neither (of two), neuter, tra, trum (gen. trius); neither ... nor, nec ... nec.
Never, nunquam.
New, novus, a, um.
News, nuntius, i, M.; fīma, a, ae, f.
Night, nox, noctis, F.; by —, noctū.
Nightly, nocturnus, a, um.
No (adj.), nullus, a, um (gen. ius); no man, no one, nemo, inis, C. (for gen. and abl., nullius, nullō).
Noise, strenitus, ās, M. (97).
Nor, neque, nec (see neither).
North wind, Aquilo, ōnis, M.
Nose, nāsus, i, M.; epitth., nāso.
Not, nōn; interrog. nōnne; not even, nē ... quidem; imperat., nē.
Nothing, nihil, nihilum, i, n.
Notice, animadverto,3 ī, ē, sum.
Now, nunc; = already, jam.
Number, numerus, ī, M.
Nymph, nymphe, ae, f.

O.

Offence, injūria, ae, f.
Often, saepe; very —, saepissimē.
Old, vētus, eris, (100); — man, senex, is, M.; — age, senectūs, ūtis, F.; older, major natū.
Older, senior.
Omen, ōmen, inis, N.
On, in (abl.); of time or instrument, expressed by ablative.
Once, semel; (formerly), quondam.
One, unus, a, um (gen. ius); any one, quis, aliquis; one ... another, alius ... alius; one ... the other, alter ... alter; no one, nemo.
Open (v.), aperio,4 uī, apertum.
Open (adj.), apertus; be —, patēo.2
Opinion, sententia, ae, F. (31).
Opportunity, occasio, ōnis, f.
Or, aut, vel; either ... or, aut (vel) ... aut (vel); whether ... or, utrum ... an.
Oration, oratio, ōnis, F.
Orator, orātor, ēris, M.
Order, jubeo,2 jussi, jussum.
Other, alius, a, ud; — of two, alter; of others, aliēnus, a, um.
Ought, dēbeo,2 uī, itum.
Our, nōster, tra, trum.
Ourselves (emph.), ipsis (with verb in 1st pers. plur.); refl., nōs.
Owe, dēbeo,2 uī, itum.
Own, proprius, a, um; suus or gen. of ipse (89).
Ox, bōs, bovis (d. plur. bōbus).

P.

Pain, dolor, ēris, M. (38).
Pardon, ignosco,3 nōvi, nōtum (dat.).
Parent, parēns, tis, M. or F.
Partner, socius, i, m. (29).
Patience, patientia, ae, f.
Pattern, forma, ae, f.; a little —, formula, ae, f.
Peace, pax, pācis, F.

People, populus, i, M.; common — plebs, plēbis, F. (85).

Perform, fungor, functus (abl.).

Peril, pericum, i, N.

Perish, pereo, ire, ita (i), itum.

Persuade, persuādeo, si, sum (dat. and ut with subj.).

Pestilence, pestis, is, F.

Phalanx, phalanx, angis, F. (61).

Philosopher, philosophus, i, M.

Philosophy, philosophia, ae, F.

Physician, medicus, i, M.

Pity, misericor, misertus (gen.).

Place, locus, i, M.; pl., loca, N.

Plain (n.), campus, i, M. (3). Plain (adj.), placus, aequus, a, um.

Plan, cōnsilium, i, N. (31).

Plaything, lūdīrium, i, N.

Please, placere, ui, itum (dat.).

Pleasing, grātus, a, um.

Plough, arō.

Point (spot, place), locus, i, M.

Politics, rēs publica.

Pompey, Pompēius, i, M.

Poor, pauper, eris.

Possession, take — of, occupo.

Poverty, paupertās, ēdis, F.

Power, potestās, ēdis, F.; potentia, ae, F. (88).

Powerful, potēns, tis.

Powers, virēs, virium, F.

Praise (v.), laudō.

Praise (n.), laus, laudis, F. (46).

Prayer, precis, em, e (no nom.), F.

Precept, praecptum, i, M.

Prepare, parō.

Prepared, parātus, a, um.

Presently, max.

Prevent, impedo (with quōminus or quīnum).

Priam, son of, Priamidēs, ae.

Priest, sacerdōs, ēdis, C.

Prisoner, captivus, i, M.

Proconsul, prōcōnsul, is, M.

Promise, prōmitto, mēsī, missum; pollicor, citus (84).

Protection, præsidium, i, N.; fidēs.

Proud, superstus, a, um.

Prove, probō.

Province, prōvincia, ae, F.

Providence, prōvidentia, ae, F.

Punish, pūnio, castigo; supplicium sumere (abl.).

Puppy, catulus; dim., catellus, i, M.

Put on, induo, ui, itum (on one’s self, pass. with abl.); — to flight, fugo.

Q.

Quarrel, rixa, ae, F.

Queen, rēgina, ae, F.

Quite, prorsus, omnino.

R.

Race, gēns, gentis, F. (50).

Rampart, vallum, i, N.

Rarely, rārō.

Ravage, vasto.

Reach, pervenio, vēni, ventum (ad).

Read, lego, legi, lectum.

Ready, parātus, a, um.

Recall, revoco.

Receive, accipio, cepī,ceptum (25).

Reckon, putō, existimo (92).

Reckoning, ratio, ēnis, F.

Refuse, recūso, negō.

Regard, existimo, dūco (92).

Region, locus, i, M.; pl., loca, N.

Reign, regno.

Remain, maneō, mānsī, mānsum.

Remarkable, insignis, e; eximius.

Remedy, remedium, i, N.

Remember, memini (§ 38, 1); imperat., memento.

Remote, remotus, longinquus, a, um.
Vocabulary: English and Latin. 181

Remove, migro; discèdo, cessi, cessum; aeo (irr.).
Reply, respondeo, di, sum.
Report, renuntio.
Republic, rēs publica.
Restrain, cohīdeo, si, itum.
Return, revertor, sus.
Reverence, reverentia, ae, f.
Reward, praemium, i, n. (40).
Rhine, Rhēnus, i, m.
Rhodes, Rhodus, i, f.
Rhone, Rhodanus, i, m.
Rich, dīves, dīvitis (p. 16); superl. more commonly dīttissimus.
Riches, dīvitiae, ārum, f. (78).
Right, jūs, jūris, n. (57); — hand, dextra (tera), ae, f.
Ripe, mātūrus, a, um.
River, flūmen, inis, n. (49).
Road, via, ae, f. (56).
Robber, latro, ōnis, m.
Robe, vestis, is, f. (99).
Royal, rēgūs, a, um.
Rumor, fāma, ae, f. (46).
Run, curro, cucurri, cursum.

S.
Sacred, sacer, cra, crum.
Sad, tristis, e.
Safe, tōtus, a, um.
Safety, salūs, ātis, f.
Sagacious, sagāx, ācis.
Sage, sapiēns, tis.
Sail (v.), nāvigo.
Sake (for the sake of), causād.
Salute, salūto.
Same, idem, eadem, idem.
Samnite, Samnis, ēris.
Sapling, surculus, i, m.
Save, servo.
Say, dico, dio, inquam (64).
Scarcely, vix.
Scream, clamō.
Since, *cum* (with subj.); *quoniam*.

Sine, *nervus*, i, m.

Sine, *servus*, a, um.

Sine, *nervösus*, a, um.

Sing, *canó, cecíni, cantum*.

Sister, *soror*, öris, f.

Sit, *sedó, súdá, sessum*.

Size, *magnitúdo, inís, F*.

Skillfully, *scienter, prudénter*.

Skin, *pellis, is, F* (34).

Sky, *caelum, i, N*.

Slaughter, *clusés, is, F*.

Slave, *servus, i, M*.

Slay, *interfício, f équi, fectum*.

Sleep, *somnus, i, M*.

Slender, *teneris, e*.

Sluggard, *ignávus, i, M* (adj.).

Small, *parsus, a, um* (minor, mini).

Snow, *nix, nivís, F* [mus].

Snowy, *nivósus, a, um*.

So, *ita, sic*; so great, *tántus*; so many, *tot*; so . . . as, *tam . . . quam*; so long, *tandíli*.

Society, *sociétas, étis, F*.

Soft, *mollis, e*.

Softness, *mollitía, ae, F*.

Soldier, *miles, itis, M*.; belonging to —, *militaris, e*.

Soldiership, *réis militáris*.

Some time, *aliquando*; (duration), *aliquamdiú*

Son, *filíus, i, M*.; *voc., fílii*.

Song, *cántus, ús, M*.; (the words), *carmen, inís, N* (27).

Soon, *mox*; as — *as*, *simul atque*.

Sorrow, *dolor, óris*; *lúctus, ús, M*.

Sorrowing, *maestus, a, um* [(38).

Sorry: to be —, *doleó, úi*; I am —, *me paenitet*; *ae gré fero* (with *quod* or acc. and infin.).


Sour, *acerbus, a, um*.

South-east wind, *Eurus, i, M*.

Spain, *Hispanía, ae, F* [(81).

Spare, *parco, pepérci, parcitum*.

Speak, *loquor, locútus (ad or cum)*.

Spear, *hasta, ae, F* (16).

Speech, *contio (ôrátio), ónis, F*.; *sermo, ónis, M*.

Speed, *celerítas, étis, F*.

Spirit, *fortis, e*.

Spoil, *praeda, ae, F*.

Spring (v.), *salío, úi, saltum*.

Spring (n.), *vér, vérís, N*.

Sprung, *ortus (part. of horír)*.

Spur, *calcar, áris, N*.

Stag, *cervus, i, M*.

Stand, *stó, stéfi, statum*.

Standard, *signum, i, N*.

Star, *stella, ae, F*.

State, *civítas, étis, F*.

Stature, *státuera, ae, F*.

Stir up, *cieo, cíví, citum*.

Stock, *stírps, stírpis, F*.

Stone, *lapis, idís, M* (59).

Storm, *hiems, is, F*.; *tempestas, étis*.

Stout (thick-set), *crassus, a, um*.

Stream, *flúmen, inís, N* (49).

Strength, *virés, ium, F*, plur.

Strive (to do a thing), *nítor* (enítor), *nísus*; (contend), *certo*; *contendo*; *di, tum*.

Strong, *validus, a, um*.

Sudden, *subitus, a, um*.

Suffer, *patior, passus*.

Sullen, *mörósus, a, um*.

Summer, *aestás, étis, F*.; adj., *aestivus, a, um*.

Sun, *sól, sólis, M*.

Sunset, *solís occasus, ús*.

Superior, *praestántior, us* [um].

Superstitious, *superstitiosus, a*.

Support (means), *colúmen, inís, N*.

Suppose, *puto* (or subj., p. 100).

Sure, *certus, a, um*.

Surname, *cognómén, inís, N* (74).
Sustain, sustineo,\(^2\) ui, tentum.
Swan, cygnus, i, m.
Sweet, dulcis, suavis, e (41).
Sweetness, suavitatis, atis, f.
Swift, velox, ocis; celer, eris, ere.
Swine, sus, suis, c. (p. 18).
Sword, gladius, i, m.

\[\text{T.}\]

Take, capio,\(^3\) cepi, captum (25).
Talent, talentum, i, n.
Tall, prœerus, a, um.
Task, opus, eris, n. (58).
Teach, doceo,\(^2\) ui, doctum.
Teaching, means of, documentum.
Tell, numito,\(^1\) dico,\(^3\) xi, ctum; — a lie, mentior.\(^4\)
Temper, animus, i, m. (13).
Tempest, tempestas, atis, f.
Temple, templum, i, n.
Tend, curio,\(^1\)
Terrify, terrae,\(^2\) ui, itum.
Territory, fines, ium, m. (plur.).
Terror, terror, oris; metus, us, m.; be in —, trepidor;\(^1\) there is —, trepidatur.
Than, quam (or abl. after comp.).
That, ille, illa, illud; conj., quod; purpose, ut (subj.); — not, quin.
Themselves, see Self.
Then (at that time), tum; (thereupon), deinde. \([\text{estne?}]\)
There, ibi; there is, est; is there?
Therefore, itaque, igitur.
Thin, tenuis, e; gracilis, e (44).
Thing, res, rei, f.; good things, bona, n.
Think, puto;\(^1\) (reflect), cogito,\(^1\)
Thinness, tenuitas, atis, f.
This, hic, haec, hoc (p. 19: 52).
Those, illi, ae, a.
Threatening, minax, acis.
Thrice, ter.

Through, per (acc.); abl. (cause).
Throughout, express by totus.
Thunderbolt, fulmen, inis, n. (75).
Thus, ita, sic.
Time, tempus, oris, n.; for some —, aliquandum; times, see p. 22.
Timorous, pavidus, a, um.
To, of motion, ad (acc.); of relation, dat.; before a verb, infin.
To-day, hodié; adj., hodiernus.
Tomb, sepulcrum, i, n.
To-morrow, cras; adj., crastinus, a, um.
Tongue, lingua, ae, f.
Too much, nimis, nimitum.
Tooth, dens, dentis, m.
Town, oppidum, i, n. (98).
Tray, ferculum, i, n.
Treat, curio,\(^1\)
Tree, arbor, oris, f. (15).
Tribune, tribunus, i, m.
Trophy, tropaeum, i, n.
Troy, Trōja, ae, f.
True, verus, a, um.
Truly, recte.
Truth, veritas, atis, f. •
Try, experior,\(^4\) expertus.
Trying, means of, experimentum.
Tusk, dens, dentis, m.

\[\text{U.}\]

Ulysses, Ulizës, is or i.
Under, sub (acc. or abl.).
Uncertain, incertus, a, um. \([(25)]\)
Undertake, suscipio,\(^3\) cepi, ceptum
Uneasy, sollicitus, a, um. \([\text{crum}].\)
Unhappy, infelix, icis; miser, era,
Unless, nisi.
Untimely, immatürus, a, um.
Unworthy, indignus, a, um (abl.).
Upon, in (acc. or abl.).
Use (v.), ilor,\(^3\) usus.
Use (n.), utilitas, atis, f.
V.

Vain: in —, frustra.
Valiant, strenuus; fortis, e.
Valor, virtus, útilis, F.
Vast, ingens, tis (65).
Very, expr. by superl. or per-
Vespassian, Vespastiánus, i, M.
Vice, vitium, i, N.
Victor, victorious, victor, tríx.
Victory, victória, ae, F.
Vine, vitis, is, F.
Violent, violens, ingens, entis.
Virtue, virtus, útilis, F.
Voice, vox, vocis, F.

W.

Wake, vigito.1
Walk, ambulo.1
Wall, mūrus, i, M.
Wanton: to be —, lūdo,8 lascívio.4
War, bellum, i, N. (22).
Warlike, bellicósus, a, um.
Warn, moneo (admoneo),2 ut, itum
Watching, vigilāns, tis.
Water, aqua, ae, F.
Way, via, ae, F. (56).
We, nōs (expr. only for emphasis).
Wealth, divitiae, ārum, F. (78).
Weary, fessus, a, um.
Weep, fleo,2 flevi, fletum.
What, quod, id quod; interr. quid?
Whatever, quicquid (quidquid).
When, ubi, cum (see p. 106).
Where, ubi.

Whether, an; — . . or, utrum .
Which? quis? — of two, uter?
While, cum; dum (pres. indic.).
Whirl, torque,2 torquis, tortum.
Who, which, qui, quae, quod.
Who? what? quis, quae, quid?
Wholly, omnino.
Why, cōr, quanobrem.
Wicked, improbus, a, um (66).

Wild, ferus, a, um; agrestis, e.
Will (v.), volo, velle, volui (or fut.).
Will (n.), voluntās, ātis, F.
Wind, ventus, i, M. (19).
Winter, hiems (hiemps), is, F.; adj.,
hibernus, a, um; — quarters, hī-
berna, ārum, N. pl.
Wing, ala, ae, F.; of army, cornū, N.
Wisdom, sapientia, ae, F.
Wise, sapience, tis.
Wish, volo, velle, volui; cupidus (33).
With (accompaniment), cum; in-
strument., express by abl.
Within, intrá (acc.); abl. of time.
Without, sine (abl.).
Wolf, lupus, i, M.; lupā, ae, F.
Woman, mulier, eris, F.
Wonder, mūṛor.1
Wood (forest), silva, ae, F. (96).
Word, verbum, i, N.
Work, opus, eris, N. (58).
Worse, pējor, us.
Worship, adoro; colo,3 ui, cultum.
Wound (v.), vulnero.1
Wound (n.), vulneris, eris, N.
Wounded, vulnerātus, a, um.
Wreath, corōna, ae, F.; sertum, i, N.
Wrath, ira, ae; ìrcundia, ae, F.
Wretched, miser, era, erum.
Write, scribo,8 psí, ptum.
Wrong: to do —, pecco;1 — is
done, peccātur (impers.).
Wrong (n.), injuria, ae, F.; to do
a —, injuriam inferre.

Y.

Year, annus, i, M.
Yesterday, heri; adj., hesternus.
Yet, tamen; not —, nondum.
You, tū, vōs; Your, tuus, vester.
Young man (youth), juvenis, is;
adolescēns, tis, M.
Youth, juvenilis, tūtis, F.
VOCABULARY.

No. II. — LATIN AND ENGLISH.

The figures in parenthesis refer to the List of Synonymes.

ä, ab (abl.), from, away from, by; in compos., away, off (1).
abdo, ere, didi, ditum, to put, hide (2).
abeo, ire, ii, itum, go away (3).
abfero (aufero), ferre, abstuli, altum, bear away.
aborro, e, ui, shrink away, hold aloof.
abias, etis, F., fir-tree.
abjicio (abicio), ere, jecici, jectum, throw away, cast down.
Aboriginals, um, plur. m., the early inhabitants of Italy.
abripio [rapio], ere, ripui, repitum, snatch or drag away.
.ascendo, ere, cessi, cessum, move off, withdraw.
absens, tis (part. of absum), absent.
absentia, ae, F., absence.
absolve, ere, solvi, solutum, acquit, relieve of an obligation or burden, pay off, complete.
absinens, tis, absent, temperate; part. of abstineo.
absum, esse, fui, to be absent; non multum abest quin, it is not far [from being the case] that.
abundo, äre, avi, atum, to over-flow, abound (unda).
abutor, ei, usus, to abuse, take advantage of.
ac (atque), and, as.
accendo, 3 ere, di, sum, kindle, inflame.
accido, [cado], ere, cidi, befall, happen (4).
accingo, ere, nxii, nctum, girid, brace up.
accipio, [capio], ere, cepi, cepitum, receive, accept (25).
accurre, ere, curri, or cucurri, cursum, to run up to.
accusator, oris, M., accuser, public prosecutor.
accuso [ad, causa], äre, avii, atum, to accuse.
acier, acris, acre, sharp, eager.
acibus, a, um, sharp, sour.
acidus, a, um, rather sour.
acidus, a, um, sour.
aciis, eii, F., edge, eyesight; the battle-array of an army (5).
acriter (acrius, acerrimé), sharply, eagerly; acrior, too eagerly.
acus, us, F., needle.
acutus, a, um, sharp, keen.
ad (acc.), to, at, towards, about (to the number of); for, near; in comp., in, upon, to, with.
adclamo, äre, avi, atum, to cry out at.
adcumbo, ere, cubui, cubitum, recline or sit near (at table).
addo, ere, didi, ditum, add.
adduco, ere, xi, ctum, bring, draw to (a thing), induce.
adeo, so (to that degree).
adeo, ire, ii, itum, go to, approach.
adeptus, a, um, gained, or having gained (part. of ad piscor).
adfero, ferre, tuli, látum, bear to, bring.
adficio, ere, fécī, factum, affect with; — supplicio, to punish; — honoribus, to reward with honors.
adficto, āre, āvī, ātum, dash about violently, afflict.
adfigo, ere, fīxi, fictum, dash against.
adhibeo, ēre, uī, itum, apply, furnish, employ.
adhic, hitherto, till now.
adimo, ēre, ēmi, emptum, take away.
adipiscor, cī, adeptus, reach, attain.
aditus, ēs, m., access, approach, entrance.
adjumentum, ī, n., aid, help.
adjunco, ēre, nxi, nctum, to join, annex.
adūtus, see adfero.
adloquor, īquī, locūtus, speak to, address.
administro, āre, āvī, ātum, serve, supply, perform, direct.
admiratio, ōnis, F., admiration.
admīrōr, āri, ātus, to admire.
admōdum, to a degree, quite.
admoneo, ēre, uī, itum, admonish.
admoveo, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move towards.
adulescēns, adolescentia, see adulescens, &c.
adorior, ēri, adortus, attack, accost.
adpeto, ēre, īvī, ītum, aim at, attack, seek, long for, approach.
adrepo, ēre, psi, ptum, creep towards.
adrideo, ēre, risi, rīsum, smile at (in token of good humor).
adscendo, ēre, dī, sum, mount, ascend.
adscēnsus, ūs, m., ascent.
adserior, īri, sēnsus, agree with, assent to.
adessequor, qui, secūtus, follow close, come up with, reach.
aestimo, are, avi, atum, value, esteem, reckon.
aestivus, a, um, summer (adj.), of summer.
aestuo, are, avi, atum, to boil up, seethe, surge, suffer heat.
aestus, us, m., surge, tide, heat.
aetatis, atis, f., age, period of life (7).
aeternitas, atis, f., eternity, immortality.
Aetna, ae, f., Mount Etna.
aevum, i, n., age, period, lapse of time (7).
afficio [ad facio], see adficio.
affirmo, are, avi, atum, confirm, strengthen.
affligo, see adfligo.
Afric anus, i, m., a title of P. Scipio, as conqueror of Carthage, and of his grandson by adoption as its destroyer.
Agamemnon, onis (acc. ona), Agamemnon, king of the Greeks at Troy.
ager, agri, m., field, territory (8).
Ageı̇ssilauı̇s, i, m., a king of Sparta.
agredior, di, gressus, approach, attack, undertake.
agito, are, avi, atum, drive, move, stir, agitate, pass, hunt.
agmen, inis, n., band, troop (5).
agnum, ae, F., ewe-lamb.
agnosco [ad, GNO], noscere, növi, nitem, to recognize.
agnus, i, m.; agna, ae, f., lamb.
ago, agere, ēgi, actum, to lead, do, drive; agere gratias, thank.
agrestis, e, wild, rustic, rude.
agricola, ae, m., farmer.
agricultura, ae, F., agriculture.
abheneus, a, um, brazen, of brass.
ānīn, for aīsne, do you say so?
āio (defect.); say, say yes (64).
Ajax, ācis, m., Ajax, a Grecian hero.
alā, ae, F., wing (61).
alacrītās, ātis, F., activity, eagerness, alacrity.
Albānus, a, um, of Alba, a town near Rome.
alīeo, ēre, to be white.
albus, a, um, white (9).
ālea, ae, F., die (of a pair of dice), hazard.
āles, ītis, c., winged creature, bird (21).
Alexander, dīri, m., Alexander, king of Macedonia, conqueror of Asia.
algeo, ēre, alsi, to be or endure cold.
algor, ĕris, m., cold (the feeling).
aliās, otherwise, elsewhere, at any other time.
aliēnus, a, um, belonging to another, foreign, others.
āliger, gera, gerum, winged.
alimentum, i, n., food; pl. kinds of food.
aliquamdiū, for some time.
aliquando, at some time, sometimes, at length.
aliquis, qua, quod, or quid (p. 21), some, some one.
aliquo, to some place.
aliquot, some, several, a number of.
alter, otherwise.
alius, a, ud (p. 7), other, another; al.. al., one.. another.
albus, a, um, cherishing, benignant.
alō, alere, alui, alitum, feed, keep (of animals).
Alpēs, ium, F., the Alps.
altāria, ium, n., plur., altars.
alter, tera, terum (p. 7), other (of two), second, the other; alter.. alter, the one, the other.
altecor, āri, ātus, quarrel, dispute.
alternus, a, um, alternate.
altitūdo, dinis, F., height, depth.
albus, a, um, high, deep (10).
alumnus, i, m., foster-child.
alveus, i, m., river-channel.
amābilis, e, lovely.
amāns, tis, loving, fond (amo).
amārus, a, um, bitter.
ambāgēs, um, F. plur., obscurity (dark hints); also in abl. sing.
ambitus, ūs, m., circuit, going around.
ambo, ae, o (p. 7), both.
ambulātiō, ōnis, F., a walk.
ambulo, āre, āvī, ātum, to walk.
āmēns, tis, distracted, insane.
amicitia, ae, F., friendship.
amicus, a, um, friendly, fond.
amicus, ī, m., a friend.
āmitto, āre, misī, missum, to lose (83).
amo, āre, āvī, ātum, to love (11).
amoenus, a, um, pleasant, charming (to the eye: 41).
amōr, ōris, m., love.
amplitudō, inis, F., fulness, grandeur.
amplius, more.
amplus, a, um, full, abundant, grand, large (65).
amputo, āre, āvī, ātum, prune away, cut off.
Amīlius, ī, m., Amulpus, king of Alba.
an, whether, or (sign of interr.).
Anacharsis, īs, m., a philosophical Scythian.
anas, anatis, c., duck.
Anchisēs, ae, m., Anchises, father of Æneas.
aucilla; ae, F., handmaid (fem. of servus, slave).
aucora, ae, F., anchor.
ango, āre, nxī, nctum, to choke, distress.
anguis, is, c., snake, serpent (12).
angulus, i, m., corner.
angustus, a, um, narrow.
anima, ae, F., breath, life (13).
animadvertō [animum adverto], ere, tī, sum, to perceive.
animal, ālis, N., animal (14).
animus, ī, m., mind, soul, courage (13); animum adverto (acc.), perceive.
aniversārius, a, um, yearly.
anōna, ae, F., the grain-crop (year’s growth), grain (in market), price of grain (94).
annus, i, m., year.
annuus, a, um, yearly.
ante (acc.), before (prep. and adv.); ante . . . quam, before (rel. adv.); non ante . . . quam, not . . . until; ante duas horas, two hours ago.
antecapio, ēre, cēpi, captum, anticipate.
antecoedo, ēre, cēssi, cēsum, precede, walk in front, excel.
antepōno, ēre, posui, positum, set before, prefer.
Antiochia, ae, F., Antioch, a city of Syria.
antiquitās, ātis, F., antiquity.
antiquus, a, um, ancient (100).
Antōnius, ī, m., Antony, a Roman family name.
antrum, ī, N., cave, grotto.
ānulus, ī, m., ring, bracelet.
apage (def.), away! be gone!
aper, aperī, M., bear.
aperio, ēre, ui, apertura, open, uncover, disclose (80); aperi caput, take off your hat.
apertus, a, um (part. of preceding), open, open.
aplārium, ī, N., bee-house, apiary.
apis, is, F., bee.
Apollo, inis, m., Apollo, god of music and art.
appareo, ēre, ui, itum, appear.
apparo, āre, āvī, ātum, to make ready.
apello, āre, āvī, ātum, call.
appeto, āre, āvī, ātum, call.
apptus, a, um, fitted, fit.
apud (acc.), at, near, among, with, in (of authors).
aqua, ae, F., water, spring.
aquamēns, tis, distracted, insane.
aquaticus, a, um, of the water; M. or F. plur., water-fowl.
aquatio, ōnis, F., watering-place.
aquila, ae, F., eagle (the Roman standard).
Aquilo, ōnis, m., Aquilo (the North wind), the North.
Arabs, Arabis, Arabian.
Arar, aris, m., a river in Gaul (the Saône).
arätor, oris, m., ploughman.
arätrum, i, n., plough.
Arätus, Arätus, a Greek poet.
arbitror, āri, ātus, judge, think, suppose (92).
arbor (ös), oris, F., tree (15).
arbstum, i, n., orchard (15).
Arcadius, i, a man's name.
arceo, ĕre, arcui, to shut off, restrain.
Archeläus, i, m., a man's name.
Archias, ae, Archias, m., a poet.
arcus, üs, m., a bow.
arđēna, tis (participle of ardeo), blasing.
ardeo, ĕre, arsi, arsum, blaze, burn.
ardor, oris, m., heat, warmth.
arduus, a, um, sleep, difficult.
ārea, ae, F., open space, area, courtyard.
argentārius, a, um, pertaining to silver or money; argentarius, a money lender; argentaria, (sc. res), banking business.
argentum, i, n., silver.
argumentum, i, n., argument.
arquo, ĕre, üi, üum, to assert, declare, accuse.
arista, ae, F., wheat-ear, harvest.
Aristotelēs, is, M., Aristotle, a Greek philosopher.
arma, ōrum, N., arms, weapons; ad arma, to war; in armis, under arms (16).
armātus, a, um, armed; pl., armed men.
aro, ēre, āvi, ātum, plough.
aris, artis, F., art, skill (17).
artē (tius, tissimē), closely.
articulātim (tē), articulately.
avtīfex, fīcis, m., artist, artisan, workman.
avtus, üs, m., joint, limb (dat. pl. ubus).
arundo, inis, F., reed, stick.
avrum, i, N. [aro], a field for tillage (8).
arx, arcis, F., tower, citadel.
Ascanius, i, m., son of Æneas.
ascēnsus, üs, M. (see ad-scensus).
asinus, i, m., ass, donkey.
aspectus, üs, M., sight, view, aspect.
asper, era, erum, rough, harsh, sharp.
aspernō, āri, ātus, spurn, scorn.
aspis, idis, F., asp (a poisonous serpent).
asporto [abs, porto], āre, āvi, ātum, carry off.
astrologia, ae, F., astrology (knowledge of the stars).
astrum, i, N., star, heavenly body.
asylum, i, N., asylum, refuge.
at, but, but yet, still.
āter, ātra, ātrum, black (9).
Athēnae, ārum, Athens, the most famous city of Greece.
Atlās, antis, M., Atlas, a Titan, changed to a mountain.
atque (ac), and, as, and even.
Atreus, eos or ī (p. 5), M., Atreus, father of Agamemnon.
Atrīdēs, ae, M., son of Atreus.
attrōx, ōcis, fierce, cruel (93).
attendō, ĕre, di, tum, stretch towards, attend, listen.
attentus, a, um, attentive.
attingo [tango], tingere, tigī, tactum, touch on, touch, reach.
attonitus, a, um, thunderstruck.
auctōritās, ātis, F., authority.
auctumnus, ī, m., autumn (from augeo, the increase of harvest).
āuďōcia, ae, F., boldness (usually in a bad sense).
āuďōx, ācis, bold, daring.
audeo [audēre, ausus sum, dare, venture (18)].
audio, Ėre, īvi, ītum, hear.
āudītio, ōnis, F., hearsay.
aufero [ab, fero], auferre, abs-stuli, ablātum, bear away, remove.
augeo, āugēre, auxī, auctum, to increase, enlarge.
augur, uris, m., augur (interpreter of omens).

auguror, ari, atus, to interpret omens, interpret, predict.

aula, ae, F., hall, palace.

aura, ae, F., breeze, air (19).

aureus, a, um, golden, of gold.

auriga, ae, c., driver, charioteer.

auris, is, F., ear.

auritus, a, um, having ears.

aurum, i, N., gold.

auster, tri, m., the south wind.

ausus, a, um, part. of audeo.2

aut, or; aut... aut, either... or.

autem, but, however, moreover.

auxilium, i, N., aid, help.

avareitia, ae, F., avarice, greed.

avarius, a, um, greedy, avaricious (20).

averto, ere, ti, sum, to turn away, avert.

avis, is, F., bird (21).

avoco,1 are, avi, atum, to call away.

avo1 are, avi, atum, to fly away.

avus, i, m., grandfather.

axis, is, m., axile, axis (of the earth).

B.

balneum, i, N., bath; plural, ae, arum, F.

ba1 are, avi, atum, to beat.

barba, ae, F., beard.

barbarus, a, um, barbarian (93).

beatus, a, um, blessed, happy, wealthy (47).

Belga, ae, m., a Belgian.

Bellerophön, ontis, m., a hero of Greek fable, slayer of the Chimera.

bellicósus, a, um, warlike.

bellicus, a, um, warlike.

bellum, i, N., war (22).

bellus, a, um, pretty, fine (91).

bêlua, ae, F., beast, monster, strange animal (14).

bene, well.

benefacio,2 facere, feci, factum; pass., beneficio, do good, benefit.

beneficium, i, N., a kindness, benefit; favor, gift (40).

benevolentia, ae, F., good will, kindness.

bestia, ae, F., animal, beast, brute (14).

Bîas, antis, m., a Greek philosopher.

bibo,8 ere, bibi, itum, to drink.

biennium, i, N., a period of two years.

bis, twice.

blandimentum, i, N., flattery.

bonus, a, um, good, kind (23).

Boreás, ae, m., the North wind, north.

bôs, bovis (p. 14), C., ox, cow; plur. cattle.

brachium (braccium), i, N., arm (properly the fore-arm; compare lacertus).

brevis, e, short; brevi, in a short time.

Britannia, ae, F., Britain.

Britannus, a, um, British, a Briton.

Brundisium, i, N., a seaport in the S. E. of Italy.

bubulous, i, m., a ploughman, herdsman.

C.

C, initial for Gâius (Cains) The spelling Gaius is the correct one, but is not usually preserved in English.

CAD, fall (cado, accido).

cado,3 cadere, ceccid, cäsüm, fall.

caeco,1 are, avi, atum, to make blind.

caecus, a, um, blind.

caedès, is, F., destruction, mutilation, slaughter (24).

caedo,2 caedere, ceccid, caesium, fell, cut down, kill, beat.

caelum, i, N.; pl. caeli, orum, M., sky, heaven, climate.
Caepio, ōnis, m., a man’s name.
Caesar, aris, m., Cæsar.
caesariēs, ē, f., head of hair, locks.
calamitās, ātis, -F., a calamity (originally a hailstorm, which beats down stalks of grain).
calamus, ī, m., stalk, reed, pen.
calco,1 āre, āvi, ātum, to trample, tread, travel.
caleo,2 ēre, ui, be hot or warm.
calēsco,3 ēre, grow hot or warm.
calidus, ā, um, hot.
calīx, icis, m., cup.
callidus, ā, um, cunning.
cālo, ōnis, m., camp-servant.
campus, ī, m., field, plain (8).
can, sing (cano)3.
candēns (part. of candeo), ēs, glowing, hot.
candidus, ā, um, white, bright (9).
canis, is, c.; gen. pl., um, dog.
canus, ī, m. a proper name.
Cannae, ārum, F., Canne, a town in S. E. Italy, where the Romans were defeated by Hannibal, B.C. 216.
cano,3 ēre, ceccī, cantum, sing, crow, sound, play (on an instrument).
canōrus, ā, um, clear-voiced, melodious.
cantillo,1 āre, sing feebly, chirp.
canto,1 āre, āvi, ātum, sing.
cantus, ĕs, m., song, chant (27).
cānus, ā, um, white, hoary (9); pl., cānī, gray hair.
cap, take (capio, accipio).
capāx, ācis, capacious, roomy.
caper, caprī, m., goat.
capessō,3 ēre, īvi, ītum, take hold of, seize, grasp.
capillus, ī, m., hair.
capio,8 ēre, cēpi, captum, take, catch (25); captus oculis, blind.
Capitōlium, ī, N., the Capitol, a hill in Rome.
capra (more commonly capella), ac, F., she-goat.
capto,1 āre, āvi, ātum, to catch at, seize, reach eagerly for.
Capua, ae, F., a town of South Italy, near Naples.
caput, capitīs, N., head, chief (town, dish, &c.).
carcer, eris, m., prison, dungeon.
careo,2 ēre, ui, ītum, to be free, be relieved (of annoyance), do without, be destitute (26).
cāritās, ātis, F., dearness, both as affection and as high price.
carmen, inis, N., song (27).
caro, carnīs, F., flesh, meat.
Carolus, ī, m., Charles.
Carthāgo, inis, F., Carthage, a city of N. Africa.
Carthāgīnēsis, e, Carthaginensis, casa, ae, F., cottage.
caseus, ī, m., cheese.
Cassandra, ae, F., Cassandra.
cassēs, ium, m., hunting-net.
Cassius, ī, m., one of the conspirators against Cæsar.
castanea, ae, F., chestnut.
castellum, i, N., fort.
castra, orum, N. pl., camp.
castrēnisis, e, of the camp.
cāsus, ĕs, m., downfall, chance, accident (cado).
cattellus, ī, M., little puppy.
catēna, ae, F., chain.
Catilīna, ae, M., Catiline.
Cato, ōnis, M., a Roman name.
catulus, ī, m., whelp, puppy.
caula, ae, F., a sheep-fold, stall.
causa, ae, F., cause, motive; causā, for the sake of.
caveō,2 ēre, cāvi, cautum, to beware; to be on one’s guard; cave, with pres. subj. (used in prohibitions), don’t.
cecidi, see cado.
cecidi, see caedo.
cecīni, see cano.
cēdo,3 ēre, cēsi, cēsum, move, move away, yield, retire, resign, be inferior.
celeber, bris, bre, thronged, celebrated, numerous.
celebro,1 āre, āvi, ātum, to throng, celebrate.
celer, eris, ere, swift.
celerītās, ātis, F., swiftness.
celerīter, swiftly.
cēlo,1 āre, āvi, ātum (with two acc.), hide, cover (2).
cēlaus, a, um, lofty (10).
cēna, ac, F., dinner (36).
cēno,1 āre, āvi, ātum, dine, sup.
cēnseo,2 ēre, suī, sum, estimate, reckon (92).
cēnāor, ōris, m., censor (a Roman magistrate).
cēnus, ūs, m., census, a register and valuation of citizens.
centēsimus, a, um, hundredth.
centum, a hundred.
cēra, ae, F., wax; pl., wax tablets (for writing).
Cerēs, eris, F., Ceres, goddess of grain and harvest.
cēreus, a, um, waxen.
cernō,8 ēre, crēvi, crētum or certum, distinguish, descry, decide.
certāmen, inis, N., contest, rivalry.
certātim, emulously.
certē, surely, at any rate.
certōrem facere, to inform one.
certō, certainly.
certo,1 āre, āvi, ātum, decide, vie, strive, contend (90).
certum est, it is resolved.
certus, a, um (part. of cerno), decided, certain, sure, resolved.
cervīx, icis (F.; generally plur.), neck, shoulders.
cervus, ĵ, M., stag.
cēspes, ītis, M., turf.
cēso,1 āre, āvi, ātum, cease.
[cēterus], a, um (masc. sing. not used), other, the rest.
Chrysippus, ĵ, M., Chrysippus, a Stoic philosopher.
cibus, ĵ, M., food (36).
cicādā, ae, F., tree-locust, katydid.
Cicero, ōnis, M., Cicero.
cicōnīa, ae, F., stork.
cīeo,2 ēre, civi, citum, to rouse, stir.
Cinna, ae, M., a Roman name.
circā, about, around (acc.).
circiter, (adv. or prep.), about.
circum-aro,1 to plough around.
circum-oīdo,2 ēre, cidi, cisum, to cut or trim around.
circumcisus, a, um, cut off all around.
circumō,1 dāre, dedī, dātum, to put round.
circum-ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, to cast around.
circumplicō,1 āre, āvi, ātum, fold or wrap round, surround.
circumsedeō,2 ēre, sēdī, to sit round, besiege.
circumspectō,1 āre, āvi, ātum, to look round upon.
circus, ĵ, M., circus (for exhibitions, races, &c.).
citātus, a, um, hastening, stirred.
civilis, ē, of a citizen, civil.
civīs, is, C., citizen; — meus, my fellow-citizen.
civītās, ātis, F., city, state (as organized commonwealth: 98).
cládes, īs, F., massacre, loss (24).
clāmitō,1 āre, āvi, ātum, to shout, call (freq. of clāmo1).
clāmor, āris, M., shout, scream, cry (97).
clārus, a, um, bright, famous.
classicum, ĵ, N., trumpet-signal.
classis, is, F., fleet.
Claudius, ĵ, M., Claudius, a Roman family name.
claudus, a, um, lame.
clēmēns, ēs, merciful, gentle.
clēmentia, ae, F., mercy.
clēns, ēs, C., client, dependant.
clieps, ĵ, M., shield (28).
cloāca, ae, F., drain, sewer.
Clusius, ĵ, um, of Clusium.
CN. for Gnaeus or Cneius.
coactus, a, um (part. of cogo), compelled, gathered.
occhlea, ae, F., snail.
occles, ītis, M., a surname of Horatius (“one-eyed”).
occtilis, ē, baked.
coepī, def. (§ 38, l. a), I began.
coērceo,2 ēre, cui, citum, compel, restrain (arceo).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>coetus, ūs, m., assembly.</td>
<td>coetus, a, āvi, ātum, to assemble, group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōgito, āre, āvi, ātum, to think, reflect.</td>
<td>cognitio, onis, F., relationship (by blood).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cognōmen, inis, N., surname, family name (74).</td>
<td>cognoscō, er, nōvī, nitum, learn, recognize, know.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cognosco, er, coēgi, coactum, to gather, compel (co ago).</td>
<td>cōgo, er, cēgi, coactum, to gather together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cognōtor, āri, ātus, to encourage, exhort.</td>
<td>cognōtor, āri, ātus, to encourage, exhort.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collega, ae, m., colleague.</td>
<td>collega, ae, m., colleague.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collego (or colligo), āre, lēgi, lectum, gather, collect.</td>
<td>colliga, co, colligo, āre, lēgi, lectum, gather, collect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colliga, āre, āvi, ātum, to bind together.</td>
<td>collus, is, m., hill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collum, ĕ, N., neck.</td>
<td>colō, er, colui, cultum, cherish, till, worship.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colōnus, ē, M., farmer, colonist.</td>
<td>colōnus, ē, M., farmer, colonist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color, ōris, m., color.</td>
<td>color, ōris, m., color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>columba, ae, F., dove.</td>
<td>columba, ae, F., dove.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coma, ae, F., hair; pl. (poetically), foliage.</td>
<td>coma, ae, F., hair; pl. (poetically), foliage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comes, itis, c., companion (29).</td>
<td>comes, itis, c., companion (29).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comětēs, ae, m., comet.</td>
<td>comētēs, ae, m., comet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnis, e, kind, courteous (41).</td>
<td>cōnis, e, kind, courteous (41).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comitium, ĕ, N., place of gathering; plur., election.</td>
<td>comitium, ĕ, N., place of gathering; plur., election.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commemoro, āre, āvi, ātum, call to mind, relate, recount.</td>
<td>commemoro, āre, āvi, ātum, call to mind, relate, recount.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commendō, āre, āvi, ātum, to put in charge, intrust.</td>
<td>commendō, āre, āvi, ātum, to put in charge, intrust.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commĭgros, ē, āvi, ātum, to migrate, remove.</td>
<td>commĭgros, ē, āvi, ātum, to migrate, remove.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commĭlĭto, ōnis, m., fellow-soldier, comrade.</td>
<td>commĭlĭto, ōnis, m., fellow-soldier, comrade.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commodē, conveniently.</td>
<td>commodē, conveniently.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commoditās, ātis, F., convenience, advantage, fitness.</td>
<td>commoditās, ātis, F., convenience, advantage, fitness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commodum, ĕ, N., convenience, advantage, profit.</td>
<td>commodum, ĕ, N., convenience, advantage, profit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commoveō, er, mōvī, mōtum, move, disturb (violently), stir.</td>
<td>commoveō, er, mōvī, mōtum, move, disturb (violently), stir.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commūnis, e, common.</td>
<td>commūnis, e, common.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commūnĭtās, ātis, M., community (con, munus).</td>
<td>commūnĭtās, ātis, M., community (con, munus).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
condo,2 dere, didi, ditum, put together, found, build, put to rest, get in, cure (of crops).
condocfectus, a, um, trained, tamed. [together, hire.
condūco,8 ere, xi, c tum, bring
confectus, a, um (part. of con-ficio), wrought, reduced.
confere, ferre, tuli, lá tum (coll-lätum), to bring together, com-pare, betake (one’s self), put upon, convey.
confertus, a, um, full, crowded.
conficio,3 ere, fécì, fictum, make thoroughly, finish, prepare.
confirmo,1 āre, āvi, átum, con-firm, strengthen, affirm.
confiteor,2 ērī, fessus [fateor], confess, acknowledge, admit.
confuso,3 ere, fluxī, flow to-geth er, throng.
confringo,3 ere, frēgī, fractum, break in pieces [frango].
confugo,3 ere, fugī, to flee for refuge.
congrego,1 āre, āvi, átum [grex], gather in flocks, congregate.
concicio (conicio),3 ere, jécī, jectum, to cast, to hurl.
conjunctio, onis, F., a joining, companionship.
conjunctus, a, um, joined.
conjungo,3 ere, junxi, junctum, to join closely.
conjunct, or conjunx, jugis, C., partner, i.e. husband or wife.
conjūrātio, onis, F., conspiracy.
conjurātus, ī, M., conspirator.
conjuro,1 āre, āvi, átum, to con-spire (con; júro,1 swear.
conligo,1 āre, āvi, átum, to bind, fasten together (= colligo).
conloquor,8 qui, locútus, to con-verse.
cönor,1 āri, átus, ṭry, endeavor, attempt (18).
coniurō [con; quaero],8 ere, quisivi, quisitum, to inquire, search out.
cōnscientia, ae, F., conscious-
ness, conscience.
cōnsicio,4 ēre, to be conscious.
cōnsecro,1 āre, āvi, átum, cons-crète (con; sacer).
cōncius, a, um, consciousness.
cōnse nesoco,8 ere, senuī, to grow old (con; senex).
cōnspensus, ēs, M., consent, fel-low-feeling (con; sentio).
cōnscequor,3 sequi, secútus, to follow close, overtake (95).
cōnservātio, onis, F., preserva-
tion (con; servo).
cōnsensus, ēs, M., meeting, as-
sembly (con; sede).
cōnsidero,1 āre, āvi, átum, to consider, ponder.
cōnsido,3 ere, sēdī, sessum, to sit down (con; sīdō).
cōnsilium, ĕ, N., counsel, plan, wise counsel, wisdom (31).
cōnsimilis, e, very like, just like.
cōnsisto,8 ere, stītū, stitum, to stand fast, halt, stay.
cōnsocio,1 āre, āvi, átum, to associate with, join, connect.
cōnsolātio, onis, F., consolation.
cōnspectus, ēs, M., sight, view.
cōnspectus, F., spectum, to view, behold.
cōnspecio,9 ere, spexi, spectum, to view, behold.
cōnspecior,1 āri, átus, to get sight of.
cōnstāntia, ae, F., firmness.
cōnsituto,3 ere, stitiū, átum, to es-tablish, resolve [statuio].
cōnsto,1 stāre, stitiū, stātum, con-sist, be established; cōnstat, it is settled (fact or resolve).
cōnstringo,3 ere, strinxī, stric-turn, to bind fast.
cōnsueco,3 ere, suēvi, suē tum, become accustomed.
cōnsuetūdō, inis, F., custom (70).
cōnsul, ulis, M., consul (chief executive officer of Rome).
cōnsulātus, ēs, M., consulship.
cōnsulo,3 ere, ui, sultum, to con-sult (acc.), consult for (dat.).
cōnsultō, on purpose.
cōnsultum, ī, N., counsel.
cōnsurgo,3 ere, surrexī, surrec-
tum, to rise up, revolt.
Vocabulary: Latin and English.

*contemno,* esse, tempi, temp-
tum, to despise.
*contemptus,* üs, M., contempt, 
sorn.
*contendo,* esse, di, tum, stretch
towards, strive, contend; con-
tendo ab, urge upon.
*contentio,* önis, F., strife, con-
test.
*contero,* esse, trivi, tritum, to
wear away, bruise, waste.
*conterritus,* a, um, terrified.
*contexto,* esse, texui, textum,
weave together.
*conticesco,* esse, ticiu, to grow
silent (incept. of tacceo).
*continens,* tis (part. of con-
tineo), continuous; as a noun,
the continent.
*contineo,* esse, continui, tentum
[con; teneo], hold together,
contain, keep.
*contingo,* esse, tigi, tactum [tan-
go], to touch, defaul; contin-
git, it happens (4).
*continuus,* immediately.
*continuus,* a, um, constant, in
succession.
*contrà,* as prep. (acc.), against,
over against; as adv., on the
other hand.
*contraho,* esse, xi, ctum, to draw
together, contract, restrain.
*contrarius,* a, um, contrary.
*contremisco,* esse, tremui, to be
seized with trembling.
*contuui,* see contero.
*convenio,* esse, veni, ventum,
to meet, gather.
* conventus,* üs, M., meeting, con-
course.
*converto,* esse, ti, sum, turn.
*conviva,* ae, C., fellow-guest,
companion (at table).
*convivium,* ü, N., feast, banquet.
*convoco,* åre, avi, atum, call
together.
* copia,* ae, F., abundance, oppor-
tunity (78); plural, forces.
*copiosus,* a, um, abounding in
resources.
*coquo,* esse, coxi, coctum, to cook.
cor, cordis, N., heart.
*coram,* openly; (with abl.), in the
presence of.
*Corinthius,* a, um, Corinthian.
*Corinthus,* ü, F., Corinth, a city
of Greece.
*Cornelia,* ae, F., a Roman matron,
daughter of Scipio and mother
of Gracchus.
*cornicen,* cinis, M. [cornu; cano],
horn-blower.
*cornu,* üs (ü), N., horn.
corpus, grís, N., body.
corripio,* esse, ripui, reptum, to
seize (25).
corruptus,* a, um (part. of cor-
rumpo), spoiled, corrupt.
cortex, icis, M. or F., bark, hull.
corvus,* ü, M., a crow.
*cras,* to-morrow.
*crajinus,* a, um, belonging to
the morrow; crastinus (sc.
dies), ü, M., the morrow.
crèber, bra, brum, thick, close,
frequent.
crèbrecco,* esse, bruï or buï,
grow dense, thicken, increase.
crêdo,* esse, didi, ditum, to give
in trus, trust, believe (92).
crêo,* åre, avi, atum, to create,
elect.
crepitus,* üs, M., noise (rattling).
Crés, Crēta, C., Cretan.
cresco,* esse, crêvi, crêtum, grow,
increase.
Crēta, ae, F., Crete, an island.
crēta, ae, F., chalk.
crētāius,* a, um, of chalk.
Crētānsis,* e, belonging to Crete.
criminar,* åri, åtus, to accuse.
crinis,* üs, M., hair.
crocio,* esse, to croak (as a raven).
crocodīlus,* ü, M., crocodile.
crucio,* åre, avi, atum, torment,
torture.
crudēlis,* e, bloody, cruel (93).
crudēlitās,* åtis, F., cruelty.
cruentus,* a, um, bloody.
cruor,* grís, M., blood (when it is
shed).
cūsa, cūris, N., leg.
cruō, cruōnis, F., cross.
coni, to lie (combo).
cubiculum, i, N., chamber.
cucūlo, i, S. to call "cuckoo."
cucūlua, i, M., a cuckoo.
culpa, ae, F., fault (32).
culpo, i, S. are, àvi, àtum, to blame.
cultūra, ae, F., cultivation.
cultus, ús, M., tillage, worship, mode of living, attention.
cum (prep. abl.), with.
cum (adv.), when; cum primum, as soon as; cum tum, while...
. so also; both . . . and.
cūnābula, ōrum, N., cradle.
cūnæ, ōrum, F., cradle.
cunctātiō, ōnis, F., delay.
cunctātor, ĕris, M., delayer.
cunctor, i, ēris, ētum, to delay.
cunctus, a, um, all (77: more often in the plural).
cuniculus, i, M., rabbit.
cupiditās, ātis, F., eager desire, cupidity.
cupido, inis, F., desire.
cupidus, a, um, eager, desirous, greedy (20).
cupilo, ère, iūi, ãtum, desire (33).
cūr, why.
cūra, ae, F., care, anxiety (38).
cūrātiō, ōnis, F., care, treatment.
Curēs, ium, M., a Sabine town.
cūria, ae, F., senate-house.
cūro, i, S. are, àvi, àtum, provide, take care of.
curro, ère, cucurri, cursum, run.
currus, ús, M., chariot, car.
cursus, ús, M., running, course, race, voyage.
curvo, ère, iūi, ãtum, guard.
custōd, ëre, iūi, ãtum, guard.
custōdias, òdis, M., guard, guardian.
cygnus, i, M., a swan.
cymba, ae, F., a boat (73).
Cyrus, i, M., Cyrus, a Persian king.

D.
damno, ère, ãvi, ãtum, condemn.
dē (abl.), down from, of, about (1).
dēa, ae, F., goddess (p. 4, a).
dēdeo, ère, ùi, ãtum, to owe, ought.
dēbilia, e, weak, feeble.
dōcēdo, ère, cessi, cessum, to withdraw, retreat (3).
decem, ten.
decemvir, viri, M., decemvir (one of a board of ten).
dōcerno, ère, crēvi, crētum, to decree.
dōcēro, ère, psi, ptum, to pluck, gather [carpo].
dēceto, ère, àvi, ãtum, to contend, strive (90).
decet, èt, it is becoming.
dēcido, ère, di, to fall off, fail [cado].
decimus, a, um, tenth.
dēcīro, ère, àvi, ãtum, to make clear, show, declare.
dēclinō, ère, àvi, ãtum, to bend aside, avoid.
decor, ĕris, M., beauty, grace.
decōrus, a, um, beautiful, becoming (91); ad decorum, neatly.
dēoresco, ère, crēvi, crētum, to decrease.
dōcurro, ère, curri or cucurri, cursum, run down, advance.
decus, oris, N., ornament, honor, dignity (46).
dēdecet, èt, it is unbecoming.
dēdecus, oris, N., dishonor.
dōdo, ì, didi, ãtum, to surrender.
dēdūco, xi, ctim, to lead away.
dēfectio, ōnis, F., revolt, eclipse.
dēfendo, ère, di, sum, to defend.
dēfensor, ĕris, M., defender.
dēlecto, ère, flexi, flexum, bend, turn off (down or away).
dēinde, then.
dējicio (dēicio), ère, jēci, jectum, to cast down; dejectus, downcast.
dēlectatio, ōnis, F., delight.
dēlecto, äre, ävi, ätum, delight, please.
dēlectus, üs, M., a levy of troops.
dēleo, ère, ēvi, ētum, biot out, destroy, annihilate.
dēlicātus, a, um, delicate, effeminate, dainty.
dēlictum, i, N., fault (32).
dēlitesco, ère, litui, to lie hid (lateo).
Dēlos, i, F., an island of the 
Ægean, sacred to Apollo.
dēmentia, ae, F., madness, folly.
dēmergo, ère, si, sum, to plunge, (trans.); pass., to dive, sink.
dēmetior, i, iri, mensus, to measure out (sparsingly).
dēmeto, ère, messui, messum, to reap, mow, cut off.
dēmigro, ëre, avī, ätum, to remove.
Dēmosthenēs, is, M., an orator of Athens.

dēnum, at length, in short.
dēnique, at length, in short.
dēns, dentis, M., tooth, tusk.
dēnūsus, a, um, crowded, dense, close.

[d.]
dēpendeo, ère (no perf.), hang

dēpendo, ère, di, sum, to weigh out, pay.

dēpōno, ère, posui, positum, to lay down or aside.

dēposco, ère, poposci, to demand, claim, request (79).

dēprehendo, ère, di, sum, to catch, seize, arrest.

dēpugno, ëre, avī, ätum, fight (out a battle).

dēscendo, ère, di, sum, to descend.

dēsoribo, ère, scripsi, ptum, to describe, write about, trace, draw, mark off.

dēsero, ère, déserui, désertum, forsake, desert [sero, bind].

dēsiderium, i, N., a longing for.

dēsidero, ëre, avī, ätum, want, desire, feel the want of (33).

dēsilio [de; salio], ère, silui, sultum, leap down.

dēsino, ère, dēsivī (dēsi), dēsitum, leave off, cease.

dēsiplo, ère, to be foolish.

dēspēro, ëre, avī, ätum, to despair of.

dēspicio, ère, spexi, spectum, to look down on, despise.

dēstitūtus, a, um, left alone.

dēsum, esse, fui, to be wanting.

dēterreo, ère, ui, itum, to terrify, alarm.

dētrīmentum, i, N., loss, damage (de; tero: 35).

dētrūdo, ère, si, sum, to thrust away, push back.

dēus, i, M., plur. dei, dii or di (p. 5, e), a god, divinity.

dēvasto, ëre, ätum (no perf.), to lay waste.

dēversor, ëri, àtus, turn aside.

dēversorium, i, N., a resting-place, inn.

dēvinco, ère, vici, victum, to conquer.

dexter, tera (tra), terum (trum), right, right hand.

†DIC, say (dico, disco, dico).

diclo, onis, F., sway, subjection.

dico, ère, xi, ctum, say, tell (64); imperat., dic.

dictito, ëre, avī, ätum, keep saying, repeat.

didici, see disco.

Didō, onis (or Didūs), F., Dido, queen of Carthage.

dēs, diēi, M. (rarely F.), day.

differro, ferre, distulī, dilātum, to delay, defer, defer.

difficilis, e, difficult.

diffugio, ère, fūgi, scatter, flee away.

diffundo, ère, fūdi, fūsum, pour far and wide, pour out, spread.

digitus, i, M., finger, toe.

dignitās, tātis, F., dignity.

dignor, ärī, àtus, to deem worthy.

dignus, a, um, worthy (abl.).

dilābor, i, lāpsus, fall apart, glide away.

diligēns, tis, diligent.

diligenter, diligently.
diligentia, ae, F., diligence.
diligentia, ae, F., diligence.
diligo, ere, lexī, lectum, love (less strong than amo: I).
dimico, āre, āvi or uī, ātum, to fight, contend (go).
dimidium, i, n., half.
dimitto, ere, misī, missum, send away, dismiss.
Dion, ōnis, m., Dion, a patriot of Sicily.
directus, a, um (part. of dirigō), straight, perpendicular.
direptio, ōnis, F., plundering.
dirigo, ere, ēmi, emptum, to divide, put asunder [dis, emo].
dirus, a, um, dreadful (93).
Dis, Ditis, Pluto, god of the Lower World.
dis (in comp.), apart.
discēdo, ere, cessi, cessum, depart, pass away, cease.
discepto, āre, āvi, ātum, to dispute, discuss.
dissensus, ūs, m., departure, separation.
discidium, i [discindo], N., separation, parting, quarrel.
discindo, ere, cidi, cissum, to cut apart, separate, divide.
disciplina, ae, F., system of teaching, discipline, training.
discipulus, i, m., scholar, disciple.
disco, ere, didicī, to learn.
discordia, ae, F., discord.
disorīmen, inis, N., decision (by conflict), crisis, peril.
disourro, ere, currū (cucurrī), currsum, to run about.
disertus, a, um, eloquent (72).
dispar, paris, unequal, unlike.
disputo, āre, āvi, ātum, to dispute (think apart), discuss, deliver an opinion.
dissensus, ōnis, F., disagreement.
dissentio, ēre, sēnsī, sum, to disagree.
dissimilis, e, unlike.
distinctē, distinctly.
distinctus, a, um [distinguo], studded, marked, set-off.
distino [teneo²], ere, uī, ten- 
tum, to hold apart, divide.
distinguo, ere, nxi, ncum, to set-off, mark, distinguish.
disto, āre, to be distant or apart, to differ.
ditior, ditissimus, richer, richest
(used as compar. and superl. of dives).
diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, long (of time), in a long time.
diūturnitas, atis, F., long duration.
diūturnus, a, um, long (in time), lasting, durable, long continued.
diversus, a, um, inconsistent.
dives, itis, rich.
divido, ere, īsi, īsum, to divide.
divinus, a, um, divine, godlike, superhuman.
divitiae, ārum, F., riches, wealth (78).
do, dāre, dēdī, dātum, give (37); in compos., place.
doceo, ēre, docui, doctum, teach, tell (followed by two acc.).
doctus, a, um, learned, skilled.
doleo, ēre, dolui, be painful, feel pain, grief, suffer (with abl. of that from which one suffers).
dolor, ōris, m., pain, grief (38).
dolus, i, m., trick, fraud, craft.
domesticus, a, um, of the house or family.
domi (loc.), at home.
domilium, i, n., home, residence.
domina, ae, F., queen, mistress.
dominātus, ūs, m., dominion, tyranny.
dominor, āri, ātus, to rule, be master or tyrant.
dominus, i, m., master, lord; domine (voc.), sir.
domo, āre, domui, domitum, 
subdue, tame, break in.
domus, ūs, F. (p. 18. b), house; domi, at home (39).
dōne, until.
Vocabulary: Latin and English.

dōno, 1 āre, āvi, ātum (§ 51, i. c.), to give, present (37).
dōnum, i, N., gift (40).
dormio, 4 īre, īvi, ītum, to sleep.
dōs, dōtis (g. pl. ium), F., dowry.
Druidēs, um, Druids, the priestly class of Gaul.
dubitātio, ōnis, F., doubt.
dubito, 1 āre, āvi, ātum (with an or quin), dubitās (with infin.), hesitate.
dubius, a, um, doubtful.
†duc, lead (ducō, 3 dux).
ducenti, ae, a, two hundred.
dūco, 8 ēre, dúxi, dúctum; imperat., dúo, to lead, hold, think.
dulceō, inis, F., charm, sweetness.
dulcis, e, sweet, fresh (of water).
dum, with indic., while; with subj. (generally), until.
dūmēsum, i, N., bramble-thicket.
duimus, i, M., brier, bramble.
duo, ae, o (see p. 7), two.
duplico, 1 āre, āvi, ātum, double.
dūritis, ae, F., hardness.
dūro, 1 āre, āvi, ātum, endure, last, hold out.
dūrus, a, um, hard, hardy (93).
dux, ducis, c., leader, guide (42).

efficiendia, ae, F., efficacy, potency.
efficio, 8 [ex; facio], ere, fēcī, fecūm, make out, effect.
effigēs, ēci, F., an image, apparition.
effluo, 8 ēre, flūxi, to flow out, or away
effodiō, 3 ēre, fōdi, fossum, dig up or out.
effugio, 8 ēre, fūgi, to flee away, escape from.
egēs, tis (part. of ego), destitute (82).
egeo, 2 ēre, eguī, be destitute, need (abl. or gen.).
Egeria, ae, F., nymph of a grotto near Rome.
Egerius, i, M., a proper name.
egēstās, ātis, F., poverty, destitution.
ēgī, ēgeram, see ago. 3
ego, mei, mihi, mē (p. 18), I.
egomet, I myself.
egredior, 3 di, gressus, to go forth.
egregius, a, um, excellent, distinguished, unusual, fine, remarkable [ae; grex].
ējus, ei (gen. and dat. of is), his, hers, &c.
elātus, a, um (part. of efferō), carried away, uplifted.
elēgāns, tis, fine, elegant.
elēgantia, ae, F., elegance.
elementum, i, N., beginning.
elephantus, i, M., elephant.
elavo, 1 ēre, ātum (no perf.), dis-passage, make light of [levia].
eligo, 3 ēre, elēgi, electum, pick out, elect, select, choose.
eloqueōns, eloquent (72).
eloquentia, ae, F., eloquence.
elūdo, 3 ēre, si, sum, to deliberate, mock, make game of [lūdus].
emergo, 3 ēre, si, sum, to emerge.
emineō, 2 ēre, ui, to project, be conspicuous [ē; maneō].
emo, 8 ēre, ēmi, emptum, buy (originally take).
emptor, ēris, M., purchaser.
emptūrio, 6 ēre, I want to buy.
ēn (exclam.), behold! ho!
ōnervo, àre, āvī, ātum, enervate, unman, enfeeble [nervus].
enim, for (following one or more words).
Ennius, i, m., Ennius, an early poet of Rome.
ēsis, is, m., sword (poetic).
ēnumero, āre, āvī, ātum, to recount, reckon (numerus).
eō, thither.
eō... quō (with comparatives), the... the: see § 106. c.
eo, īre, īvī, ītum (p. 39), go (43).
Epaminondās, ae, a general and statesman of Thebes.
epistola (ula), ae, F., a letter.
epalae, ārum, F., banquet (36).
eques, ītis, m., rider, horseman, knight; pl., cavalry (equus).
equester, tris, tre, belonging to cavalry, equestrian.
equidem, in fact, for my part (concessive), it is true, to be sure.
equitātus, ēs, m., cavalry.
equito, āre, āvī, ātum, to ride.
equus, ī, m., horse.
ergā, towards (acc.).
ergō, therefore, then.
Eriphylē, ēs, F., wife of Amphiarāus.
eripio, ēre, ripū, reptum, snatch away, remove, rescue (rapio).
error, āre, āvī, ātum, wander, err, stray, mistake.
ēradio, īre, īvī (ii), ītum, to instruct, train (e; rudis).
ērumpo, ēre, ērūpī, ēruptum, to break out, burst forth, begin to flow (verb-root RUP).
esca, ae, F., food, bait.
esse (see sum), to be.
esurio, āre, īvī (ii), ītum, to fast, be hungry (desider. of ēdō).
et, and even; et... et, both... and; on the one hand... on the other.
etenim, for (you see, you know).
etiam, also, even, yes.
Etruscus, a, um, Etruscan.
ēsum, him [is].
Bōrōtās, ae, m., a river of Sparta.
ōvādo, ēre, sī, sum, come out, escape, pass out.
ēvenio, īre, vēnī, ventum, to come forth, happen (4).
ēventus, ēs, m., event, result.
ōverto, ēre, tī, sum, overturn.
ex, out of, from, of, directly after, on account of, according to.
exanimo, āre, āvī, ātum, to render lifeless (ex; anima).
exaudio, īre, īvī (ii), ītum, hear (at a distance), overhear.
excēdo, ēre, cēsī, cēssum, to go forth, withdraw.
excello, ēre, ēi, sum, to excel.
excipio, ēre, cēpī,ceptum, to overtake, receive, welcome (25).
excito, āre, āvī, ātum, to rouse, excite, stir up (ex; cœo).
exclāmo, āre, āvī, ātum, cry out, exclaim.
exclūdo, clūdere, clūsī, clūsum, shut out, hatch (ex; claudo).
excūsātio, ēonis, F., excuse.
exdeo, ēre, ēdī, ēsum, eat out, consume, wear away.
exemplum, ēs, N., sample, pattern, example.
exeo, īre, īi, ītum, go forth (3).
exerceī, ēre, cūrē, cūtum, keep busy, manage; (in passive), train one’s self (ex; arceo).
exercitātio, ēonis, F., exercise.
exercitus, ēs, m., army (5).
exēsus, see exedo.
exigo, ēre, ēgī, actum, to drive out (ex; ago).
exiguus, a, um, small, mean, scanty.
exilis, e, slender, feeble (44).
existimātio, ēonis, F., estimate, judgment.
existimo, āre, āvī, ātum, think, deem, reckon (aestimo: 92).
existo, see existo.
exitium, ī, N., destruction, ruin (ex; eo: lit., a going out).
exordium, ī, N., the beginning, origin (ex, ordior).
exorīor, īri, ortus, arise.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>expeditus, a, um, unencumbered, rapid (ex; pes = foot-free).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expello, 3 ere, expulsi, expulsuum, to drive out, expel.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expergēfacio, 3 ere, fēcī, factum, to rouse, awaken.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expergiscor, 3 ci, experrectus, to rouse one’s self; wake.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>experimentum, ī, M., trial, experiment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>experior, 4 īrī, expertus, to try, prove, test.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expers, tis, without a share, destitute (ex; pars).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expeto, 4 ere, petivi (ii), petitum, to seek, claim (79).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explicō, 1 āre, ui, itum (or āvī, ātum), to unfold, explain.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explōrātor, āris, M., searcher, scout.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exprimo, 2 ere, pressī, pressum, to press out, express (premo).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exprōmo, 2 ere, mpsī, mptum, to take out, exhibit, declare.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expugno, 1 āre, āvī, ātum, to take by siege, storm, conquer.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expulsor, āris, M., expeller.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expulusus, see expello.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exsilicium, ī, N., exile, banishment (exsilium).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exsisto, 2 ere, stīitī, stītum, arise, appear, exist (sisto, sta).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expsecto, 1 āre, āvī, ātum, look out for, expect, wait.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exstimāango, 3 ere, stīnxi, nctum, to extinguish, destroy, kill.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extō, 1 stare (no perf. or sup.), stand forth, rise.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exsul, ulis, c., an exile.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exemplō, instantly.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>externus, a, um, foreign; as a noun, stranger.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extrā (acc.), outside of, beyond.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extraho, 3 ere, traxi, tractum, draw out, drag.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extrāmus, a, um, last; extrēma insula, the end of the island.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāa, say (for, 1 fātum).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fabricārius = fabricāri, old inf. of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fabricor, ārī, ātus, manufacture, fabricate, forge.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fābula, ae, F., fable, tale (for).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāc, make, do (facio). 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facessō, 3 ere, i, ātum, to do eagerly; facesso negotium, bring trouble upon (dat.).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fācōtiae, ārum, F., wit, fun.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facētus, a, um, elegant, funny.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facile, easily.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facilis, e, easy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facinōs, oris, N., act, crime (of violence: 32).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facō, 3 ere, fēcī, factum, make, do; imperat., fac; pass., fio.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fauctās, ātis, F., opportunity, ability (88).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāgus, ī, F., beech-tree.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fallāx, ācis, treacherous, deceitful.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fallo, 3 ere, fefelli, falsum, cheat, deceive, disappoint (45).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>falsō, falsely.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>falsus, a, um (part. of fallo), deceived, false.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāx, falcis, F., sickle, pruning-knife.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fāma, ae, F., common talk, report, fame (46).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>famēs, is, F., hunger, famine.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>familia, ae, F., household, family, especially the slaves (familius).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>familiāris, e, belonging to a family, familiar; (noun), friend.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fasciculus, ī, M., bundle, faggot.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fatores, ēri, fassus, to confess.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fatīgo, 1 āre, āvī, ātum, to weary, distress.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fātum, ī, N., fate, destiny.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faucēs, ium, F., jaws, throat, passage (into any thing).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fautor, āris, M., favorer, supporter.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faveo, 3 ere, fāvī, fātum, to favor (dat.).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
fax, facis, F., torch, firebrand.
secundus, a, um, fertile, productive, proficic.
félis (or félea), is, C., cat.
félīx, icis, happy, fortunate, of good omen (47).
femina, ae, F., woman, female (root FE: "the producer").
fenestra, ae, F., window.
fēnus, oris, N., interest, usury, profit (root FE, in fetus).
fera, ae, F., wild creature, wild animal or beast (14).
ferāx, ācis, fertile, productive.
ferē, almost, for the most part, about.
ferēns, tis, bearing, bringing.
fēriae, ārum, F., holidays.
ferio (no perf. or sup.), to strike.
ferītās, ātis, F., wildness, fierceness.
fermē, nearly, almost, about.
fero, ferre, tuli, látum (p. 39); bear, carry, tell; prae se ferre, to show, exhibit.
ferōx, ēcis, fierce, cruel (93).
ferres, a, um, of iron.
ferrum, ī, N., iron.
fertilis, e, fertile.
fertilītās, ātis, F., fertility.
ferus, a, um, wild, fierce (93).
ferveō, ēre, bui, to glow, burn, be hot.
fessus, a, um, weary.
festino, ēre, āvi, ātum, to hasten.
festus, a, um, festal. [prolific.
fētus, a, um, producing, full, fissio).
figidēs, e, faithful.
Fidēnās, ātis, of Fidenae.
fīdes, is, F., string; plur., lyre.
fīdes, ei, F., faith.
fīdo, ēre, fīsus, to trust (dat.).
figūs, a, um, faithful.
†figūs, shape (śingo, fictilis).
figūra, ae, F., figure, shape.
figūro, ēre, āvi, ātum, fashion, shape.
filia, ae, F. (see p. 4, a), daughter.
fillola, ae, F., little daughter.
fillolus, i, M., little son.
filus, i, M., son; voc., fili.
findo, ēre, fīdi, fīsium, to split, divide, separate.
śingo, ēre, finxi, fīctum, fashion, form, imagine (root FIG).
śinī, ivi (ii), itum, to limit, bound, fix.
śinis, is, M., end; plur., bounds, limits, territory (48).
śinitūs, a, um, neighboring.
śio, fieri, factus. become, be made, be done (used as passive of facio: 8 p. 39).
firmus, a, um, firm, steady.
śiatio, ēnis, F., cleft, cleaving.
fistula, ae, F., pipe, reed, flute.
śagrās, ēris, blazing.
śamen, inis, N., blast of wind.
śamma, ae, F., blaze, flame.
śāvesco, ēre, to grow yellow.
śāvus, a, um, yellow.
ślecto, ēre, xi, xum, to bend, turn.
ślexūs, a, um, crooked, bending.
śōrena, ēris, flourishing.
śōreo, ēre, śōrui, to flourish, bloom (flos).
śōresco, ēre, begin to bloom.
śōs, śōris, M., flower.
†fūlū, flow (fūlo, fūmen).
śuctus, īs, M., wave, flood.
śūmen, inis, N., flowing water, stream, river (49).
†fōdū, dig (fōdio, fossa).
śuō, ēre, śuī, śuχum, flow.
śoculus, ī, M., fire-pan, brazier.
śocus, ī, M., fire-place, hearth.
śodio, ēre, śōdi, fossum, to dig, pick.
śoedus, eris, N., a treaty, league.
śoedus, a, um, foul, disgraceful.
śolium, ī, N., leaf.
śōna, fontis, M., spring, fountain.
śore, will be (fut. inf. of esse).
śormus, a, um, inward form (organization), form, shape.
śormida, ae, F., ant.
śormōdōn, inis, F., dread, terror.
śormidōlūs, a, um, formidable.
śormōsus, a, um, beautiful, shapely (91).
Vocabulary: Latin and English.

formula, ae, F., little model, pattern, rule, writ (legal).
forta, e, sturdy, strong, brave, valiant (23).
fortiter, bravely.
fortitudo, inis, F., bravery, courage, fortitude.
fortuna, ae, F., fortune.
fortunatus, a, um, fortunate (47).
forum, i, N., forum (public square).
fossa, ae, F., ditch, trench (FOD).
foveo,1 ēre, fōvi, fōtum, warm, fondle, cherish, brood over.
†frag, break (frango,2 fragar).
fragilis, e, frai, easily broken.
frago, oris, M., crash, crashing noise (97).
frango,2 ēre, frēgi, fractum, break.
frater, tris, M., brother.
frāndo,1 ēre, āvi, ātum, to cheat, deprive (45).
frēno,1 ēre, āvi, ātum, to check, curb.
frētum, i, N., strai, a narrow sea (67).
frigidus, a, um, cold.
frīgus, oris, N., cold.
frōns, dis, F., leaf.
frōns, tis, F., brow, forehead.
†frōn, enjoy (fruar,3 fruges).
fructuosus, a, um, fruitful, profitable.
fructus, tis, M., fruit (94), fruits (generally), profit.
frugēs, um, F., grain, produce.
frugi (a dat. used as indecl. adj.), good, honest, thrifty.
frugifer, fera, ferum, productive.
frumentum, i, N., grain (94).
fruar,1 ī, fructus, enjoy (abl.).
frustrā, in vain.
frustror,1 āri, ātus, to deceive, disappoint, elude (45).
frustum, i, N., piece, fragment.
†fud, pour (fundo, fusus).
ful, see sum.
fugio,2 ēre, fugi, itum, to flee.
fugo,1 ēre, āvi, ātum, to drive, put to flight.
fulgeo,2 ēre, fulsi, to shine, glow.
fulgur, uris, N., lightning (75).
fulmen, inis, N., thunderbolt, flash of lightning (75).
fūmo,1 ēre, to smoke.
funditus, utterly, from the bottom.
fundo,3 ēre, füdi, fūsum, to pour, pour forth.
fundus, i, M., ground, estate.
fūnestus, a, um, fatal.
fungor,8 ī, functus, to fulfill, perform (abl.).
für, fūris, M., thief.
fūror, ēris, M., madness (raving), rage (mad).
fūror,1 āri, ātus, steal (by craft).
furtim (adv.), by stealth.
fustis, is, M., club.
fūsus, a, um [fundo], poured forth, routed.
futūrus, a, um [sum], about to be.

G.

Gāius, Cāius, M., a proper name, e.g., C. Laelius.
galea, ae, F., helmet.
gallia, ae, F., Gaul, including France, with part of Belgium and Switzerland.
gallicus, a, um, of Gaul, Gallic.
galliāna, ae, F., a hen.
gallus, i, M., a Gaul.
gallus, i, M., a cock.
gannio,4 ēre, to snarl, yelp.
garrulus, a, um, chattering.
gaudēo,2 ēre, gāvisus, to rejoice.
gelū, ēs, N., frost, cold.
geminus, a, um, twin.
gemma, ae, F., a bud, gem, jewel.
gemitus, ēs, M., groan, sigh.
gemmātus, a, um, jewelled.
†gen, produce (gnascor, gigno).
genēr, eri, M., son-in-law.
genēro,1 ēre, āvi, ātum, to generate, produce.
genetrix, trīcis, F., mother.
genitus, a, um (gigno8), born.
gōns, gentis, F., race, nation (50).
gōnī, ēs, N., knee.
genus, eris, n., race, family, 

descent, kind, class (50).

Germanus, a, um, German.

geru, ere, gessi, gestum, carry, 
carry on, bear, wear, do [GES]

gestus, üs, m., gesture, bearing;
agere gestus, make motions.

gigno, ere, genui, genitum, pro-
duce (verb-root GEN: gi-geno).

glaciālia, e, icy.

 glacīa, e, F., ice.

 gladiātor, ōris, m., swordsman, 
gladiator.

gladiolus, ī, m., little sword.

gladius, i, m., sword (16).

glaebā, ae, F., sod, turf (of un-
tilled ground).

glōria, ae, F., glory (46).

glōrior, āri, ātus, glory, glory in
(abl.), boast (with accus. of a
neuter pronoun).

 gigno, know (gnosco, gnovi).

 Graecus, i, m., the name of two
brothers, Tiberius and Caius,
leaders of the people's party
in Rome.

 gradus, üs, m., step, stride.

 Graecia, ae, F., Greece.

 Graecus, a, um, Greek; Graeci,
pl., the Greeks.

 grāmen, inis, N., grass.

 grandis, e, large, big, tall (65);
— natu, old.

 grando, inis, F., hail.

 grasser, āri, ātus, to roam, ad-
vance upon.

 grātia, ae, F., favor, influence,
good will (88); gratiā (with
gen.). for the sake of; plur.
thanks.

 grātīōna, a, um, favorite, pop-
ular.

 grātulātio, ōnis, F., congratula-
tion.

 grātus, a, um, pleasing.

 gravātē, reluctantly.

 gravēs, e, heavy, weighty, respect-
able, influential, oppressive.

 graviter, heavily, severely.

 grex, gregis, m., flock, herd (51).

 grunniō, īre, īvi, ītum, to grunt.

 guberno, āre, āvi, ātum, streer,
govern.

 gusto, āre, āvi, ātum, to taste.

 gymnasium, i, N., gymnasium.

 H.

 habeo, ēre, ui, ītum, hold, have,
keep, imply, have in itself,
consider, have for; bene se
habet, that is right.

 habilis, e, handy.

 habito, āre, āvi, ātum, inhabit,
live.

 habitus, üs, m., habit, suit, bear-
ing.

 haeréo, ēre, sī, sum, to cling,
stick.

 haesito, āre, āvi, ātum, to hesi-
tate (intens. of haereo).

 hæmus, i, m., link, hook.

 Hannibalis, alis, m., Hannibal, a
Carthaginian general.

 hastā, ae, F., spear (16).

 haud, not (modifying only one
word).

 haurio, īre, sī, stum, to drain,
drink in.

 Helvētiī, ōrum, people of Hel-
vetia (Switzerland).

 hem (interj.), ah! indeed!

 Henna, ae, F., Enna, a vale in
Sicily.

 Hennēnais, e, of Enna.

 Hēraclidēs, is, m., a name of a
philosopher.

 herba, ae, F., grass, turf.

 Herculēs, is, m., the most fa-
amous hero of Greek fable.

 heri, yesterday.

 hērōicus, a, um, heroic.

 hērōs, ōis (acc. sing. óa, pl. óas),
hero (a Greek word).

 herua, ī, m., master (less ap-
proved spelling for erus).

 heu, alas!

 heus (interj.), ho! hallo!

 hiberna, ōrum, N., winter quar-
ters of an army.

 Hibernia, ae, F., Ireland.
hic, here.

hic, haec, hoc, this (near the speaker: 52).

hiems (hievm), hiemis, F., winter, storm.

hilaris, e, cheerful.

hilariter, cheerfully.

hinc, hence, next; hinc.. hinc, on this side.. on the other.

hinnio, ire, to neigh, whinny.

hio, äre, ävi, ätum, to gape.

hirundo, inis, F., a swallow.

Hispánia, ae, F., Spain.

Hispánus, a, um, Spanish, Spaniard.

historia, ae, F., history.

hodié, to-day.

hodiernus, a, um, to-day's; hodierno die, to-day.

Homērus, ī, m., Homer, the Greek poet.

homo, hominis, m., man (as a human being), person, fellow (53; see p. 125).

honestus, a, um, becoming, honorable.

honor (ōs), ēris, m., respect, honor (46).

honóris, honorably; — appello, salute with titles of honor.

honóris, a, um (comp. —centior; superl. —centissimus), honorable, giving honor.

honōro, äre, ävi, ätum, to honor (do honor to).

hōra, ae, F., hour; omnium horarum homo, a man for any thing.

Horātius, ī, m., a Roman name.

horreo, ēre, horrui, shudder(at).

horridus, a, um, rough, horrid.

hortor, āri, ātus, exhort.

hortulus, ī, m., little garden.

hortus, i, m., garden.

hospes, itis, m., host, guest.

hospitium, i, N., office of host, hospitality, an inn.

hostilis, e, of an enemy.

hostis, is, C., enemy (54).

hūc, hither.

hūmānitās, ātis, F., refinement, courtesy, culture.

hūmānus, a, um, of man, human.

hūmēns, tis, moist.

humerus, i, M., shoulder.

hūmidus, a, um, moist.

humilis, e, low, lowly.

humor, äre, ävi, ätum, bury.

humus, i, F., ground; humi, on the ground.

huncine (interrog.), acc. of hic = huncine.

I.

i, go (eo, ire; iter).

Iāsōn, onis, m., Jason, leader of the Argonauts.

ibi, there.

ibis, is, F., ibis, a sacred bird of Egypt.

īco, ere, ictum, to strike, hit.

idem, eadem, idem, the same.

identidem, again and again, now and then.

ideō, so, therefore, for this purpose.

idōlon, i, N. (a Greek noun), an image, apparition.

idōneus, a, um, fit, apt, capable (with ad or rel. clause).

igitur, therefore.

ignārus, a, um, unaware, ignorant.

ignāvus, a, um, cowardly, sluggish.

ignis, is, M., fire.

ignōro, äre, ävi, ätum, to be ignorant; pass., to be unknown.

ignoscō, ere, nōvi, nōtum, to pardon (dat. of person: GNO).

ille, illa, illud, that (away from speaker: 52).

illūc, to that place.

illūstro, äre, ävi, ätum, to shine upon, brighten, bring to light.

illūstris, e, bright, well-lighted, illustrious.

image, ines, F., image, appari-
imber, bris (ium), m., a rain-storm (75).
imitor,1 āri, ātus, imitate.
immānis, e, monstrous (93).
immānitās, ātis, F., cruelty, ferocity.
immemor, oris, unmindful.
immēnsus, a, um, measureless, immense, unbounded.
immitto,8 ēre, misi, missum, to let in, send upon.
immo, nay, on the contrary, nay rather.
immortālis, e, immortal.
immortālitās, ātis, F., immortality (in-; mors).
immutābilis, e, unchangeable.
impavidus, a, um, without terror (in-; pavo).
impedimentum, ī, N., hindrance; plur. baggage.
impedio,4 īre, īvī, ītum, to hinder, impede (in-; pes).
impendeo,3 ēre, to overhang, threaten.
impendo,8 ēre, di, sum, to pay, bestow (weigh out to).
impērātor, ōris, m., commander (in chief: 42).
impēritus, a, um, unacquainted, unskilled (gen.).
impērium, ī, N., authority, command, state (as a power: 88.)
impēro,1 āre, āvi, ātum, command, require (dat. and ut).
impetro,1 āre, āvi, ātum, accomplish, obtain (a request).
impetus, ūs, m., attack, violence, impulse; animi impetus, impetuosity of feeling.
impiēger, gra, grum, vigorous.
impiēus, a, um, impious, wicked.
impleo,2 ēre, ēvī, ētum, to fill.
implīco,1 āre, cuī, citum (or āvi, ātum), entwine, entangle.
implōro,1 āre, āvi, ātum, to implore, entreat.
impoēno,3 ēre, posui, positum, to place upon, impose, inflict.
importō,1 āre, āvi, ātum, to import.
impotēns, tis, impotent, uncontrollable.
impotentia, ae, F., impotence, ungovernableness.
improbus, a, um, bad, wicked, mischievous, obstinate (66).
impuēs, ē or eris, youthful, beardless.
impuēns, tis, shameless.
impuidentia, ae, F., impudence.
imus, a, um, lowest, foot of.
in (acc.), into, for, towards; (abl.), in, in regard to, upon.
inānis, e, empty, unreal.
icantāmentum, ī, N., enchantment.
icēdo,8 ēre, cēssī, cēssum, move on, advance.
icēndium, ī, N., fire (conflagration).
icēndo,8 ēre, di, sum, set on fire, inflames.
icertus, a, um, uncertain.
inchoo (or incoho),1 āre, āvi, ātum, to begin, undertake.
inco,8 ēre, cīdi, cāsum, to fall upon, happen (in; caedo).
inco,8 ēre, cīdi, cīsum, to cut upon, inscribe (in; caedo).
incipio,3 ēre, cēpi, cēptum, to begin (in; capio, take hold).
inoīto,1 āre, āvi, ātum, to incite, rouse.
includō,3 ēre, si, sum, to shut in, enclose (in; claudo)
incolo,3 ēre, colui, to inhabit.
incolumia, e, safe, unhurt.
incommodum, ī, N., annoyance, inconvenience, disaster (by a euphemism: 35).
inconditus, a, um, unfashioned, rude (ill put together).
incredibĭlis, e, incredible.
increpo,1 āre, ui, itum, to chide, shout at.
icultus, a, um, uncultivated, rude (in; olo).
icumbo,3 ēre, cubuī, cubitum, lie upon, devote one’s self to.
inuīnăbula, ĭrūm, N., cradle.
indē, thence, then.
indecorus, a, um, unbecoming, dishonorable.
index, icis, c., guide.
indico, ari, avii, atum, point out, indicate.
indigo, ere, xi, ctum, to declare.
indigeo, ere, ui [ego], to need (with gen.: 26).
indignor, ari, atus, to be indignant, deem unworthy.
indignus, a, um, unworthy (abl.).
inditus, a, um, put on, given.
indo, ere, didi, ditum, to put upon, bestow.
indolens, is, F., talent, disposition (13).
indico, ere, xi, ctum, to lead or bring on.
induro, ari, avii, atum, harden.
indulgentia, ae, F., indulgence.
indulgeo, ere, si, sum, to indulge (dat.).
induo, ere, ui, utum, to put on.
industria, ae, F., industry, diligence; de —, on purpose.
indutus, a, um, clad.
inedia, ae, F., fasting, famine.
inexpa, foolishly.
inero, ari, are, to wander in or over, pass before (dative).
inera, tis, stupid, lazy.
infacetus, a, um, without humor.
iniamis, e, ill-famed, infamous.
inflatus, a, um, shocking, unspreakable.
infa, tis, c., infant. [tunate.
inflex, icis, unfruitful, unfruitful.
ininfensus, a, um, angry, hostile.
inferior, ius (comp. of inferus), lower, inferior. [below.
infernus, a, um, of the world.
infero, ferre, tuli, latum (illatum), bring or throw in or upon; bellum infero, make war.
inferus, a, um, lower, below.
inesta, a, um, hostile, dangerous, in a dangerous condition.
in fidus, a, um, unfaithful.
infinus, a, um, lowest.
infinitus, a, um, unlimited, infinite, immeasurable (finis).
infirmus, a, um, feeble, infirm.
inflamo, ari, avii, atum, to set on fire.
inflatus, a, um, inflated, puffed up.
infortunium, i, N., misfortune.
ingeniiosus, a, um, full of genius.
ingenium, i, N., nature, mind, genius (13).
ingenes, tis, vast, monstrous (65).
ingenuus, a, um, noble, free-born (62).
inhabit, ari, avii, atum, inhabit.
inhumanus, a, um, rude, churlish, ill-bred, barbarous (p. 125).
imicus, a, um, unfriendly, hostile; personal enemy (54).
iniquus, a, um, unjust (aesquus).
ininitium, i, N., beginning; initio, at first (in; eo, entering on).
injicio (inio), ere, jeci, jacket, to cast upon (in; jacio).
injucundus, a, um, unpleasant.
injustus, a, um, without orders.
injury, ei, F., injury.
injusta, unstly.
injustus, a, um, unjust.
inlatus, a, um, brought upon or against (infero).
innotus, a, um, inborn, innate.
innocens, tis, harmless, innocent.
innocentia, ae, F., innocence.
inno, ere, ui, utum, nod, hint.
inopia, ae, F., want, need.
inquam (def. Gr. p. 81), say (always in direct discourse and following some of the words said): said he, &c. (64).
inrideo, ere, risi, risum, to mock, laugh at (acc.).
inrumpo, ere, rupi, rupture, to break in or upon, burst in.
insanio, ari, avi, itum, be insane.
insanus, a, um, unsound, insane.
insectum, i, N., insect, fly.
insequor, sequi, secutus, to follow closely, pursue (95).
insero, ari, seri, sertum, to weave in, bind in.
insero, ere, sessi, situm, to implant.
insideo, 2 ère, sēdi, sessum, to sit upon, be established.
insidiae, ārum, F., ambush, plot, treachery.
insidiōr, 1 āri, ātus, plot against, lie in wait for (as game).
insignis, e, marked, distinguished.
insitua, a, um (part. of insero), fixed, implanted.
insolēns, tis, unused, insolent, arrogant
insomnia, i, N., sleeplessness.
isono, 1 āre, sonui, resound over, rattle (dat.).
instabilis, e, varying, unsteady.
instituo, 3 ère, ui, ūtum, to establish, train (statuo).
institūtum, i, N., institution (any thing established).
insto, 3 ère, stiti, to be at hand, insist on, threaten.
instructus, a, um, equipped, armed.
instruo, 3 ère, xi, ctum, furnish, set in order, equip.
insula, ae, F., island.
insum, esse, fui, to be in or on, belong (dat.).
intactus, a, um, untouched.
integer, gra, grum, sound, whole.
integrātus, ātis, F., uprightness, soundness.
intelligo (-lego), 3 ère, xi, ctum, to understand (inter; lego).
intendo, 3 ère, tendi, tentum, or sum, strain, devote.
intentus, a, um, fixed, intent.
inter (acc.), between, among; inter sē, with each other.
interdico, 3 ère, xi, ctum, interdict, forbid.
interdiū, by day, in the day time.
interdum (adv.), sometimes.
interēa, in the mean time.
interest, erat, &c., it interests or is important (to the state, civitātis; to me, meā, § 222. a).
interficcio, 3 ère, fēcī, rectum, to kill.
interim, meanwhile.

interior, ius, inner.
intermisceo, 8 ère, miscui, mixtum or mistum, mingle among.
terpellātor, ēris, M., interrupter; sine interpellatore, without interruption.
terrumpe, 3 ère, rūpi, ruptum, to break down, interrupt.
tersum, esse, fui, to be present at or engaged in (dat.).
intimus, a, um, inmost.
intra (acc.), within.
intro, 3 ère, āvi, ātum, to enter.
intulī, see infero.
intus (adv.), within.
inundo, 1 ère, āvi, ātum, to over-flow, inundate (unda).
inutilis, e, useless.
invādo, 3 ère, sī, sum, to advance upon, attack, invade.
invenio, 4 ère, vēni, ventum, come upon, find (55).
investigo, 3 ère, āvi, ātum, track, trace, investigate (following a scent).
invideo, 3 ère, vidi, visum, to envy (dat.).
invidia, ae, F., envy, jealousy, malice, odium (76).
invidiosus, a, um, envious, odious.
inviolātus, a, um, unharmed.
invisus, a, um, hated.
invīto, 3 ère, āvi, ātum, entertain, invite (with ad or in).
invitus, a, um, unwilling, reluctant.
ipse, a, um, self (emphatic), himself, herself, &c.
ira, ae, F., anger.
Irācundē (adv.), with irascibility, with little patience.
Irācundus, a, um, irascible, high-tempered, passionate.
Irascor, 8 ère, irātus, to be angry.
ire, see eo (p. 39).
is, ea, id, he, she, it, that (52).
Isocrateēs, is, M., an orator of Athens.
iste, ista, istud, that yonder, that of yours (52).
Vocabulary: Latin and English.

ita, so, thus.
Italia, ae, F., Italy.
itaque, therefore, accordingly.
item, likewise, also.
iter, itineris, N., way, journey, march.
itero, åre, āvi, ātum, to repeat.
iterum, again, a second time.

J.

†jac, throw (jacio,3 conjicio).
jaceo,2 åre, jacui, jacitum, to lie, be low, lie low.
jacio,2 ere, jéci, jacitum, throw, cast.
jacto, åre, āvi, ātum, cast, toss, boast (intens. of jacio).
jam, now, already; jam nón, no longer (with present); jam vèrò, then again; (with future), presently; jam pridem non fui, it is long since I have been.
Jäniculum, i, N., a hill of Rome.
jánua, ae, F., doorway, door (86).
jocor, åri, ātus, jest, joke.
jocus, i, M.; pl., joca, ōrum, N., jest; per jocum, for fun.
Jovis, see Juppiter.

jubeo,2 åre, jussi, jussum (acc. and infin.), to order, comm.in.l.
junction species, F., pleasure, delight.
juncundus, a, um, p'easant, cheer.
justex, icis, c., judge, juror; in plural, properly jurors.
jūdicium, i, N., judgment, court.
justico, åre, āvi, ātum, judge, decide.

†jug, join (jungo,3 conjux).
julgāns, andis, F., walnut.
jugum, i, N., yoke, ridge of hill.
Jugurtha, ae, M., a king of Numidia.

Jūlius, i, M., Julius, a man's name; as adj., of Jūlius.

jungo, ere, nxi, nctum, to join, connect (jug: 63).

Jūno, ōnis, F., Jūno, queen of the gods.

Juppiter, Jovis, m., Jupitér, king of the gods.

jūs, jūris, N., right, justice (57).
jūs, jūris, N., broth.
justitia, ae, F., justice.
justus, a, um, just.
justūs (abl.), by command.
juvencus, i, M., bullock.
juvenis, is, c., young person (from 20 to 40); gen. pl. um.
juventūs, ūtis, F., youth.
juvo, åre, jūvi, jūtum, aid, help, do good, favor, please (acc.).
juxtā, near (acc.).

K.

Kalædææ, ārum, F., Kalends (1st of the month).
Karthaγo, inis, F., Carthage.

L.

L. for Lucius, a Roman name.
labor (ōes), òris, M., toil, hardship (58).
lábor, i, lápsus, to fall, fall, de
cay, glide.
labor, (adv.), with great
laböriösus, a, um, toilsome.
labòro, åre, āvi, ātum, toil, labor, trouble one's self.
labrum, i, N., lip.
lāc, lactic, N., milk.

Lacedaemon, ōnis, ōna, Lacedaemon or Sparta, a city of Greece.

Lacedaemonius, a, um, Lacedaemonian, Spartan.
laceratās, a, um, mangled.
lacero, åre, āvi, ātum, to mangle.
lacertus, i, M., the arm (above the elbow : comp. brachium).
lacrima, ae, F., tear.
lacus, cūs, M., lake (p. 18).
laedo,8 ere, si, sum, to injure, hurt (acc.).
laetifico, åre, āvi, ātum, to make glad (laetus; facto).
laetitia, ae, F., joy.
laetus, a, um, glad, blooming, gladdening (by abundance).
aevus, a, um, left (left hand).
lampas, adis (os), ada, adas, F., lamp, torch.
lapis, idis, M., a stone (59).
lāpsus, a, um, fallen (lābor).
lāpsus, sūs, M., flow.
laqueus, i, M., noose, snare.
largior, iīri, itus, to lavish, give lavishly (37).
largitās, ātis, F., generosity, abundance, bounty.
largus, a, um, broad.
Lars, tis, M., an Etruscan title.
lateo, āre, latuī, be hidden (with acc., from).
laterculus, i, M., brick.
Latinus or Latius, a, um, Latin (of Latium).
lātitūdo, inis, F., breadth.
latro, āre, āvi, ātum, to bark.
latro, ōnis, M., robber.
latrōcinium, i, N., robbery.
latus, eris, N., side.
lātus, a, um, wide.
laudātio, ōnis, F., praise, eulogy.
laudātus, a, um (part. of following), much praised.
laudo, āre, āvi, ātum, to praise.
laus, laudis, F., praise (46).
laetus, a, um, noble, elegant; part. of
lavo, āre or ere, āvī or lavāvī, lavāt- laut- or lōtum, to wash.
lectus, i, M., bed (60).
lēgātus, i, M., lieutenant, ambassador (part. of lēgo: 42).
legio, ōnis, F., legion (61).
lēgitimus, a, um, lawful, established by law.
lego, ēre, lēgi, lectum, gather, read, choose.
legūmina, um, N. pl., vegetables.
lēnio, īre, īvi (ii,) ītum, soothe, calm, soften.
lēnis, e, gentle, smooth, mild (41).
lentus, a, um, slow.
leo, ōnis, M., lion.
lepus, oris, M., hare.
lētum, ī, N., death.
levāmen, inis, N., relief, alleviation.
levīs, e, light.
lèvis, e, smooth.
levitās, ātis, F., lightness.
lēvitūdo, inis, F., smoothness.
levo, āre, āvi, ātum, to lighten, lift, relieve.
lēx, lēgis, F., law (written).
liber, bri, M., book.
liber, era, erum, free (62).
Libera, ae, F., Proserpine, daughter of Ceres.
liberātor, āris, M., deliverer.
liberē, freely.
liberi, ērum, M., children.
liberō, āre, āvi, ātum, set free.
lībertās, tātis, F., liberty, free-ī dom.
libet (or lubet), uit, ītum est, it pleases (dat.).
lībido, inis, F., passion, desire.
libum, ī, N., cake.
†lic, leave (linquo).
līcet, licuit, licītum est, it is permitted, one may (dat.).
līctor, āris, M., lictor, attendant on a Roman magistrate; executioner.
ligo, āre, āvi, ātum, to fasten, bind (63).
ligo, ōnis, M., hoe, mattock.
līgūstrum, ī, N., privet (a hedge-plant).
līmen, inis, N., threshold, entrance (86).
lingua, ae, F., tongue, language.
linquo, ēre, liqui, to leave.
liquidus, a, um, clear, transparent.
līs, lītis, F., lawsuit, quarrel.
lītera (littera), ae, F., letter of the alphabet: plur., a letter, epistle, literature.
līterātus, a, um, learned, lettered.
lītus (littus), oris, N., shore.
lōco, āre, āvi, ātum, to place, station, let (for hire).
lōcuplēs, ētis, wealthy.
Vocabulary: Latin and English. 211

M.

M., abbrev. of Marcus.
M′, abbrev. of Manius.
Macedo, onis, a Macedonian.
machina, ae, F., machine, engine.
maciës, ïë, F., emaciation, icianness.
macte (voc.), well-done! prosper.
maculo, ëre, ävi, ätum, statum.
mæetus, a, um, sad, sorrowful.
magis, more.
magister, trí, M., master, teacher.
magistra, ae, F., mistress.
mangstrátas, tús, M., magistrate, office.
magnitudo, inis, F., greatness, size; incredibili magnitudine, of marvellous size.
magnopere, greatly.
magnus, a, um, great (in all senses), powerful (65).
mágior, us (comp. of magnus), greater, older.
majusculus, a, um, somewhat large or larger.

male, ill.

maledico, ëre, xì, ctm, to speak ill, curse (dat.).
maleficium, i, N., ill deed, crime.
málo, målle, målui, wish more, choose rather (p. 38).
malus, a, um, bad, malicious (i.e. intended evil: 66).

mancipium, i, N., a chattel, slave (taken in the hand).
mandatium, i, N., command.
maneo, ëre, mansi, mansum, wait, stay, remain, await.
manes, ium, M., a departed spirit.
maniplaris, e, belonging to a company, maniplary.

maniplus, i, M., wish of straw (used as a standard for a military company, hence later the company itself: 61).

Mantinëa, ae, F., a city of southern Greece.
manus, ës, F., hand, troop.

Marcellus, i, M., a famous Roman.

locupléto, ëre, ëvi, ëtum, enrich.
lócusta, ae, F., locust, grass-hopper.
lónicaus, a, um, aged.
lóngë, ius, issimë, jur, by far, at a distance.
lóngimánus, a, um, long-handed.
lónginquus, a, um, distant, long (of time).
longus, a, um, long; longum est, it would take too long.
loquáx, ácis, talkative.
loquor, ì, locútus, speak (64).
lubet (or libet), it pleases, one is glad.
lúbricus, a, um, slippery.
lúcidus, a, um, bright, transparent, glittering (lux).
lúcnum, i, N., gain.
luctor, ëri, to wrestle, struggle.
luctus, ës, M., grief, mourning (38).

Lúcullus, i, M., a Roman name.

Lucumo, onis, an Etruscan title, properly, one inspired.
lúcus, i, M., grove (96).
lúdibriuim, i, N., jest, mockery.
lúdo, ëre, sì, sum, to play, sport.

Lúdovius, i, M., Lewis.
lúdus, i, M., play, school; plur., public games.
lúgeo, ëre, xì, ctm, to grieve, mourn.

lumbricus, i, M., earth-worm.
lúmen, inis, N., light.
lúna, ae, F., moon.
lupa, ae, F., she-woif.
lupus, i, M., wolf.
luscinia, ae, F., nightingale.
lustro, ëre, ávi, átum, purify, survey.
lúsus, ës, M., play, sport.
lutulentus, a, um, muddy, dirty.
lutum, i, N., mud.
lúx, lúcis, F., light.
lúxi, see lugeo.
lyra, ae, F., lyre.

Lysíëa, ae, M., an orator of Athens.
Marcus, i, m., a proper name.
mare, is, N., sea.
maritimum, a, um, of the sea, on
the sea.
maritus, i, m., husband.
marmoreus, a, um, of marble, glistering.
Mars, Martis, m., the god of war.
mater, tris, F., mother.
materia, ae; iēs, iēi, F., timber, mater material.
[bered.
materiātus, a, um, buili, tim-
materneus, a, um, of a mother.
matria, ae, c., matricide.
mātrimōnum, i, N., marriage.
matriōna, ae, F., matron, mar-
rried woman.
mātūrē, early, hastily, promptly.
mātūrus, a, um, ripe, early.
maximē, chiefly, especially.
maximus, a, um, greatest.
Maximus, i, m., Q. Fabius Max-
imus, a Roman commander in
the war against Hannibal.
medeor, ēri, to heal.
medicābilis, c, curable.
medicāmen, inis, N., remedy.
medicāmentārius, pertaining
to (dealing in) remedies.
medicāmentōsus, curative.
medicāmentum, i, N., remedy.
medicina, ae, F., medicine.
medicinālis, e, medicinal.
medicor, ēri, ātus, heal.
medicōsus, a, um, curative.
medicus, i, m., physician.
meditor, ēri, ātus (devote one's
self to), practise, meditate.
medius, a, um, mid, middle,
middle of (in agr. with noun).
mel, mellis, N., honey.
meleagris, idis, F., a guinea-hen.
membrāna, ae, F., membrane.
membrum, i, N., limb.
memento (imperat.), remember.
memini (dei.), remember (68).
memor, oris, mindful.
memorandus, a, um, memorable.
memoria, ae, F., memory.
memoro, ēre, āvi, ātum, call to
mind, relate.
mendāciō, i, n., falsehood.
mendāx, ācis, false, deceitful.
mēna, mentis, F., mind, wits (13).
mēnsa, ae, F., table.
mēnsia, is, M., month.
mēnsūra, ae, F., measure.
mentor, ēri, iōsus, to lie (speak
falsely).
mercōnārius, i, m., hireling.
mercoās, edis, F., wages (40).
mercoās, ium, F., plur., com-
modities, wares.
mercor, ēri, ātus, trade, buy.
Mercurius, i, m., Mercury, god
of trade, &c.
mergus, i, m., diver, sea-fowl.
meridiās, iēi, M., mid day, noon,
south.
meritum, i, N., merit, service.
meritus, a, um (part. of meroor),
deserved; meritō, deservedly.
messis, is, F., harvest (94).
-met, intens. (added to pronoun).
mētor, ēri, mēnsus, measure,
measure out.
metuo, ēre, ui, fear, dread (69).
metus, ūs, M., fear, apprehen-
sion.
meus, mea, meum, my, mine;
voc. M., mi.
mico, ēre, micui, quiver, shine,
glitter.
migrātio, ōnis, F., migration.
migro, ēre, āvi, ātum, to remove,
emigrate.
miles, itis, C., soldier.
mīlla, pl. of mille.
militāris, e, military.
militia, ae, F., military service
(22); militiae, abroad (in mil-
itary service).
milito, ēre, āvi, ātum, serve
(as a soldier).
mille, plur. mīlia, thousand.
Miltiadēs, is an Athenian com-
mander.
minaciter, threateningly.
minae, ārum, F., threats.
minax, ācis, threatening.
Minerva, ae, F., Minerva, god-
ess of arts and wisdom.
Vocabulary: Latin and English. 213

| minimē, least-of-all, no, by no means. | molestus, a, um, vexations; molestē fero, to be vexed at. |
| minimus (sup. of parvus), the least; — nātū, youngest. | mōlior, ēri, ētus, to attempt, do (with effort: 18). |
| minister, trī, m., attendant. | mollio, īre, īvi, ītum, to soften. |
| ministra, ae, F., handmaid. | mollis, e, soft, smooth, mealy (of fruits, &c.), ripe (41). |
| ministro, āre, āvi, ātum, serve, supply, afford. | mollitia, ae, F., effeminacy, softness. |
| miritābundus, a, um, in a threatening manner. | momordī, see mordēo. |
| minitor, āri, ātus, to threaten. | moneo, ēre, ui, ītum, warn, admonish, advise. |
| minor, minus, smaller, lesser. | monitus, īs, M., admonition. |
| minus, less (adj. or adv.). | mōns, montis, M., mountain. |
| mirabiliter, wonderfully. | mōnstrum, i, N., prodigy, monogram, monumentum, i, N., monument. |
| mīrāculum, ī, N., a miracle, wonder. | mora, ae, F., delay. |
| mīrōr, āri, ātus, to wonder. | morbus, ī, M., disease. |
| mīrūs, a, um, wonderful, marvellous; quid mirum? what wonder? | mordeo, ēre, momordi, morsum, to bite. |
| misellus, a, um, dim. of | mōrēs, um, M. (mos), character, habit (70). |
| miser, era, erum, wretched. | moribundus, a, um, dying. |
| miserē, wretchedly. | morior, ī, mortuus, to die. |
| miseros, ēre, pity (gen.). | moror, āri, ātus, to delay. |
| miseria, ae, F., misery (38). | mörosum, cross, ill-tempered. |
| misericordia, ae, F., pity, mercy. | mortis, mortis, F., death. |
| miserrimus, a, um, unhappiest. | mortālis, e, mortal. |
| mītes, ēre, misī, misum, to send (see p. 134). | mortuo, a, um, dead. |
| mixtūra, ae, F., mixture. | mōs, mōris, M., custom; plur., also character (70). |
| mōbilis, e, movable,pliant. | mōtus, īs, M., disturbance (of insurrections, and the like: 71). |
| modestē, modestly. | moveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, move (in all senses). |
| modestia, ae, F., modesty. | mox, presently. [(16).] |
| modestus, a, um, modest. | mūro, onís, M., blade, sword |
| modicus, a, um, moderate. | mūgio, īre, ivī (ii), ītum, bellow (like cattle). |
| modius, ī, M., modius, a measure of grain; a peck. | mulier, eris, F., woman. |
| modo (in a manner), only, just now; nōn modo, not only. | multiplex, plicis, manifold, repeated. |
| modulus, ī, M., manner, measure, limit (48); ejus modi, such, of that sort. | multitūdo, inis, F., multitude, great number. |
| moenia, ium, N., fortifications. | multō (adverbial ablative), by much, much. |
| mola, ae, F., mill, grain. | multum, much (with part. gen.). |
| molestia, ae, F., vexation, distress, trouble (38). | multus, a, um (generally plural), much, many. |
mūlus, i, m., mule.
mundus, i, m., the universe, the world.
münmentum, i, N., fortifica-
mūnio, i, e, īvi (ii), ītum, fortify.
mūnus, eris, N., office, gift (40).
mūnusculum, i, N., little gift.
murmuro, āre, āvi, ātum, to murmur, mumble.
mūrus, i, m., wall.
mūs, mūris, m., mouse.
mūtatio, ōnis, F., change.
mūto, āre, āvi, ātum, to change.
mūtus, a, um, dumb, mute.
myrīca, ae, F., heather.
myrtus, ēs or ī, F., myrtle.

N.

†NAC, find, win (nancisco). nam, namque, for.
nancisco, ēs, nactus or nactus, catch, get, find (55).
nārēs, īum, F., nostrils, scent.
narro, āre, āvi, ātum, tell, relate, talk of (with acc.).
Nāsica, ae, m., Nascica, a name of a family of Scipios.
nasco, ēs, nātus, be born (gen).
nātio, ōnis, F., nation (50).
nato, āre, āvi, ātum, to swim.
 nätū, by birth (abl.).
nātūra, ae, F., nature.
nātūralis, e, natural.
nātus (part. of nascor), a, um, born; as noun, son.
nauta, nāvita, ae, m., sailor.
nāvigo, āre, āvi, ātum, to sail, navigate.
nāvis, is, F., ship; — longa, gal-
ley (a ship of war, driven by oars: 73).
nē, lest; with imperat., not; with subj., not to; ne . . . quidem, not . . . even, not . . . either.
-ne (enclitic), mark of interrogation, whether.
†NEC, bind (necto, nexus).
nec (neque), and not, neither, nor.
nec enim, for . . . not (you see).
necessārius, a, um, necessary.
necessē (indecl.), necessary.
necessitās, ātis, F., necessity.
neco, āre, āvi, ātum, to destroy, kill.
nefārius, a, um, wicked, abomi-
nable.
nefās, moral wrong, impiety.
negligo (ego), ēre, neglexī, ctum, neglect, disregard (nec; lego).
nego, āre, āvi, ātum, to refuse, deny (ne; aīo).
negōtior, āri, ātus; do business.
negōtium, i, N., business, task.
nēmo, inis, c., no one, no (in apposition with noun); nemo non, every one.
nemus, oris, N., wood, grove (96).
nepōs, ētis, m., grandson.
nēquam (indecl.), ior, issimus, worthless.
nēquāquam, by no means.
neque, see nec.
nequeo, īre, īvi (ii), ītum, cannot (see p. 40).
nēquiquam (nēquiquam), in vain, to no purpose.
nēquis, nēqua, nēquid, not (lest) any.
nēreis, idis, F., nereid, sea-
nymph.
Nēreus, ĭ (eos), m., Nereus, god of the sea-depths.
nescius, a, um, ignorant.
Nestor, oris, m., Nestor, a wise and aged Greek chieftain.
nēve, nor.
nex, necis, F., death (by vio-
ence) (neco).
nīdus, ī, M., nest.
niger, gra, grum, black, dark in color (9).
nihil, indec., nothing; (as adv.), not at all.
nihilominus, nevertheless.
nihilum, i, N., nothing.
nil = nihil, nothing.
nimus, a, um, excessive.
nimis, too, too much.
nsi, unless.
nito, ēre, ui, to shine, glitter.
nix, nivis, F., snow.
nōbilis, c, well-known, famous,
    noble (GNO in Gnosco).
nōbilitās, ātis, F., nobility.
nocēns, ēs, injurious, guilty (66).
nōceō, āre, nōci, nōctum, do
    harm, hurt, injure (dat.).
nocturnus, a, um, nightly, of
    the night (nox).
noādōsus, a, um, knotty.
noādus, i, M., knot.
noō, nölle, nōlui, to be unwilling
    (p. 38); nōli, do not (prohib.).
nōmen, inis, N., name, bill of
    exchange (74). [mention.
numino, āre, āvi, ātum, to name,
    nōn, not.
numāgintā, ninety.
noundum, not yet.
nonne, not? (does not? do
    not? whether . . . not).
nonnnullus, a, um, some.
nonnunquam, sometimes.
nōrīm for nōverim, see nosco.
nōs, nostrum, trī, nōbis, we.
nosco, ēre, nōvi, nōtum, learn;
    perf. know (as an acquaint-
    ance: GNO).
nōter, tra, trum, our, ours.
nōtus, a, um, known (nosco).
Notus, i, M., south wind.
novem, nine.
novōca, ae, F.,步骤mother.
nōvi, I know (nosco).
novo, āre, āvi, ātum, to renew.
novus, a, um, new.
nox, noctis, F., night.
nūbēs, is, F., cloud (75).
nūbilus, a, um, cloudy.
ūbo, ēre, nūpsi, nūptum (dat.),
    marry (of the woman).
ūdōsus, a, um, naked, bare, unclad.
nullus, a, um (gen. iús), no, none.
num, sign of question expecting
    negative answer: translate in
    indirect question, whether; in
direct, by denial and question
    together, is not, is it?
nūmān, inis, N., nod, will, di-
    vine being, divinity.

numero, āre, āvi, ātum, to num-
ber, account.
numerus, i, M., number.
Numida, ae, M., a Numidian.
Numitor, ōris, M., grandfather
of Romulus.
nummus, i, M., coin = 5 cts.
umquam (numquam), never.
nunc, now (emphatic).
untuo, āre, āvi, ātum, bring
news, announce, report.
nuntius, i, M., messenger, mes-
    sage. [veiled.
nupta, ae, F., married, bride (lit.
nuptiae, ārum, F., marriage.
nusquam, nowhere.
nūtrio, īre, īvi (ii), ītum, to
    nourish.
nux, nucis, F., nut; ludere or
certare nucibus, play marbles.
nympha, ae, F., nymph.
obstinātus, a, um, obstinate.

obsto,1 āre, stīti, stātum, to stand against, oppose.

obstupfacio,2 ēre, fēcī, factum, to stupify, amaze.

obtempero,1 āre, āvī, ātum, to give heed, observe (dat.).

obtestor,1 ārī, ātus, appeal, adjure (79).

obtineo,2 ēre, uī, tentum, to hold, retain (ob; teneo).

obtingo,3 ēre, tīgi, full to the lot of any one (dat.: ob; tango).

obtricto,1 āre, āvī, ātum, to retract, oppose, speak enviously.

obtrunco,1 āre, āvī, ātum, to kill (with a blow: truncus).

obtuli, see obfero (offero).

occāsio, čonis, F., opportunity.

occāsus, īs, M., setting, west.

occīdo,4 ēre, cīdī, cāsum, to fall, set (ob; caedo).

occīdo,6 ēre, dī, sum, to kill (ob; caedo).

occūlo,5 ēre, culūi, cultum, hide.

occultus, a, um, hidden; in occultō, under cover.

occupātus, a, um, busy, engaged.

occupo,4 āre, āvī, ātum, seize, take possession of.

occurre,8 ēre, currī or currūri, cursum, to run up, run to meet, oppose.

octāvus, a, um, eighth.

octo, eighth.

octōgésimus, a, um, eightieth.

oculus, ī, M., eye.

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsus, to hate (p. 40).

odiōsus, a, um, odious, hateful.

odium, ī, N., hate, hatred (76).

odor, ōris, M., smell.

offero, see obfero.

officium, i, N., duty, service (57).

oleum, i, N., olive-oil, oil.

ōlim, once, of old, formerly.

olīva, ae, F., the olive-tree.

olivētum, ī, olive-orchard.

ōmen, inis, N., omen.

omitto,8 ēre, misi, missum, to let go, neglect.

omnino, altogether, at all.

omnis, e, all, every (77); omnia, every thing.

onerārius, a, um, of burden (as a ship).

onuṣ, eris, N., burden.

opāco,1 āre, āvī, ātum, to darken.

opera, ae, F., work, help, pains (58); pl., workmen.

opēs, opum, F., plur., resources, wealth (78).

opifex, fīcis, C., workman.

opinio, ķonis, F., notion, idea (31).

opinor,1 ārī, ātus, to think, deem.

opiparēs, ē, sumptuous.

oporet, ut, there is need (p. 40).

oppidānus, ī, M., townsman; pl., townspeople.

oppidum, ī, N., fortified town (98).

opportūnitās, ātis, F., fitness.

opportūnus, a, um, fit, suitable, exposed (30).

opprimo,3 ēre, pressī, pressum, oppress, crush (ob; premo).

oppugno,1 āre, āvī, ātum, attack, besiege (in the modern sense).

opūs, opis, F. (only used in the nominative as name of a goddess; in the other cases), help.

optimē (superl. of bene), best.

optimus, a, um, best (bonus).

opto,1 āre, āvī, ātum, choose, desire, wish for (with acc.).

opulentia, ae, F., wealth.

opus, eris, N., work (58), need; as pred., needful.

ōra, ae, F., shore, coast.

ōrātio, īonis, F., speech, oration, plea, discourse.

ōrātor, ōris, M., orator, envoy.

orbis, is, M., circle, world; orbis terrārum, the earth.

orbus, a, um, bereft, deprived.

ordinō,1 āre, āvī, ātum, to set in order, regulate.

ordo, inis, M., order, rank, class.

Orgetorix, igis, M., an Helvetian chief.

ōrēns, tis, M., rising, east.

origo, inis, F., origin.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>orior, īri, ortus, rise (inflected in 3d conjugation), begin.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ornāmentum, ī, N., ornament.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ornātus, īs, M., ornament.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orno, āre, āvi, ātum, to furnish, adorn, equip.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōro, āre, āvi, ātum, pray, entreat, pray for (79).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ortus, īs, M., rising, birth.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ortus, ā, um (part. of orior), risen, rising, descended.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ortygia, ae, F., the island on which Syracuse is built.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>òs, īris, N., mouth.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>os, ossis, N., bone.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oscen, inis, M., a bird giving omens by its note (technical word of augury: os; cano).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>osculor, āri, ātus, kiss.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ostendo, ēre, ēi, sum, or tūm, to show (80).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ostento, āre, āvī, ātum, display.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ostium, ī, N., door (outer: 86), mouth (of a river).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ostrum, ī, N., purple.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otiōr, āri, ātus, be idle, enjoying.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otiōsus, ā, um, at ease, leisurely.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōtium, ī, N., leisure, ease, peace.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ovile, īs, N., sheepfold.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ovis, īs, F., sheep.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōvum, ī, N., egg.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palliolum, ī, N., robe (99).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palīdāmentum, ī, N., military cloak (99).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palīs, ēdis, F., marsh.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palūs, ēster, tris, tre, marshy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pando, ēre, ēi, -pānsum or pas-sum, to spread (80).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pāplio, ōnis, M., butterfly.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pār, paris, equal, a match for (6).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paratūs, ā, um, ready, prepared.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parco, ēre, peperi, parcum or parsum, to spare (dat.: 81).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parēns, ēs, C., parent.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pāreō, ēre, ui, ītum, obey (dat.).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pāries, ētis, M., wall (of house).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parīo, ēre, peperi, partum (paritum), bring forth, produce.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pariter, equally, alike.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paro, āre, āvī, ātum, to prepare, get, provide, furnish.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parriōdium, ī, N., parricide.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pars, partis, F., part, share.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>particula, ae, F., a particle.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partus, īs, M., birth.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partus, ā, um (part. of parīo), gained, got, produced.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parum (adv.), a little, not enough.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parumper, a little while.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvulus, a, um (dim. of parvus), very small; ab parvulis, from childhood.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, ā, um, small, scanty.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pasco, ēre, pāvi, pastum, feed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pascuum, ī, N., pasture.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passus, ā, um, part. of patior, suffer; also of pando, spread; crūnibus passīs, with disheveled hair.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>passus, īs, M., step, pace; mille passuum, a mile.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pastor, āris, M., shepherd.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pastus, ā, um, fed, pastured.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pastus, īs, M., pasturage.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patefacio, ēre, facere, feci, factum, lay open; pass., patefio (80).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pātēns, īs, open, outspread.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pateo, ēre, ui, lie open, be open.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pater, tris, M., father.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patera, ae, F., bowl (sacrificial).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paternus, ā, um, of a father, of one's father.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**P.**

P. for Pūbius.

pāce tuā, by your leave (pāx).

pastum, ī, N., way, means.

paedagōgus, ī, M., tutor of boys.

paene, almost.

paenitentia, ae, F., penitence.

paenitet (poenitet), uit, it repent (p. 40); me—, I repent.

PAG, fix (pango; pax).

pāgānus, ī, M., a villager.

pāgus, ī, M., village, canton, district.

palam, openly.

palātum, ī, N., palate, taste.

pallesco, ēre, ui, to grow pale.

pallidus, ā, um, pale, pallid.
paltës, tis, plant (paltor).
patentia, ae., F., patience.
patina, ae., F., plate, dish.
patior, i, passus, to suffer, permit.
patria, ae., F., fatherland, native city or land.
patricius, a, um, patrician.
patrius, a, um, of a father, of one's native city.
patro, äre, ävi, ätum, to commit, perpetrate.
pauci, ae, a few, a few (only); paucis, in few words, briefly.
paulatim, litt. by little.
paulisper, a little while.
paulus, a, um, small; paulum, a little, a little while; paulo post, a little after.
Paulus, i, m., a man's name.
pauer, eris, poor (82).
pauertās, ātis, F., poverty.
pāvi, see pasco.
pavor, āris, M., terror.
pāx, pācis, F., peace.
pescātum, i, N., sin, wrong (32).
pesco, äre, āvi, ātum, do wrong.
pecto, er, pexi, pexum or pectitum, to comb.
dectus, oris, N., breast, heart.
deculium, i, N., property (private savings of a slave).
decūnia, ae, F., money, a sum of money.
pecus, udis, F., creature (in a flock), domestic animal (51).
pecus, oris, N., flock (51).
etitātus, us, M., infantry.
pellis, is, F., skin, hide (34).
pello, er, pepuli, pulsum, to drive, expel.
pendo, ère, pependi, to hang; — ex, depend on.
pendo, ère, pependi, pēnsum, to weigh, pay (weighing out the coin).
[trate.
penetro, äre, āvi, ātum, to pene-
peppenna, ae, F., feather, wing.
pēnsum, i, N., task (pendo).
per- (in comp.), very; as per-
magnus.
per (acc.), through, by means of.
peractus, um (perago), finished, complete.
peragro, äre, āvi, ātum, to travel
over.
perceptio, ēonis, F., a gathering.
percipio, ère, cēpī, ceptum, to gather, gain, perceive (capio).
percommodus, a, um, very convenient.
percontor, äri, ātus, to inquire.
perōbresco, ère, ui, thicken, become frequent, spread.
percursus, a, um (percello), struck through, amazed.
Perdicōs, ae, M., a king of
Macedon.
perdifficilia, è, very difficult.
perdix, icis, C., partridge.
perdo, didi, ditum, to lose, ruin, destroy (83).
pergrinus, a, um, foreigner, foreign.
perennis, è, perennial.
pereo, ère, ī, ītum, perish (in
perf.), be dead, be destroyed.
perexcelsumus, a, um, very high.
perfectus, a, um, perfect, con-
summate.
perficio, er, fēci, fectum, to do
thoroughly, finish, perform.
perfruor, è, fructus, to enjoy
thoroughly (abl.).
perfugio, ère, fūgi, fugitum, to
take refuge.
perfundo, ère, fūdi, fūsum, to
pour upon, drench (FUD).
pergeo, ère, perrexī, perrectum,
keep on, proceed (rego).
pericūlātio, ēonis, F., trial.
periculōsus, a, um, dangerous.
periculum, i, N., trial, danger.
perlude, just so, so much; —
ac si, just as if.
peritus, a, um, skilled (with gen.).
perilicīdus, a, um, very clear.
permaēo, ère, mānsi, mānsum, to remain.
permōtus, a, um (part. of per-
moveo), moved, disturbed.
permultī, ae, a, very many.
pernicoitās, ātis, F., swiftness.
perobescūrus, a, um, very obscure.
perpauci, ae, a, very few.
perpetua, a, um, perpetual, eternal; perpetuō, constantly.
Persa, ae, M., a Persian; Persa, a name (of a dog).
persequor, sequi, secūtus, pursue, follow out.
Persēs, ae, M., Perses, a king of Macedonia.
Perseus, eos (ei), M., the slayer of Medusa.
persevero, āre, ēvī, ātum, to persevere.
Persicu, ae, um, Persian.
persōna, ae, F., mask, character (of a play or dialogue).
perspiccio, ere, spexi, spectum, to perceive, ascertain.
persuādeo, ēre, sī, sum, persuade (dat.).
pertino, ēre, tinui, tentum, reach, extend; pertinēo ad, belong to, have to do with.
perturbo, āre, ēvī, ātum, to disturb.
pervenio, īre, vēnī, ventum, to come through, arrive at (with ad or in).
pervo, ēre, ti, sum, overturn, overthrow.
pēs, pedis, M., foot.
pestilēna, tis, infected, unwholesome.
peto, ere, petivī (ii), petitum, aim at, seek, ask (79).
Phalaris, idis, M., Phalaris, a name of a tyrant.
phāsiānus, i, M., pheasant.
philosophia, ae, F., philosophy.
philosophus, i, M., philosopher.
Phōcōn, ōnis, M., a statesman of Athens.
pictūra, ae, F., painting, picture.
pītēs, ātis, F., filial or family love.
†pig, paint (pingo, pictura).
piger, gra, grum, sluggish, inactive, stupid.

plagnus, oris, N., pledge.
pigritia, ae, F., indolence, stupidity.
plingo, e, ere, pinxi, pictum, paint.
plinu, us or i, F., pine-tree.
piscātor, ōris, M., fisherman.
piscis, is, M., fish.
piscor, āri, ātus, fish, catch fish.
pius, a, um, pious, tender, kind-hearted.
placeo, ēre, ui (or -itus sum), itum, please; mibi placet, I am willing, I like; placetne, would you like?
placidus, a, um, mild, gentle.
plācco, ēre, ēvī, ātum, to soothe, appease.
plānē, plainly, absolutely.
plānitiās, iī, F., plain, level.
Platō, ōnis, M., Plato, a Greek philosopher.
plausus, ūs, M., clapping (of hands), applause.
plēbēius, a, um, of the people, plebeian.
plēbs, plebis, F., common people, commons (85).
plēnus, a, um, full.
plērusque, -aque, -umque, most; pl., very many; plerumque, generally, for the most part.
plurimus, a, um, most, very much; pl., very many; plurimum, very much, most.
plūa, plūris (see page 16), N., more; plur., more, several.
pluvia, ae, F., rain (properly an adj. with aqua).
pōcuium, i, N., bowl (for drinking; po).
pōema, atis, N., poem (27).
Poenus, a, um, Carthaginian.
pōsta, ae, M., poet.
polliccor, ēri, itus, promise (freely), offer (84).
pōnum, i, N., apple, fruit.
pōno, e, ere, posui, positum, to put, place.
pōns, pontis, M., bridge.
popeci, see posco. [people.
populāris, e, popular, of the
populatio, ōnis, F., devastation.
pōpuleus, a, um, of the popular.
popolus, i, M., people or organized community (85).
por- (in compos.), forward.
porta, ae, F., gate (86).
portentum, i, N., a portent, prodigy.
porticus, ūs, F., gallery, porch, colonnade.
porto, āre, āvi, ātum, carry.
portus, ūs, M., harbor (p. 18).
‡POS, put (pono).
posco, āre, poposci, demand, claim, call for (79).
possessio, ōnis, F., possession, occupation.
possideo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, possess, occupy (potio; sedeo).
possum, posse, potui, can, be able; past tenses, could (87).
post (acc.), behind, after; (adv.), = posteā, afterwards.
posterus, a, um, later; with diēs, next; plur., posterity.
posthabeo, ēre, ui, ātum, to esteem less, neglect.
posthāc, hereafter. [as.
postquam, after, when, as soon
postremus, a, um, last; postremum, lastly; ad —, at last.
postridiē, the next day, or the day after.
postulo, āre, āvi, ātum, to demand (79).
potēns, ōs, powerful.
potentia, ae, F., power (88).
potestās, ātis, F., power (over, with gen.: 88).
pōtio, ōnis, F., a drink.
potior, īri, itus, to possess, win, gain (p. 37: abl. or gen.).
potior, us, better, preferable; potius, rather; potissimum, first-of-all, chiefly.
praecaveo, ēre, ui, ātum, to take precaution.
praeceps, cipitis, headlong.
praeceptor, ōris, M., instructor.
praeceptum, i, N., instruction, precept.
praecipio, āre, cēpi, ceptum, instruct (dative).
praecipito, āre, āvi, ātum, to hurry, precipitate.
praeclāre, nobly, handsomely.
praeclārus, a, um, glorious.
praeda, ae, F., spoil, booty.
praedicō, ēre, xi, ctum, to predict.
praedico, āre, āvi, ātum, tell, boast, speak of with praise.
praedo, ōnis, M., robber, freebooter.
praedium, i, N., landed estate.
praeo, īre, ivi (ii), ītum, to go before, precede (dat.).
praefātus, a, um, having spoken beforehand; — veniam, apologizing.
praefero, ferre, tulī, lātum, hold before, bear before, prefer (dat.).
praemitto, ēre, misi, missum, to send forward, in advance.
praemiūm, i, N., reward, prize.
praeparo, āre, āvi, ātum, to prepare in advance.
praeruptus, a, um, broken, steep (rumpō).
praescribo, ēre, psī, ptum, to prescribe.
praesēns, ōs, present.
praesērtim, especially.
praesidium, i, N., defence.
praestābils, e, excellent, admirable.
praestāns, ōs, excellent, conspicuous.
praeasto, āre, stīfi, (āvi), stītum (ātum), to excel, bestow; praestat, it is better.
praesum, esse, fuī, to be at the head of or in command.
praetendo, ēre, di, tum, hold before or close (dative). [except.
praetēr (acc.), beyond, besides,
praetereā, besides.

praetereo, ire, ii (īvi), itum, to pass by; to go (or return) beyond; praeterea, the past.

praetor, ōris; m., praetor; a Roman officer, who presided in courts.

prātum, i, N., meadow (8).

prāvus, a, um, bad, evil (66).

precēs, um, P., plur. (also dat., acc., abl. sing.), prayers.

precor, āri, ātus, to beseech, pray (79); bene —, wish well.

premo, ere, pressī, pressum, to press; pressum lāc, cheese or curd.

pretium, i, N., price.

Priumīdēs, ae, m., son of Priam.

Priamus, i, m., Priam, king of Troy.

prīdem, long ago, long since.

primōrē, um, chief men. [first.

primus, a, um, first; primō, at princeps, ipis, chief.

principium, i, N., beginning.

prīcus, a, um, early, ancient.

prītīnus, a, um, former, early.

prius, before, sooner.

privātēm, privately.

prius ... quam, before, sooner than; nōn ... —, not ... until.

privātus, i, m., private person.

prīvo, āre, āvi, ātum, to deprive.

prō (abl.), before, for, instead, in behalf of, in proportion to, as.

probābilēs, e, probable, approved.

probo, āre, āvi, ātum, to prove, approve.

procella, ae, F., storm, tempest.

procerēs, um, chiefs.

procénsul, ulis, M., proconsul.

procul, far off.

prodeo, ire, ii, itum, to go forth.

prodesse, infīn. of prosum.

prodigiosus, a, um, prodigious, astonishing.

prodigium, i, N., prodigy.

prōdo, dere, didi, ditum, give forth, betray. [bring forward.

prōducō, 8 ere, xi, ctum, lead or proelior, āri, ātus, give battle.

proelium, i, N., battle (22).

profectō, as a fact, surely.

prōfero, ferre, tuli, lātum, publish, give out, put forth.

prōficio, 8 ere, lēci, fectum, to effect, put forward.

proficiscor, ci, profectus, set forth, go, proceed (43).

prōfugio, 1 ere, fugi, to escape, flee.

prōfui, see prosum.

prōfundō, 8 ere, fūdi, fūsim, pour forth, lavish.

prōgredior, di, pressus, to advance (pro; gradior).

prohibeo, 2 ere, ui, itum, to forbid.

proinde, accordingly, so, then.

prōjicio (prōicio), ere, jēci, jectum, cast forth, throw.

prōlēs, is, F., offspring.

prōmitto, 3 ere, misi, missum (let go forth), promise (84).

prōmissus, a, um (part. of preceding), long; N., a promise.

prōmo, 8 ere, mpsi, mptum, to draw forth; promptus, ready.

Pronoea, ae, F., Providence.

prope (acc.), near, near by; as adv., nearly, almost.

propemodum, almost, nearly.

properē, in haste.

propero, āre, āvi, ātum, hasten.

propinquus, a, um, near, neighboring.

propitius, a, um, propitious.

prōpōno, 8 ere, posui, positum, propose, set forward.

prōpositum, i, N., purpose.

propter (acc.), near, on account of; propereā quod, because.

prōrēpo, 8 ere, psi, ptum, to crawl forth.

prōrsus, altogether, precisely.

prōscribo, 8 ere, scripsi, scriptum, post up (in writing), advertise, proscribe.

Proserpina, ae, F., Proserpine, daughter of Ceres, and queen of the lower world.

prōsilio, 4 ire, ui, spring forth.

prōspicio, 8 ere, spexi, spectum, to look forth, view, see.
prōsum (p. 26), to benefit, help.
prōtero,8 ere, trivi, triturum, to tread upon (follow closely).
protervus, a, um, saucy, bold.
prōtinus (adv.), farther on, at once, immediately.
prōtulfr (protero), put forth.
proverbium, i, N., proverb.
providentia, ae, F., providence, foresight, prudence.
prōvidēo,2 ére, vidi, visum, provide, foresee.
prōvidus, a, um, provident.
prōvincīa, ae, F., province (sphere of action).
prōvoco,1 āre, āvi, ātum, to call forth, challenge.
prōximus, a, um, nearest, next; e proximo, from near by.
prūdens (= providens), tis, prudent, wise.
prūdenter, prudently.
prūdentia, ae, F., prudence, discretion.
prūnum, i, N., a plum.
prytanium, i, N., town hall.
publicē, publicly, officially, at the public expense.
publicus, a, um, public.
Publius, i, M., Roman name.
pudet, uit, it shames (p. 40).
pudicitia, ae, F., modesty.
pudicus, a, um, modest.
pudor, ēris, M., sense of shame, or honor.
puella, ae, F., girl, maiden.
puer, ĕ, M., boy, child.
puerītia, ae, F., childhood (ending at 17).
puerulus, ĕ, M., little boy.
puig, pussh, prick (pungo,8 punctus).
pugillāres, um, note-book (M.).
pugna, ae, F., battle, fight.
pugnātor, ēris, M., fighter, fighting man.
pugnāx, ācis, pugnacious.
pugno,1 āre, āvi, ātum, fight (90).
pugna, ĕ, M., fist.
pulcher (or pulcer), cra, crum, beautiful (91).
pulcritūdo, inis, F., beauty.
pūlius, i, M., chicken, young bird.
pulso,1 āre, āvi, ātum, to knock, beat (intens. of pello).
pulsus, a, um, part. of pello, driven, expelled.
punctum, i, N., point, spot.
Ptūnicus, a, um, Carthaginian.
puppis, is, im, i, F., stern, ship (poetical: 73).
purpura, ae, F., purple.
purpurātus, a, um, dressed in red; a courtier.
pusillanimitus, a, um, feeble-hearted.
pusillus, a, um, feeble, slight.
puter, tris, tre, rotten, fellid.
pūtesco,3 ere, putui, to grow offensive (in smell), rot.
puto,1 āre, āvi, ātum, to think, suppose (92).
putrefacio,4 ere, fēcī, factum, to corrupt, rot.; pass., fio.
Pyrrhus, i, M., a king of Epirus.
Pythagorās, ae, M., an ancient Greek philosopher.

Q.

Q. for Quintus.
quā, where, in what way.
quācumque, wherever.
quadrēnnium, i, N., space of four years.
quae, see qui, or quis.
quaero,8 ere, quaesivi, quaesītum, to seek, ask (79).
quaeso,8 ere, īvi (ii), to ask.
quaeṣtiō, ōnis, F., investigation.
quaestor, ēris, M., quaestor, a Roman officer, like paymaster.
quālis, e, as, what (correl. to tālis); such as.
quam, how, as, than; quam maximus, the very greatest (as great as the greatest); quam primum, as soon as possible.
quamdīu, how long, as long as.
quamobrem, why, wherefore.
quamquam, although (lit. however), though (corrective).
quamvis, however much, though.
quando, when (interrog.), since; num —, whether ever.
quandoquidem, since.
quantonere, how greatly.
quanto, a, um, how great.
quartus, a, um, fourth.
quasi, as if, as it were.
quater, four times.
quatio, ere, quassum, to shake.
quattuor, four.
que (encitic), and.
quemadmodum, how.
queo (def. Gr. p. 82), can (87).
quercus, tis, F., oak.
quero, i, questus, to complain, bewail.
qui, quae, quod, who, which, that, as (rel.); quod, so far as.
qui, old ablative form of quis; as quicum, with whom.
quia, because.
quicquam, any thing, at all.
quicquid, whatever. [whoever.
quicumque, quaeicumque, &c., quid (adv. acc.), what? why?
quidam, quaedam, &c., a certain one (p. 21, a).
quidem, in fact, to be sure, at least; ne . quidem, not even.
quidni, why not?
quiēs, etis, F., quiet, rest.
quiētus, a, um, quiet, still.
quilibet, quaelibet, &c., any (whatever: p. 21, a).
quin, why not? but that.
quinam, quisnam, (emph. interro-
gr.), who (tell me)?
quintuplex, plicis, five-fold.
Quintus, i, M., a proper name.
quintus, a, um, fifth.
Quiritēs, ium, citizens (Roman).
quis, quae, quid, who? what?
(p. 20), quis homo? what man (the person)? qui homo? what sort of man?
quisplam, any one, some one.
quisquam, quaequam, &c., any, any one (p. 21, a).
quisque, quaeque, quodque, every, each.
quisquis, whoever (p. 21, c).
quō, whither; with comparatives, eō . . quō, the . . the.
quoad, as far as, according as.
quōcumque, whithersoever.
quod (adv. acc.: see qui or quis), so far as, the fact that (see p. 118), because.
quōminus, so that not (after verbs of hindrance: p. 108, c).
quōmodo, how.
quondam, once, formerly.
quoque, also, as well.
quot, how many, as (many).
quotannis, each or every year, yearly.
quotidiānus, a, um (adj.), daily.
quotidiē (adv.), daily.
quōtēs, how often? as often as.
quōtus, a, um, one of how many; quota hora, what o'clock? (as prima, &c.).

R.
rādo, ere, si, sum, to scrape, graze, shave.
rāmulus, i, M., a little branch, twig.
rāmus, i, M., a branch, bough.
rānae, ae, F., frog.
†rap, seiso (rapio).
rapidus, a, um, swift, violent.
rapiō, ere, rapui, raptum, seiso, carry off (with force: 25).
rarto, äre, āvi, ātum, seiso.
raptus, a, um, caugtī, stolen.
raptus, ās, M., a carrying off.
rārō, rarely, seldom.
rārus, a, um, rare, few, scattered.
rāstrum, i, N., rake; pl., rastri.
rāsus, a, um, shorn (rādo).
ratio, ōnis, F., reckoning, reason, method.
ratus, a, um, confirmed, fixed.
†re, thing, think (res, reor).
re- or red- (in compos.), back or again.
recēns, tis, recent, fresh.
recidivus, a, um, restored.
recido, ere, di, cāsum, fall back.
recipio, ere, cēpi, ceptum, to take back, recover (capio).
recto, āre, āvi, ātum, to recti.
reclūdo, ere, sī, sum, to unlock, throw open (80: claudō).
rectē, rightly.
rector, ōris, M., ruler (rego).
rectus, a, um, straight, right.
recūso, āre, āvi, ātum, decline, refuse (causa).
redditus, a, um, restored.
reddo, dere, didi, ditum, give back, restore, give out, produce.
redo, ire, ii, itum, return.
redintegro, āre, āvi, ātum, to renew, restore.
reditus, ūs, M., return.
redolēns, tis, having the smell of.
reundo, āre, āvi, ātum, overflow (unda).
refero, ferre, tulī, lātum, bring back, relate, represent, restore.
refervesco, ere, vi, to boil up.
reficio, ere, fēcī, fectum, to repair, refresh.
reflo, āre, āvi, ātum, to blow contrary.
†reg, guide, rule (rego, rex).
rēgia, ae, F. (sc. domus), palace.
rēgiē, royally.
rēgina, ae, F., queen, princess.
regio, ōnis, F., region.
rēgius, a, um, royal, kingly.
regno, āre, āvi, ātum, reign.
rego, ere, xi, ctum, to rule (81).
religio, ōnis, F., religion, worship, reverence.
relinquō, ere, liquī, lictum, to leave, abandon.
reliquus, a, um, remaining.
remedium, ī, N., remedy. [(68).
reminiscor, ī, to call to mind
remissus, a, um, slack, remiss; comparative, less intense.
remitto, ere, misī, missum, send back, let go, relax.
remoror, āri, ātus, to delay.
remōtus, a, um, remote.
remūneror, āri, ātus, to reward.
renovo, āre, āvi, ātum, to renew.
renuntio, āre, āvi, ātum, to carry back tidings.
reor, īrī, ratus, think (92).
reparo, āre, āvi, ātum, to recover, restore, renew.
repetto, ere, puli, pulsum, to push back, repel.
repente, suddenly.
repentinus, a, um, sudden.
reperio, ĕrc, reperi, repertum, find, discover (55).
repeto, ere, īvi (ii), itum, to claim back, demand.
repetundae, ārum, F., claim for restitution, on a charge of extortion (sc. res).
repōno, ere, posui, positum, to put by, store.
reporto, āre, āvi, ātum, to carry back.
reprehendo, ēre, dī, sum, blame, seize.
reprehēnso, āre, hold in check.
reprimo, ēre, pressi, pressum, to push back, repress, restrain.
repudio, āre, āvi, ātum, to reject, repudiate.
repugno, āre, āvi, ātum, to fight back, resist.
requīs, ētis, F., rest, repose.
requiro, ere, sivi (sī), situm, to seek, search, miss (quaero).
rēs, rei, F., thing, property, state, event; plur., circumstances; res publica, commonwealth, public life.
rescindo, ere, scidī, scissum, to cut away.
reservo, āre, āvi, ātum, reserve, keep back, preserve.
resolvo, ere, vi, solūtum, melt, dissolve.
resono, āre, āvi, to resound.
respicio, ere, spexi, spectum, to look back.
respondeo, ēre, dī, sum, to reply, answer.
rēs publica, rei publicae, F., republic, public life.
restat, it remains (to be done).

restinguo, ere, stinx, stinctum, to extinguish, quench.

restituo, ere, ui, utum, to restore (statuo).

rête, is, N., hunting or fishing-net.

ret:neo, ére, ui, tentum, to hold back, retain (teneo).

retrahó, ere, xi, ctum, to drag back.

retró, back, backward, behind.

rēvērā, in truth, really.

reverentia, ae, F., reverence.

revertor, ti, sus, to return.

reviso, ere, revisit, see again.

revoco, áre, ávi, átum, recall.

revolvo, áre, to fly back.

rex, régis, m., king.

Rhea Șilvia, ae, F., the mother of Romulus.

Rhēnus, i, m., the Rhine.

Rhōdanus, i, m., the Rhone.

Rhodus, i, F., Rhodes.

rectus, ās, m., the open mouth.

rideo, ere, si, sum, to laugh, laugh at, ridicule.

ripa, ae, F., river-bank.

risus, ās, m., smile, laughter.

rite, rightly, duly.

rivulus, i, m., little stream.

rivus, i, M., stream, brook (49).

rixae, ae, F., braviol, quarrel.

rōbustus, a, um, stout, sturdy.

rogo, áre, ávi, átum, demand, ask, entreat (two acc.: 79).

Rōma, ae, F., Rome.

Rōmanus, a, um, Roman.

Rōmulus, i, m., the founder of Rome.

rōs, rōris, m., dew.

rosa, ae, F., rose.

rosicudus, a, um, dewy.

rostrum, i, N., beak; pl., the rostrum (the raised platform from which Roman orators addressed the people).

rubēns, tis, glowing, red.

ruber, bra, brum, red, ruddy.

rūbigo, inis, F., rust, blight.

rudó, ere, ivi, itum, to bray.

rūdus, eris, N., rubbish.

rugio, ire, ivi, itum, to roar.

rugitus, ās, m., roaring, braying.

ruina, ae, F., downfall, ruin.

ruinōsus, a, um, ruinous. [46].

rūmor, āris, m., report, rumour.

rumpo, ere, rūpĭ, rumpit, to break, burst (RUP).

rūpēs, is, F., rock (59).

ruptus, a, um, broken.

rūrusus, again.

rūs, rūris, N., the country (as opposed to city); pl., fields (8);

rūri, in (rure, from) the country; rus (acc.), to the country.

rūsticus, a, um, of the country, rustic; m., a farmer.

S:

Sabīnus, a, um, Sabine.

sacer, cra, crum, sacred (SAC).

sacerdōs, ōtis, m. or F., priest, priestess.

sacra, ērum, N., sacred rites.

saepes, ius, issimē, often.

saepenumero, oftentimes.

saevitia, ae, F., cruelty.

saevus, a, um, cruel (93).

sagāctās, ātis, F., keenness of scent, sagacity, keenness.

sagāx, ācis, keen, sagacious.

Saguntum, i, N., a city of Spain.

sāl, salis, m., salt.

salio, ire, ui, saltum, to leap.

saltātio, ōnis, F., dancing.

saltem, at least.

salto, āre, āvi, ātum, to dance, leap (intens. of salio).

salubris, bris, bre, wholesome.

salūs, ūtis, F., health, safety, preservation. [some.

salūtifer, fera, ferum, wholesome.

salūtō, āre, āvi, ātum, to salute.

salveo, ēre, be well; imp., hail!

salvus, a, um, safe, sound.

sancio, ire, sanxi, sanctum, to sanction, establish (SAC).

sanctus, a, um, sacred.

sāne, to be sure, doubtless.
sanguis, inís, m., blood (in the veins, or fresh). stock, race.
sánus, a, um, sound, sane.
sapiënás, tis, wise.
sapientia, ae, F., wisdom.
sapio, 4 ere, iivi (ii), to taste or savor of, understand, be wise.
Sardés, ium, Sardis, the capital of Lydia (F.).
satelles, itis, c., satellite, attendant.
satis, enough; — est, very well.
satis-fació, 3 satisfy (dat.).
satus, a, um (part. of sero), sown, sprung, descended.
saxum, i, N., a stone, rock (59).
saccho, ere, bi, to scratch.
Scaevóla, ae, m., a man's name, meaning left-handed.
scálmus, i, M., thole-pin.
scelesätus, a, um; scelestus, a, um, wicked, criminal (66).
sceclus, eris, N., crime, guilt.
scoéna, ae, F., stene, theatre-curtain, stage.
scentia, ae, F., knowledge (17).
sicilicet, that is to say, forsooth.
sciendo, 3 ere, scidi, scissum, to cut, rend, divide.
scio, 4 ire, iivi, itum, know (as fact).
Scipio, ónis, m., Scipio.
scciscitor, 1 ari, atus, to inquire.
scriba, ae, m., scribe, secretary.
scribo, 4 ere, psi, ptum, to write.
scriptum, i, N., a writing.
scútum, i, N., a shield (28).
Scythés, ae, m., Scythian (of an Asiatic or Tartar people).
sé, suí, sibi, self (p. 19).
sé-, sód- (in compos.), apart.
seco, 3 are, ui, sectum, cut.
sector, óris, m., divider, buyer.
sector, 1 ari, atus, to chase (95), hunt (intens. of sequor).
secundum (prep. acc.), along, by, according to.
secundus, a, um, second, favorable (sequor).
secūris, is, im, i, F., axe.
secūrus, a, um, secure, without care or difficulty.
secútus, see sequor.
sé, but.
sedecim, sixteen.
sedéo, 3 ere, sédi, sessum, sit.
sédés, is, F., seat, abode (39).
seges, etis, F., standing crop (94).
segnis, c, lazy, sluggish.
semel, once.
seméstria, c., of six months.
semet, see -met.
semper, always.
senátus, úis, m., senate.
Seneca, ae, m., a Roman philosopher.
senectús, úitis, F., old age.
seresco, 3 ere, senui, to grow old, wane, waste away.
sex, senis, m., old man (100).
señi, ae, a, six (each, at a time).
senílla, c., of an old man.
senior, óris, older; pl., elders.
Senones, um, a people of Gaul.
sénas, úís, m., feeling, sense.
sentencia, ae, F., opinion (31).
sentio, 4 ire, sénsi, sénsum, feel, notice, perceive, understand.
sentis, is, m., thorn, brier.
sepelio, 4 ire, iivi (ii), sepultum, to bury.
sepío, 4 ire, sępsi, sęptum, to fence, enclose.
septem, seven.
septimus, a, um, seventh.
septiménti, ae, a, seven hundred. — Ser. for Servius.
sepulcrum, í, N., tomb.
sequor, 3 qui, cúta, follow (95).
serénus, a, um, calm, clear, fair.
Seriphus, a, um, of Seriphus, a Greek island.
sermo, ónis, m., talk, discourse.
sero, 3 ere, serui, sertum, weave.
sero, 3 ere, sèvi, saturn, to plant.
serpēns, tis, m. or F., serpent (12).
sérus, a, um, late, too late.
servilis, e, of slaves, servile.
servitúus, úitis, F., slavery.
servitium, í, N., slavery, troop of slaves.
servo, 1 are, ávi, átum, to save, preserve, keep.
servus, i, m., slave.

sessio, onis, F., sitting.

secessum, (sup. of sedeo), to a seat.

sestertium, i, m., 1000 sesterces, = $50 (Gr. § 379).

sestertius, i, m., sesterce, a coin of the value of 5 cents.

seu, or; seu . . . seu, whether . . . or, if either . . . or if.

severa, with severity.

severus, a, um, stern, severe.

sex, six.

sexxtus, a, um, sixth.

si, if.

sibilo, åre, to hiss.

sic, so, thus.

sicina, so? (interrog.).

Sicilia, ae, F., Sicily.

Siciliensis, e, or Siculus, a, um, Sicilian.

sicut, sicuti, as, just as, as also.

sidus, eris, N., star, constellation.

significo, åre, åvi, åtum, make a sign, signify, indicate.

signum, i, N., mark, sign, standard, statute.

silentium, i, N., silence.

silico, åre, ui, to be silent (about).

silva, ae, F., wood, forest (96).

simia, ae, F., a monkey (“pug-nose”).

similis, c, like, similar (6).

similitudo, inis, F., likeness.

simul, at the same time; simul ac, as soon as.

simulacrum, i, N., an image.

simulò, åre, åvi, åtum, to feign, pretend.

sin, but if.

sine (abl.), without.

singulàris, e, singular, unique.

singuli, ae, a (distributivè numeral), one by one, single.

sino, åre, sivi, situm, to leave, let, permit.

sisto, åre, stifi, statum, to set, place (STA).

sitio, åre, ivi (ïi), to thirst.

sitia, is, im, i, F., thirst.

situla, ae, F., water-bucket.

situs, iis, M., neglect, dust.

situs, a, um (sino), placed; est situs, rests, is situated; in eo —, consisting in this.

sive, whether, or.

soccer, ceri, M., father-in-law.

societas, atis, F., partnership, alliance.

socius, i, M., companion, partner, ally (29).

Socrates, is, M., a philosopher of Athens.

 sodalís, is, C., companion, friend, schoolmate (29).

sól, sólis, m., the sun.

soleo, åre, solitus, be accustomed.

sólátium (sóläctum), i, N., solace, comfort.

sólútudo, inis, F., solitude.

sollennis, e, customary, solemn.

sollers, tis, skifull.

sollertia, ae, F., skill.

solestítium, i, N., solstice (“sun-stay”), midsummer.

sólum, only.

sólum, i, N., soil, ground.

sólus, a, um, alone, only (p. 7).

solvo, åre, solvi, solutum, loosen, relieve; crines solvere, to throw loose the hair (in sign of mourning).

somnium, i, N., dream.

somnus, i, M., sleep.

sono, åre, ui, itum, to resound, sound.

sonus, i, M., sound (97).

sopor, óris, m., sleep.

sordidus, a, um, dirty, mean (20).

soror, óris, F., sister.

sors, sortis, F., lot, destiny.

spes, itis, safe (escaped from peril).

Sp. abbrev. of Spurius.

spargo, åre, si, sum, to scatter.

Sparta, ae, F., a city of southern Greece.

spatior, åri, åtus, to walk about.

spatiosus, a, um, spacious.

spatium, i, N., space.

specie, ieci, F., show, appearance.
specimen, inis, N., show, speci-
men.
speciosus, a, um, showy, beauti-
ful (91).
spectabilis, e, of noble aspect.
spectaculum, i, N., spectacle.
specto,1 are, avī, ātum, behold.
view, look, face (spicio).
spelunca, ae, F., cavern.
spēro,1 are, avī, ātum, to hope.
spēs, ei, F., hope.
spīro,1 are, avī, ātum, to breathe.
splendidus, a, um, splendid.
spolio,1 are, avī, ātum, to rob,
plunder.
spondeo,2 ere, spopondi, spō-
sum, to promise, pledge, be-
troth (84).
spōnsus, a, um, betrothed, prom-
sponte (abl.), accord; suā—,
of his own accord.
squālēns, tis, rude, disfigured.
squāleo,2 ere, ui, to be in mourn-
ing.
squālor, āris, M., filth, mourning
apparel, wretched plight (38).
śtā, stand (sto,1 siesto,2 sta-
tuo, instituo).
statim, immediately.
statio, ōnis, F., post, station.
statua, ae, F., statue.
statūra, ae, F., stature.
status, ēs, M., posture, attitude,
condition.
stella, ae, F., star.
sterno,5 ere, strāvī, strātum,
sreww, spread a couch.
stilus, ī, M., style (for writing).
stimulus, ī, M., goad.
stipendium, ī, N., soldier’s pay.
stipula, ae, F., stubble.
stirps, stirpis, stock, race (50).
sto,1 stāre, steti, statum, stand,
stop, cost.
Stoicus, i, M., a Stoic.
stomachor,1 āri, ātus, be vexed.
strenuus, a, um, bold, vigorous.
streptus, ēs, M., noise (97).
struo,5 ere, xi, ctum, to build.
studeo,5 ere, studui, to be earnest
or eager, favor (dat.), study.

studium, ī, N., earnestness, fond-
ness (for), study, zeal.
stultītia, ae, F., folly.
stultus, a, um, foolish; M., a
fool.
stupor, āris, M., stupor.
suādeo,2 ēre, si, sum, to advise.
suāpte (abl.), his, her, or their
own (intens. of suā, abl.).
suāvis, e, sweet (41).
suāvitas, ātis, F., sweet taste,
sweetness.
suāviter, sweetly.
sub (abl.), under, near.
subduco,5 ere, xi, ctum, to with-
draw.
subigo,8 ere, ēgi, actum, subdue,
break in (sub-ago).
subitus, a, um, sudden; subitō,
suddenly.
sublàtus, see tollo.
sublevō,1 are, avi, atum, to up-
lift, lighten, relieve (levis).
sublicius, a, um, of timber, on
piles.
subsidium, ī, N., help, aid, relief.
subvenio,4 ēre, vēni, ventum,
come to the relief, help.
succēdo,8 ere, cēssi, cēssum,
come up to, advance, prosper,
succeed.
succurrō,3 ere, curri, cursum,
to run up to, help.
sūdo,1 are, avī, ātum, to sweat,
exude.
sūdor, āris, M., sweat.
Suevī, ōrum, M., Suevi or Swa-
bians, a German tribe.
Sulla, ae, M., Sulla, a Roman
general.
sum, esse, fuī, I am, to be.
summa, a, um, highest, utmost,
greatest, highest part; — cor-
tex, outer hull. [take (25).
sūmo,2 ere, sumpsī, sumptum, to
super (acc. or abl.), upon.
superbia, ae, F., pride.
superbus, a, um, proud, haughty.
superincidēns, tis, falling upon.
superior, us, upper.
supero,1 ēre, avī, ātum, surpass.
superstes, stitis, surviving, a survivor.
supplex, ics (adj.), suppliant.
supplicium, i, n., supplication, (capital) punishment.
suppōno,6 ere, posui, positum, to put beneath (dative).
suprā (acc.), above, beyond.
surculus, i, m., sapling.
surgo,6 ere, surrexi, surrectum, to rise.
sūs, suis, c., swine (p. 14, 3).
suscipio,8 ere, cepi, cepsum, to undertake, receive (in succession).
sucito,1 āre, āvī, ātum, to rouse, excite.
suspicio,2 ere, spexi, spectum, look up to or at, suspect; suspectus, suspicious.
sustento,1 āre, āvī, ātum, sustain, keep alive.
sustineo,2 ēre, ui, tentum, to sustain, check, bear up against (sub; teneo).
sustulī, sustuleram, see tollo.
suus, a, um, his (her or their), reflexive (89).
Syrrācusae, ārum, F., Syracuse, a city of Sicily.
Syrrācusānus, a, um, Syracusan.

T.
tabellae, ārum, F., tablets (for writing; singular rare).
tabellārius, ĩ, m., messenger, runner (bearer of messages).
taberna, ae, F., shop, hut.
tabula, ae, F., plank, panel (for pictures), picture.
tacitus, a, um, silent.
tactus, a, um (tango), touched.
taeda, ae, F., pine-tree, torch.
taedet, uit, it wearies (acc. and gen. or infin.).
taedium, i, n., weariness, fatigue.
†TAG, touch (tango*).
talentum, i, N., talent (weight or money).
tālīs, e, such; tāle, such a thing.
tālus, i, m., ankle, heel.
tamen, yet, nevertheless, however.
tamquam (tanquam), so as, just so, as if.
tandem, at length, pray (with question).
tango,8 ere, tetigi, tactum, touch.
tanquam, see tamquam.
tantopere, so much.
tantum, so much, only; with plur. gen., so many; tantum abest, it is so far [from being the case].
tantus, a, um, so great.
Tarentum, i, N., Tarentum, a town of South Italy.
taurus, i, m., bull.
tectum, i, N., roof, dwelling.
tēcum = cum and te from tu.
†TEG, cover (tego, tectum).
tegimentum, i, N., covering, clothing, shelter.
tego,8 ere, xi, ctum, to shelter, cover.
tellūs, ūris, F., earth.
tēulum, i, N., weapon of attack (16).
temere, rashly, hastily.
temno,8 ere, tempsi, to despise.
temperātus, a, um, tempered, temperate.
temperor,4 āre, āvī, ātum, to moderate, control, restrain; spare (dat.: 81).
tempestās, ātis, F., weather, storm.
tempestivē, seasonably, in season.
templum, i, N., temple.
tempus, oris, N., time.
†TEN, strain (tendo,6 teneo*).
tenāx, ācis, tenacious (teneo).
tendo,3 ēre, tetendi, tentum, or tēnum, to stretch, spread.
tenebrae, ārum, F., darkness, dark recess.
teneo,2 ēre, tenuī, tum, hold, possess; hoc tene, mind this.
tener, era, erum, tender.
tenus, e, slender (44).
ter, three times.
tergum, i, N, back; a tergo, in the rear.
ternus, a, um, by threes, three.
terra, ae, F., earth, land.
terreo, 2 ere, ui, itum, terrify, alarm.
terrester, tris, tre, earthly.
terribilis, e, full of terror.
territorium, i, N, territory.
terror, oris, M., alarm, terror (object of alarm).
tertius, a, um, third.
tesca, orum, N., thickets.
testamentum, i, N., will, testament.
testimonium, i, N., testimony, proof.
testis, is, C., witness.
testor, i, ari, atus, to witness, call to witness.
téter, tra, trum, foul, rancid.
tetig, see tango.
theárum, i, N., theatre.
Thébae, arum, F., Thebes, a city of Greece.
Themistoclés, is, or i, M., a statesman of Athens.
Thermopylae, arum, F., Thermopylae.
Théseus, eos (ei), king and lawgiver of Athens, slayer of the Minotaur.
TL, abbrev. for Tiberius.
Tiberinus, i, M., god of the river Tiber.
Tiberis, is, M., the Tiber.
tibia, ae, F., pipe, leg, shin.
Tiburtés, um, people of Tibur.
tigillum, i, N., a small log.
tignum, i, N., beam, log.
tigris, is (idis), c., tiger.
timeo, 3 ere, timui, fear (69).
timeacés, tis, taking alarm.
timidus, a, um, fearful, timid.
timor, oris, M., fear.
titus, i, M., placcad.
toga, ae, F., [tēgo], toga (99).
tolerábilis, e, tolerable, passable.
tolero, 1 ere, avi, atum, to endure.
tollio, 3 ere, sustuli, subitum, raise, take up, take away.
tomentum, i, N., tormenti; engine for hurling stones (torqueo).
torqueo, 2 ere, torsi, tortum, to twist, hurl.
torvus, a, um, cruel, cross (in aspect).
tot, so many.
totus, a, um (p. 7), whole, entire; with adv. force, wholly (77).
trádo, 3 ere, didi, ditum, to deliver up, betray.
tráduco, 3 ere, xi, ctum, to lead across (with two acc.).
tragoedia, ae, F., tragedy.
traho, 3 ere, xi, ctum, to draw, drag, bring; trahit sua quemque voluptas, every one to his liking (Eng. DRAG).
tranquillus, a, um, tranquil, calm.
tránno, 1 ere, aví, atum, to swim across (tráns; no).
tráns (acc.), across, beyond.
transeo, ire, ii, itum, to cross, go over.
tránsego, 3 ere, fixi, fixum, to transfix, pierce through.
tránauga, ae, M., deserter.
tránssilio, 4 ire, ui or ivi, to leap across (tráns; salio).
tránsitus, üs, M., crossing, passage.
tránsano, see tráno.
tránsvolo, 1 ere, aví, atum, to fly across.
trecenti, ae, a, three hundred.
tremo, 3 ere, tremuí, tremble (69).
tremulus, a, um, trembling.
trepidatío, onis, F., cowardice, alarm.
trepidó, 1 ere, aví, atum, to be in terror (root TREP, turn).
trepidus, a, um, timid, trembling.
trés, tria, three.
tribunal, ãlis, N., tribunal, seat of justice.
tribunalis, e, of a tribune.
tribēnus, i, m., tribune, a plebeian officer.
trīcānimus, a, um. thirtieth.
tīdiu, i, n., three days.
triennium, i, n., three years.
trīgeminī, ōrum, three of one birth.
trīgintā (indec.), thirty.
triquetrus, a, um, three-cornered.
tristiculus, a, um, a little sad.
tristis, e, sad, gloomy, cruel.
trīticum, i, n., wheat (94: tēro).
Trōja, ae, F., Troy.
Trōjānus, a, um, Trojan.
tropaeum, i, n., trophy.
trucidō, āre, āvi, ātum, to massacre (trux; caedo).
trux, trucis, cruel, grim, stern, ferocious (93).
tū, tuī, tibi, tē, thōu (p. 18).
tuba, ae, F., trumpet (straight).
tubicen, inis, M., trumpeter (tuba; cano).
†tūd, beat (tundo).†
tūor, tuēri, tūitus, to gaze at, preserve, protect.
tūlī, perf. of fero (p. 39).
Tullus, i, m., a Roman king.
tum, then; tum .. tum, now .. now, not only .. but also.
tumeo, tūre, uī, to swell.
tumultuosus, a, um, tumultuous (tumeo).
tumultus, ūs, M., tumult (22).
tūnē, you? — tuno, then.
tunica, ae, F., tunic (99).
turba, ae, F., a crowd (85).
turbo, āre, āvi, ātum, to disturb.
turpis, e, ugly, disgraceful, evil.
turris, is, F. (p. 14), a tower.
tūs (thūs), túris, N., incense.
tūtus, a, um, safe, defended; in tumult, to a safe place (tueor).
tūus, a, um, thy, thine, your (almost always).
Tyndarīs, idis, F., daughter of Tyndarus (Helen).
tyrannus, i, m., tyrant.
Tyrius, a, um, Tyrian, of Tyre, an ancient city of Syria.
U.
ūber, eris, rich, fertile.
ubi, where, when; where? when?
ubinam, where (emphatic)?
ubique, everywhere.
ubivis, anywhere (where you will).
ulciscor, cī, ultus, to revenge, punish.
Ulixēs, is or eī, M., Ulysses.
ullus, a, um (gen. iūs: p. 7), any.
ultimus, a, um, last.
ultror, orīs, M, avenger.
ultus, see ulciscor.
umbilicus, i, m., navel, centre.
umbra, ae, F., shade, shadow.
umbrosus, a, um, shadowy, shady.
unquam, ever.
ūnā, together; unā cum, along with.
unda, ae, F., wave.
unde, whence, from which.
undique, from every side, everywhere.
unquantum, i, n., ointment.
unguis, is, M., claw, talon.
ūnicus, a, um, single, unique.
ūniversus, a, um, all together, whole, entire (77).
unquam, see unquam.
ūnus, a, um (gen. iūs: p. 7), one.
ūnusquāque, unaquaque, &c. (gen. uniuscūjusque), each one, every one.
urbānus, a, um, of the city, polite.
urba, urbis, F., city (98).
ūro, üere, üsī, üstum, to burn.
ursus, i, M., a bear.
urtica, ae, F., nettle (uro).
unquam, anywhere.
usque, even, up to; quo —, how far? — ad, as far as.
ūsus, ūs, M., use, advantage, experience (70).
ut (with subj.), that, so that; (with indic.), when, as, how.
ūter, utra, utrum, gen. utrius, (see p. 7), which (of the two)?
uterque, utraque, utrumque (gen. utriusque), both (making the verb plural in English).
uti (ut), that, so that.
utilis, e, useful, advantageous, serviceable, expedient (30).
utilitas, atis, F., utility, advantage, usefulness.
utor, üti, üsus, use, employ (abl.).
utrumque, on both sides.
utrum, whether (see p. 11).
ūva, ae, F., grape, cluster.
uxor, ēris, F., wife.

V.

vacat, there is leisure.
vaccinium, i, N., hyacinth, blueberry.
vacillo, 1 āre, āvi, ātum, to shift about, stagger.
vacuus, a, um, empty, unoccupied, empty-handed.
vādō, 2 ēre, to go, advance (43).
vae, alas!
vaēglo, 4 īre, īvi (ii), ītum, to cry (as an infant).
vagor, 1 āri, ātus, to wander, roam.
 [ing.
vagus, a, um, wandering, roamer.
valē, strongly, very, quite.
valēo, 2 ēre, ui, ītum, be strong, be well, be worth, prevail (87); valē (imperat.), farewell; valeat, valeant, farewell to, away with.
valētūdo, inis, F., health (state of health).
validus, a, um, strong (in almost all senses).
vallis (vallēs). is, F., valley.
vallum, i, N., rampart, palisade.
vānus, a, um, empty, idle, vain.
varietas, atis, F., variety, variation.
vario, 1 āre, āvi, ātum, to vary.
varius, a, um, various.
vestitūs, atis, F., devastation, desolation, vastness.
vasto, 1 āre, āvi, ātum, to devastate, lay waste.
vastus, a, um, vast (65), desolate.
ve (enclitic), or.
vehementer, vigorously, very much.
Vēientēs, ium, the people of
Vēii, ōrum, M., a city near Rome.
vel, or, even; vel . . . vel, either
velōx, ōcis, swift. . . . or.
velut, as, just as.
vēnābulum, i, N., hunting-spear.
vēnālis, e, for sale.
vēnātio, ōnis, F., hunting.
vēnātōr, ōris, M., huntsman.
vēnātrix, icis, F., huntress.
vēnātum, see venor.
vēnditio, ōnis, F., sale.
vēnditor, ōris, M., the seller.
vēndo, 3 dere, didi, ditum, put to sale, sell (venum; do).
vēnēnum, i, N., poison.
vēneo, īre, īvi (ii), ītum, to be sold (go to sale: venum; eo).
veneror, 1 āri, ātus, to venerate, worship.
Veneti, ōrum, M., a people of western Gaul.
venia, ae, F., pardon, permission, favor, indulgence.
venio, 4 īre, vēni, ventum, come.
venor, 1 āri, ātus, hunt; vēnātum (sup.), a-hunting.
ventus, i, M., wind (19).
Venus, eris, F., the goddess of Love and Beauty. [elegance.
venustās, atis, F., grace, polish, vēr, vēris, N., spring. [scourge.
verbero, 1 āre, āvi, ātum, to beat.
verbūm, i, N., a word.
verē, truly, with truth, rightly.
verēcundus, a, um, bashful, modest.
vereor, 2 ēri, ītus, to respect, fear (69), vereor ne veniat, I fear he will come; vereor ut —, I fear he will not come.
verītās, atis, F., truth.
verērus, a, um, spring (adj.), of the spring, vernal.
vērō, in truth, in fact, but, and (with emphasis on the word which precedes).
**Vocabulary: Latin and English.**

verterēs, is, m., a tyrannical Roman governor of Sicily.

verterō, ēre, verrii, versum, to sweep, sweep away.

versō, āre, āvi, ātum, to turn (freq. of vertō).

versor, ārī, ātus, to be, abide, turn about, occupy one's self in.

versus, ūs, m., verse (vertō).

vertex, icis, m., the head, top, vertex (sometimes equivalent to vortēx, whirl, eddy).

vortēx, ēre, ī, sum, to turn.

vērum, buł, in truth. [earnest.

vērus, a, um, true; re verā, in vescor, ĉi, to feed on (abl.).

vesper, eri, M., evening; ad vesperum or vesperī, at evening.

vespera, ae, F., evening.

Vesta, ae, F., goddess of the Hearth or Home.

vestībulum, i, N., vestibule.

vestīgium, i, N., footprint, trace.

vestio, īre, īvi (ii), ītum, to clothe, cover (as with garment, forests, &c.).

vestis, is, F., clothing, raiment, vesture (99).

vestītus, ūs, m., clothing, garb, covering (99).

vetō, āre, vetūi, vetitum, to forbid (acc. and infin.).

vetus, eris, old, ancient (100).

vetustās, ātis, F., antiquity.

vexillum, i, N., flag, standard.

vexo, āre, āvi, ātum, to vex, trouble, distress.

via, ae, F., way, road, course (56).

Sacra Via, the principal street of Rome.

viātor, oris, m., a traveller.

vic, conquer (vinco3).

vicīssimus, a, um, twentieth.

vicīnum, ĩ (N. of the following), neighborhood.

vicinus, a, um, neighboring; m., neighbor.

vicīs (gen.), em, e; plur. ēs, ibus, F., share, turn, changing aspect; mean vicem, on my account; in vicem, in turn.

victor, ōris, m., conqueror; (as adj.), victorious.

victōria, ae, F., victory.

victus, ūs, m., food, living (vivo).

videō, ēre, vidi, visum, see; videor, ēri, visus, to be seen, seem, appear.

videōne, don't you see?

vīgeō, ēre, to be vigorous or flourishing.

vīgil, ilis, watchful; m., a watchman (vīgeo).

vīgilāntia, ae, F., watchfulness.

vīgilia, ae, F., watching, watch (division of the night).

vīgilo, āre, āvi, ātum, to watch, wake, remain awake.

vīgintī (indecl.), twenty.

vīlis, e, cheap.

vīlītās, ātis, F., cheapness.

villa, ae, F., farm-house, villa or country-house (39).

vīluss, i, M., shaggy hair (of animals), wool.

vincio, īre, vinxi, vinc tum, to bind about, fasten (63).

vinculum = vinculum.

vinco, ēre, vici, victim, to conquer (vic).

vinculum, i, N., bond, tie, chain.

vindico, āre, āvi, ātum, assert, claim, punish.

vīnea, ae, F., a vine-trellis, shed (for besiegers).

vīnum, i, N., wine.

vir, viri, m., man (53), husband.

virīnus, tis, green, flourishing.

vīrēs, ium (vis), F., strength.

virga (ula), ae, F., rod, twig.

virginitās, ātis, F., virginity, age or condition as a maiden.

virgo, inis, F., maiden, virgin.

virgultum, i, N., shrubbery (15).

virīlis, e, of a man, manly.

virtūs, ūtis, F., manliness, valor, excellence, virtue.

vis, vis, vim, vi, F., force, violence; plur. vīrēs, strength.

viscera, um, N., flesh (plur. of viscous, a vital organ).

visane or vīn (volo), will you?
visūrus, fut. part., and visus, perf. part. of video.

visus, ūs, M., sight, vision (video).

vita, ae, F., life.

vitiōsus, a, um, vicious, full of faults.

vītis, is, F., grape-vine.

vītium, i, N., vice, fault.

vīto, āre, āvi, ātum, to avoid.

vituperō, āre, āvi, ātum, to blame, censure (vītium).

vīvo, ēre, vīxī, victum, live.

vīvus, a, um, alive, living.

vīx, with difficulty, scarcely.

vōcālis, e, loud, vocal, tuneful.

vōciferō, āri, ātus, to call aloud, shout (vox; fero).

voco, āre, āvi, ātum, call (in all senses).

volāntia, um, N., flying things, insects.

volcānus, i, M., fire (Vulcan).

Volcānus or Vulcānus, i, M., Vulcan, the god of Fire.

volēns, tis, willing.

volo, āre, āvi, ātum, to fly.

volo, velle, volūi (irreg. p. 38), to wish (33); sibi vult, means.

voluntās, ātis, F., will, feeling, wish.

voluptās, ātis, F., pleasure.

vōs, vēstrum or vōstrum (trī), vōbis, you (p. 18).

vōamet, yourselves (emphatic; see -met).

vōtum, ī, N., vow.

voxeō, ēre, vōvī, vōtum, vow.

vōx, vōcis, F., voice (97).

vulcānus, see volcānus.

vulgāris, e, of the crowd, vulgar.

vulgus (volgus), ī, N., the lower classes, the crowd (85).

vulnus (volnus), eris, N., a wound.

vulpēs, is, F., fox.

vultus (voltus), ūs, M., expression, face, countenance.

X.

Xerxes, is, M., a king of Persia.

Z.

Zephyrus, i, M., the West wind.

Note.—The final o in verbs, and in such words as leo, matio, though almost invariably long, is regarded by most prosodists as common, and has therefore not been marked. The authority for special exceptions will be found in Arnold’s “Anticleptic Gradus.”
SYNONYMES:
WITH GROUPS OF VARIOUSLY RELATED WORDS, ILLUSTRATING
ONE ANOTHER'S MEANING.

Note. — In using the following list of allied or kindred words,* it
must be borne in mind that the distinctions drawn are often slight, and
that, especially in poetic use, the boundaries are varying and uncertain.
The accurate meaning and employment of words should always be
sought in a larger lexicon.

1. A, ab (opp. to ad), away from; de, down or aside from; e, 
ex (opp. to in), out of.
2. abdo, abscondo, hide, or put out of sight; condoo, re-
condo, lay away for safe keeping; occulto, occulto, cover up;
celo, conceal from one what he has a right to know (compare 80).
3. abeo, go away; exeo, go out from; discedo, depart to
some other place; decedo, give way to some one else; excedo,
withdraw wholly; proficiscor, set forth on a journey.
4. accidit, it happens (suddenly), with reference to some effect;
contingit, it befalls (fortunately), coincident with something else;
eventit, it turns out, as resulting from some event; obttingit, it falls
to, by lot or otherwise; obvenit, it results from some chance, &c.
5. acies, army in line of battle — with its “edge” of weapons;
agmen, in line of march (ago); exercitus, the disciplined force
itself (see 61).
6. aequus, level, even; also fair, calm, just; par, equal, in num-
ber, strength, &c.; aequalis, usually of like age; aequabilis, equable
in one’s self, uniform; similis, like.
7. aetas, age (period of life); tempus, time (of limited dura-
tion); aevum, a long period; saeculum, age or century.
8. ager, field in general, especially wild or open, also public
territory; campus, an extended plain; arvum, ploughed land;
pratum, meadow, level or grassy; rus, the country, as opposed to city.

* Prepared with the aid of Ramshorn’s “Latin Synonyms,” and of the lists in Bul-
lions’s Dictionary.
9. albus, dead white (opp. to ater); candidus, bright white (opp. to niger); canus, gray or hoary.

10. altus, high, deep; arduus, steep, difficult; celsus (excel-
sus), lofty, stately; editus, uplifted; sublimis, on high.

11. amo,1 to love with affection; diligo,3 with esteem; adamo,1 conceive affection for; deamo,1 of ardent passion.

12. anguis, snake (swift, darting); serpens, the crawling crea-
ture (vipera, coluber, &c., special venomous kinds); draco, 
dragon, often used poetically for serpens.

13. anima, life (animal life); animus, soul (thought or passion); 
mens, intelligence; indoles, disposition, talent; ingenium, mind or 
genius, as innate quality.

14. animal, animal, the living thing; bestia, beast (wild and 
fierce; plur. brutes in general); belna, a bulky and monstrous crea-
ture (as elephant or whale); fera, wild animal as opposed to tame; 
pecus, tame animal as opposed to wild (see 51).

15. arbor, tree; frutex, shrub; arbustum, a place planted with 
trees; virgultum, bushes, thicket.

16. arma, weapons in general, especially defensive: galea, 
helmet; lorica, corselet of leather or metal; ocreae, greaves for the 
leg; scutum (or clipeus, 28), shield. It may also, more generally, 
include offensive weapons (for which the proper word is tela): 
gladius, sword, short, straight, and pointed (ensis, mucro, ferrum, 
poetic); pilum, javelin, a heavy missile with long thin blade and 
stout handle; hasta, spear or pike, for thrusting; jaclulum, dart; 
arbus, bow; sagittae, arrows, &c.

17. ars, art (the practice; artes, acquired skill); scientia, knowl-
dge (theory); artificium, skill of the artifex, or craftsman.

18. audeo,2 dare, in reference to danger; conor,1 undertake, of 
importance; mollor,4 attempt, of difficulty.

19. aura, breeze; ventus, wind; flamen, blast; flatus, flabrum, 
of gentle or favorable winds.

20. avarus, covetous; avidus, greedy; cupidus, eager; parcus, 
frugal; sordidus, mean, stingy.

21. avis, a bird (feathered creature); ales, winged (especially of 
large birds, or poetic); volucris, as capable of flight; praepes, of 
swift and lofty flight; osten [os, cano], of omen by the voice.

22. bellum, war; pugna, fight (in general); proelium, battle; 
militia, warfare (the soldier's trade); tumultus, a sudden tumult 
or insurrection (near home).

23. bonus, good (kind or virtuous); probus, upright; fortis, 
bold, manly, valiant; honestus, honorable (see 41).
24. caedes, killing, massacre; clades, defeat, disaster; strages, carnage; internecio, destruction.

25. capio,8 grasp, contain; accipio,9 to receive; excipio,8 take what comes in one’s way; recipio,8 to take back; suscipio,8 undertake; rapio,9 seize; adripio,8 corripio,9 seize with force or eagerness; sumo,8 to take (without force).

26. careo,9 to lack or be in want; egeo,8 indigeo,9 to be in need; vaco,1 to be empty or at leisure.

27. carmen, a song or brief poem (the words); cantus, song (as sung); versus, poema, the composition.

28. clypeus, shield, oval, of brass; scutum, of wood, with skin covering and iron rim; parma, pelta, cetra, buckler (small shields of peculiar shape); ancile, short and oval, borne in processions.

29. comes, companion (fellow traveller); socius, partner or ally; sodalis, boon companion, or member of a club.

30. commodus, convenient or suitable in itself; opportunus, fit according to circumstance; utilis, of service to some end.

31. consilium, counsel or advice, the result of reflection; sententia, opinion, considered and fixed, especially in deliberative bodies, as the Senate or a jury; opinio, notion, conjecture (compare 92).

32. culpa, fault; crimen, charge of any offence; delictum, fault of omission or neglect; peccatum, a wilful misdeed; facinus, act (facio), often implying violence; maleficium, crime.

33. cupidio,8 to desire, long for any thing; concupisco,9 to feel a longing; opto,1 choose or wish; desidero,1 to feel the want of; volo, wish or intend.

34. cutis, skin (on the body); pellis, the fresh soft hide; corium, coarse or tanned hide, leather; aluta, a soft leather prepared with alum; turgus, skin of the back and body.

35. damnum, loss or forfeit; detrimentum, damage (wearing away); jactura, loss by shipwreck, &c. (a casting away); in commodum, disaster, loss by misfortune or defeat (a euphemism).

36. daps, any rich food; pl., feast; epulum, a public or religious banquet; cena, dinner, the chief meal of the day; prandium, me renda, lunch; jentaculum, an early breakfast; cibus, any food.

37. do,1 to give in general; dono,1 of a formal or valuable gift; dedo,8 surrender (compare abdo, perdo, trado, prodo, condo, vendo); largior,4 of lavish gifts.

38. dolor, pain in general; maeror, a settled sadness; luctus, grief with signs of mourning; cura, anxiety or distress of mind;
aerumna, misery, affliction; aegritudo, distress (of mind, chiefly); aegrimonía, of body; tristitia, sadness as shown by outward signs; miseria, wretchedness, as of destitution, &c.; molestia, annoyance or distress from some special cause; squallor, disfigurement in sign of mourning.

39. domus, house, as dwelling, also a large or fine house; aedés, as a building, or group of apartments; tectum, shelter; sedes, place of permanent abode; villa, farm-house; insula, a city-mansion or block, occupying a whole square; atrium, hall, the main apartment of the house; aula, poetic, and used of royal courts, &c. (see 86).

40. donum, gift; munus, of bounty or obligation (compare 57); praemium, reward considered as the receiver's due; beneficium, as the giver's bounty; merces, wages.

41. dulcis, sweet; blandus, gentle, caressing; comis, kind, courteous; lenis, soft; mollis, smooth (to the touch); suavis, agreeable to the senses in general; amoens, to the eye in particular.

42. dux, leader, properly a guide (sa doctus); imperator, commander, with military authority; legatus, aid or lieutenant, who receives his commission from the Senate instead of popular election, and is hence regarded as a delegate.

43. eo, to go, in general; gradior, advance with steps; grassor, to walk rapidly; proficiscor, set forth; vado, advance firmly; spator, with long or stately strides.

44. exilis, slight or lean; tenuis, thin, delicate; gracilis, slender, little; macer, lean, lank.

45. fallo, to deceive, or betray into error; decipio, to take unawares; fraudo, deprive of one's due; frustror, to frustrate or disappoint; deludo, beguile.

46. fama, fame, repute (wide-spread); rumor, report; gloria, glory, resting on esteem; laus, praise or good-name; praedicatio, publishing of deeds or merit; decus, outward splendor or distinction; honor, honor or respect, pl. public honors; munus, office, as implying service or obligation (compare 57).

47. felix, happy or fortunate; beatus, prosperous; faustus, of good omen; fortunatus, lucky, rich (favored by fortune).

48. finis, end (pl. boundary); modus, limit to excess; terminus, landmark; limit, a belt of land marking the division of estates.

49. flumen, river or stream in general; fluvius, the flowing body of water; amnis (generally), broad and navigable; rivus, rutilus, brook, rivulet; torrens, a sudden violent flow, from rains, &c.
Synonymes.

50. genus, race including nations (nationés), or house including families (familiae); genus, origin or kind; stirps, stock; prosapia, used of ancient and extensive family connection.

51. grex, flock, especially of sheep, &c.; armentum, herd of cattle, horses, &c.; jumentum, yoke-beast; pecus, flock or herd (pecora, cattle in general); pecus (udis), a creature of the flock (14).

52. hic, this (of the person speaking); iste, that (of the person addressed); ille, that (at a distance, well-known, or the following); is, especially as correlative with qui, one who, &c. (see Gr. § 20).

53. homo, man, as a human being in general; vir, man, a male person, or as implying force, energy, &c.

54. hostis, an enemy (public); pl., the enemy; inimicus, a personal foe, or rival; adversarius, opponent at law, &c.

55. invenio, to find or meet; reperio, discover something hidden or unknown; nanciscor, happen upon (as game); offendo, stumble upon.

56. iter, way of travel; via, a broad street, &c.; semita, a narrow way; trames, by-path; callis, foot-track; anciportus, alleyway.

57. jus, a right, or general law; lex, statute; fas, moral right, or duty; officium, duty as obligation or service; munus, duty, as connected with civil or official position (function).

58. labor, toil, hardship; opus, the work accomplished; opera, implying workmanship or active energy (pl. hands).

59. lapis, stone of any sort; saxum, rock, hard or large; silex, flint; cautes, cliff; rupes, a mass of rock, precipice; scopulus, a peak (giving an extensive view).

60. lactus, bed; cubile, any resting-place; stratum, any thing strewn, couch or covering; torus, couch, or mattress.

61. legio, legion (of about 5000); cohors, cohort or battalion, one-tenth of a legion (in later use, auxiliary infantry); manipulus, maniple, one-third of the cohort; turma, troop of 30 horsemen; ala, a division of auxiliary cavalry; caterva, any band of forces; phalanx, a close array of 800 men (Greek).

62. liber, free; libertus, a freedman; libertinus, one of the class of freedmen; ingenius, freeborn, or becoming to a freeman.

63. ligo, to bind fast (by winding about); vincio, to bind with chains; necto, to fasten by knotting or entwining; jungo, to unite in one.

64. loquor, to speak, talk; dico, to say, or speak more formally; for, to use the faculty of speech; ait, assent, say yes; inquam, inquit, said I, said he, only in quotations.
65. *magnus*, great in all senses; *ingens*, of extraordinary bulk or force; *grandis*, large of its kind; *amplus*, broad, grand; *procerus*, tall; *vastus*, enormous, of something huge or prodigious.

66. *malus*, evil by nature; *pravus*, vicious, deformed; *improbus*, unprincipled, dishonest; *scelestus*, sceletratus, criminal or wicked; *reus*, arraigned as an offender; *sins*, nocens, guilty.

67. *mare*, sea, as opposed to land; *aequor*, the extended surface; *pelagus*, the flood of waters; *pontus*, often of some special part (a poetic word); *fretum*, strait or narrow sea.

68. *memini*, remember; *reminiscor*, call to mind; *recordor*, endeavor to recall.

69. *metuo*, to fear, dread more or less remotely; *timeo*, a more present danger; *vereor*, with awe or respect; *formido*, to be in a state of dread; *paveo*, in a disordered fright; *tremo*, tremble.

70. *mos*, custom which grows to a rule of conduct; hence pl. character (as formed by conduct); *consuetudo*, a settled custom; *usus*, experience or advantage of practice.

71. *motus*, emotion; *affectio*, of any change or condition of mind or body; *affectus*, chiefly of the mind; *perturbatio*, trouble or irregular passion.

72. *eloquens*, eloquent, implying the highest qualities of the orator, both fervor and trained skill; *disertus*, implying easy skilful and natural discourse; *facundus*, fluent and tonguey.

73. *navis*, ship, generally of large size (*navis longa*, a galley propelled by oars, for swiftness in battle); *navigium*, of smaller craft; *linter*, *cymba*, *skiff*, *wherry*; *ratis*, raft or flat-boat, hastily built; *phaselus*, a pleasure-boat; *puppis*, stern (poetic for *navis*).

74. *nomen*, the family name, as *Julius*; *praenomen*, personal name, as *Caius*; *cognomen*, surname, as *Caesar*; *agnomen* (added name), of adoption, as *Octavianus*, or of some exploit, as *Africanus*.

75. *nubes*, cloud; *nimbus*, rain-cloud; *nebula*, mist or fleecy cloud; *imber*, rain-storm; *fulgor*, lightning; *fulmen*, thunderbolt; *tonitrus*, the noise of thunder; *nix*, snow; *grando*, hail.

76. *odium*, hate; *simultas*, malice or grudge; *inimicitia*, enmity, as from a quarrel between friends; *invidia*, odium or unpopularity.

77. *omnia*, all, every; *tota*, whole, as a unit; *unctus*, all considered as parts united (conjectus); *universus*, all together, the whole as made up of individuals.

78. *opes*, wealth, resources in general, as means to an end; *copia*, abundance; *divitiae*, riches, great wealth; *facultas*, property as a means of influence, &c. (cf. 88).
79. oro,1 to beg, pray; peto,8 seek or request; quaero,8 seek or inquire; rogo,1 to entreat as a favor; obsecro,1 beseech earnestly; obtestor,1 conjure, appeal; precor,1 pray as to a divine being; posco,8 demand with urgency; postulo,1 demand as a right; re-peto,8 claim as one's own.

80. ostendo,8 show, hold in sight; ostento1 (intens.), display; monstro,1 point out; exhibeo,2 hold forth to view; pando,8 spread open; aperio,4 uncover; patefacio,8 recludo,3 throw open (as the gates of a city), or lay bare what was hidden.

81. parco,8 spare; moderor,1 restrain, control; tempero,1 regulate, refrain; rego,3 guide, direct.

82. pauper, poor (not destitute); egenus, distressed by want; inops, destitute, helpless; egens, indigens, needy.

83. perdo,8 to lose (by one’s own fault), destroy; amitto,3 to lose by misfortune.

84. polliceor,2 to promise, voluntarily; promitto,2 to engage for the future; spondeo,2 to pledge.

85. populus, the people making a community; plebs, the commons, as distinguished from the upper or governing class; vulgus, the lower classes as such; turba, a mob.

86. porta, city-gate; janua, entrance, outer door; foris, the door proper; valvae, folding-doors; ostium, door-way to an apartment; limen, threshold; vestibulum, porch.

87. possum, I can (of simple ability); queo, no obstacle preventing; polleo,2 to be relatively strong; valeo,2 to be in good health and vigor; potior,4 get possession of.

88. potestas, power (what we may); potentialia, (what we can); facultas, power or opportunity of doing (78); dicio, jurisdiction; imperium, military authority; auctoritas, authority, or influence of station, &c.; gratia, personal influence.

89. proprius, one's own as opposed to common property; suus, ipsius, as opposed to other persons.

90. pugno,1 fight; certo,1 strive, vie.; contento,8 contend for the attainment of any thing; decerto,1 decerno,2 decide by contest; dimico,1 contend as implying two parties.

91. pulcher, beautiful, the most general term; formosus, of the face and person; venustus, graceful; decorus, dignified or becoming; speciosus, of fine appearance; bellus, pretty.

92. puto,1 think, suppose; arbitror,1 to form a judgment; credo,8 believe; existimo,1 form an estimate; reer,2 of similar meaning, but poetic; opinor,1 suppose (compare 31); censeo,2 of formal and deliberate opinion, especially in the Senate.
93. saevus, cruel, wrathful; barbarus, rude, barbarous; atroc, dreadful; ferox, fierce in temper; immanis, monstrous, wicked; durus, harsh, stern; ferus, wild, savage; dirus, destructive; trux, of fierce aspect; crudelis, inexorable.

94. seges, cornfield (standing corn); messis, harvest; far, spelt, a coarse grain, the earliest food of the Romans; frumentum, grain, or corn; triticum, fine wheat; hordeum, barley; avena, oats; fruges, crops, fruits of the earth; fructus, fruit (of trees); annona (the year's produce), grain in market; hence, price of corn.

95. sequor, follow; sector (intens.), chase, pursue; inse- quor, follow close; adsequor, come up with; consequor, over- take, attain.

96. silva, wood, forest; nemus, grove or park (of tall trees); lucus, a shady or dark grove; saltus, glade (open space in the woods), defile, or mountain pass. (Both nemus and lucus are used of sacred groves, especially the latter.)

97. sonus, sound; clamor, shout, cry; sonitus, a great noise; fragor, crash (as of falling trees); clangor, noise of arms, blast of instruments, &c.; vox, the voice; strepitus, a confused noise.

98. urbe, city, as a collection of buildings, streets, &c.; civitas, the political community; oppidum, a walled or garrison town.

99. vestis, clothing in general; vestitus, apparel; amictus, cloak or wrapper; tunica, tunic, a belted shirt without sleeves; toga, toga, a large shawl of unbleached wool, the distinguishing costume of the Romans; stola, gown, woman's garment; peplum, mantle worn by women; palla, upper garment of women; pallium, a Grecian cloak; sagum, military cloak; paludamentum, officer's cloak; trabea, a royal robe; paenula, a travelling cloak.

100. vetus, old; antiquus, very ancient; priscus, of old time; grandaevens, venerable in years; senex, old man (after the age of 63); longaevens, of long duration (as custom, &c.).
SYNOPSIS OF CONSTRUCTIONS.

N.B. The references to pages are to this book; those to sections are to the Revised Edition of the Grammar.

I. — THE SENTENCE.

I. A Sentence may be either Simple or Compound: viz.,

1. **Simple**: containing a single statement (Subject and Predicate).

2. **Compound**: { a. Containing two or more co-ordinate clauses.
   b. Modified by subordinate clauses (complex).

II. The Essential Parts of the Sentence are —

1. The **Subject**: consisting of
   a. Noun or its equivalent.
   b. Pronoun contained in verb-ending.

2. The **Predicate**: consisting of
   a. Neuter (intransitive) Verb.
   b. Copula with Complement.
   c. Verb with Object.

III. The Subject and Predicate may be **Modified** as follows:

1. The **Noun (Subject or Object)** by
   a. Noun in Apposition.
   b. Adjective or Participle.
   c. Noun in Oblique Case.
   d. Preposition with its Case.
   e. Relative Clause.

2. The **Verb (predicate)** by
   a. Adverb or Adverbial Phrase.
   b. Predicate Adjective.
   c. Subordinate Clause.

IV. The Parts of Speech may be described as follows:—

1. The **Noun**: as proper (name of a Person or Place), common (name of a Thing), or abstract (name of a Quality).

2. The **Adjective**: a. by Gender, Number, Case, Degree.
   b. as Descriptive, Possessive, Derivative, &c.
   c. as Attributive, Predicate, Appositive (G. 186).

3. The **Pronoun**: as, Personal, Demonstrative, Relative, &c.

4. The **Verb**: a. by Conjugation (principal parts);
   b. by Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person.

The Forms of the Verb may be analyzed according to the instructions given on pages 8, 27, 42 (Gr. pp. 63-67, 71-74).

V. The following are the Rules of Agreement (the Four Conords):—

1. Nouns agree in Case (p. 7):
   a. in **Apposition** { Abl. with Locative (184. c).
   b. in **Predicate Agreement** (p. 9).

2. The **Adjective** agrees in Gender, Number, and Case (p. 6) —
   a. With nearest Noun (Gr. 187).
   b. By **Synesis** with Noun implied (Gr. 187. d).

3. The **Relative** agrees in Gender and Number (p. 21): —
   a. With Appositive rather than Antecedent (Gr. 199).
   b. Sometimes in Case by attraction (Gr. 199. b).

4. The **Verb** agrees with Subject-Nominative in Number and Person.
II. — Constructions of Cases.

1. — Genitive.

1. Subjective:
   1. of Possession, 214.
   2. of Source or Material, 214. e.
   3. of Quality (with Adjectives), 215.

2. Partitive:
   1. with Nouns of action and feeling, 217.
   2. with Adjectives { Relative adjective or Verbal, 218.
   3. of Memory and Feeling, 219, 221.

3. Objective:
   1. with Verbs { of Accusing, &c. (secondary obj.), 220.
   2. — Dative.

1. As Indirect Object (general use):
   a. with Transitives, 225.
   b. with Intransitives, 226.

2. Special or Idiomatic Uses:
   a. of Possession (with esse), 231.
   b. of Agency (with Gerund), 232.
   c. of Service (predicate use), 233.
   d. of Fitness, &c. (with Adjectives), 234.
   e. of Reference (dativos commodi), 235.

3. — Accusative.

1. Primary Object:
   a. Directly affected by the Action, 237.
   b. Effect of the Action { Thing produced, 237.
   c. Cognate Accusative, 238.

2. Secondary Object:
   a. Predicate Accusative (of Naming, &c.), 239 a.
   b. of Asking or Teaching (the Thing), 239. e.
   c. of Concealing (the Person), 239. d.

3. Idiomatic Uses:
   a. Adverbial, 240. a.
   b. of Specification (Greek Accusative), 240. c.
   c. of Extent and Duration, 240. e.
   d. of Exclamation, 240. d.
   e. Subject of Infinitive (Indirect Discourse), 240. f.

4. — Ablative.

1. Ablative (from):
   a. of Separation, Privation, and Want, 243.
   b. of Source (participles of origin, &c.), 244.
   c. of Cause (gaudeo, dignus, &c.), 245.
   d. of Agent (with ab after Passives), 246.
   e. of Comparison (than), 247.

2. Instrumental (with):
   a. of Means and Instrument, 248.
   b. of Accompaniment (with eum), 248. a.
   c. of Object of the Deponents utor, &c., 249.
   d. of Degree of Difference, 250.
   e. of Quality (with Adjectives), 251.
   f. of Price and Exchange, 252.
   g. of Specification, 253.

3. Locative (in, on, at):
   a. of Place where (commonly with in), 254.
   b. of Idiomatic Expressions, 254. a.
   c. of Time and Circumstance, 255.
   d. Ablative Absolute, 255.

Prepositions take either the Accusative or Ablative; but are omitted
with names of Towns and small Islands (see Rule 36, p. 163; Gr. 253).
III. — Syntax of the Verb.

1. Moods and Tenses.

1. Indicative: Direct Assertion or Question; Absolute Time, 264.
      (Purpose or Result (with ut, ne), 317–319. Characteristic (Relative Clause), 320.
      Relative Time (with cum), 325.
   b. Dependent (Chap. V.)
   c. Indirect Questions, 334.

2. Subjunctive:
   a. Direct Commands (often subjunctive), 269.
   b. Statutes, Laws and Wills (Future), 289. d.
   c. Prohibitions (early or poetic use), 269. a.
   d. Subject of esse and Impersonal verbs, 270.
   e. Object { Complementary Infinitive, 271. Indirect Discourse (with subj.-accusative), 272.
   f. Purpose (poetic or Greek use), 273.
   g. Exclamation (with subject-accus.), 274.
   h. Historical Infinitive, 275.

3. Imperative:
   b. Future { Periphrastic with esse, 293. as Descriptive Adjective, 294.
   c. Gerundive { Periphrastic with fui (= Pluperfect Subj.). of Purpose with certain verbs.
   e. Dative, with Adjectives (of fitness), Nouns, Verbs, 299.
   f. Accusative, with certain Prepositions, 300.
   g. Ablative, of Means, Comparison, or with Prepositions, 301.

4. Infinitive:
   a. Former Supine (in um), with Verbs of Motion, 302.
   b. Latter Supine (in u), chiefly with Adjectives, 303.

2. — Noun and Adjective Forms.

1. Participles
   b. Future { Periphrastic with esse, 293. as Descriptive Adjective, 294.
   c. Gerundive { Periphrastic with fui (= Pluperfect Subj.). of Purpose with certain verbs.

2. Gerund or Gerundive:
   a. Former Supine (in um), with Verbs of Motion, 302.
   b. Latter Supine (in u), chiefly with Adjectives, 303.

3. Supine:


1. Simple Present or Past Conditions, nothing implied as to fulfilment: Indicative, Present or Past Tenses, 306.

   b. Less vivid (improbable): Present Subjunctive.

3. Conditions Contrary to Fact:

4. General Conditions:
   a. Indefinite: 2d person, Subjunctive, 309.
   b. Repeated Action: Imperfect or Pluperfect with Indicative in Apodosis.

5. Implied Conditions:
   a. Disguised { in clause of Fact, Wish, &c., 310.
   b. Omitted { in Participial Expression, 310.
   c. Potential Subjunctive, 311.
   d. Subjunctive of Modesty, 311.
### IV. — FORMS OF THE VERB.

#### 1. — Verbal Forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>INDIC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>SUBJ.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing. 1.</td>
<td>o&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. s</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. t</td>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. 1.</td>
<td>mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. tis</td>
<td>tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. nt</td>
<td>nt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect.**

| Sing. 1. | bam | rem | bar | rer |
| 2. bās | rés | bāris (re) | rēris (re) |
| 3. bat | ret | bātur | rētur |
| Plur. 1. | bāmus | rēmus | bāmur | rēmur |
| 2. bātis | rētis | bāmini | rēmini |
| 3. bānt | rent | bantur | rentur |

**Future.**

| Sing. 1. | bo | i. ii. | am | i. ii. | iii. iv. |
| 2. bis | ēs | beris (re) | ēris (re) |
| 3. bit | at | bitur | ētur |
| Plur. 1. | bimus | ēmus | bimur | ēmur |
| 2. bitis | ētis | bimini | ēmini |
| 3. bunt | ent | bantur | entur |

**Perfect.**

| Sing. 1. | ī | erim | -tus (ta, tum) | (sum) | sim |
| 2. istī | eris | (es) | sis |
| 3. it | erit | (est) | sit |
| Plur. 1. | imus | erimus | -ti (tae, ta) | (sumus) | simus |
| 2. istis | eritis | (estis) | sisis |
| 3. ērunt or ēre | erint | (sunt) | sint |

**Future Perfect.**

| Sing. 1. | ero | -tus (ta, tum) | (ero) | essem |
| 2. eris | (eris) | essēs |
| 3. erit | (erit) | esset |
| Plur. 1. | erimus | -ti (tae, ta) | (erimus) | essēmus |
| 2. eritis | (eritis) | essētis |
| 3. erint | (erunt) | essent |
Forms of the Verb.

Imperative.

Sing. 2. —
3. to re

Plur. 2. te, tõte
3. nto tor

2. — Noun and Adjective Forms.

Infinitive.

Pres. re (Pres. stem) i. ii. iv. rî, iii. i (old rier, ier)
Perf. isse (Perf. stem) tus (ta, tum) esse
tum īri
Fut. turus (a, um) esse

Participle.

Pres. ns, ntis
Perf. ——
Fut. turus, a, um tus, ta, tum

Ger. ndus, a, um

SUPINE. tum, tu
ANNOUNCEMENTS
OF
NEW BOOKS
BY
GINN AND HEATH.

Latin.

THE AGRICOLA OF TACITUS.
  Edited for School and College Use by W. F. ALLEN, Professor of
  Latin in the University of Wisconsin. Ready in July.

THE GERMANIA OF TACITUS.
  Edited for School and College Use by W. F. ALLEN, Professor of
  Latin in the University of Wisconsin. In preparation.

THE ANNALS OF TACITUS.
  Edited by TRACY PECK, Professor of Latin in Cornell University.
  Vol. I. will contain the first six books of the Annals, covering the
  reign of Tiberius. In preparation.

SELECTIONS FROM SOME OF THE LESS-KNOWN
LATIN POETS; viz., Catullus, Lucretius, the Elegiac Writers,
Lucan and Martial. With notes for colleges. By E. P. CROWELL,

GINN & HEATH, Publishers, Boston, New York, and Chicago.
ANNOUNCEMENTS OF NEW BOOKS.

CICERO DE NATURE DEORUM.
Translated and Edited, with the Commentary of Schoeman, by Professor AUSTIN STICKNEY, formerly of Trinity College, Hartford.
[Ready in August.

A NEW AND COMPLETE VIRGIL.
This Edition will be printed from wholly new plates, and will be fully annotated by Professor J. B. GREENOUGH, Harvard University. It will also have numerous illustrations from the antique.
[Ready in June, 1881.

ALLEN'S LATIN COMPOSITION.
Introduction to Latin Composition by Professor W. F. ALLEN. New Edition, revised and enlarged.

This edition has been thoroughly revised, recast, and adapted to the Revised Edition of Allen and Greenough's Grammar, with parallel references to Gildersleeve and Harkness. About twenty-five preliminary Lessons have been added on elementary constructions; also, a new and enlarged general Vocabulary. In the introductory portion, special attention has been given to oral practice, with a view to the rapid acquisition of a good Vocabulary (taken largely from Cæsar) as well as the familiar knowledge of grammatical constructions. In the revision, and in the preparation of the preliminary exercises, the Editor has been greatly aided by the advice and coöperation of Mr. JOHN TETLOW, Principal of the Girls' Latin School, Boston.
[Ready in July.

In order to meet a very general demand, an edition of the

NEW LATIN METHOD

Will be published during the summer, with the "Parallel Exercises" greatly simplified, abridged, and accompanied by progressive exercises in "Reading at Sight" (interlined), taken chiefly from Cæsar. In these exercises the long vowels will be consistently marked throughout.

GINN & HEATH, Publishers, Boston, New York, and Chicago.
THE LETTERS OF THE YOUNGER PLINEY.
Edited for Use in Schools and Colleges by TRACY PECK, Professor of Latin in Cornell University.

This edition will contain all the letters of Pliny, including the correspondence with the Emperor Trajan, and a commentary upon the entire series. The slight attention paid to these letters in our Latin courses has often been remarked and regretted. The light which they throw upon the public and private history of their time, the amiable and cultivated character of the writer, and their graceful style and exquisite Latinity, make them exceptionally instructive and interesting. [In preparation.

LATIN PRONUNCIATION.
A Brief Outline of the Roman, Continental, and English Methods, by D. B. KING, Adjunct Professor of Latin in Lafayette College.

Contains a few explanatory and historical paragraphs on the Roman, Continental, and English methods of pronouncing Latin, and a brief presentation of the main features of each, prepared for use at Lafayette College, where the character and arrangement of studies in English and Comparative Philology make it desirable that students should have a knowledge of both Roman and English methods.

The students are carefully taught in practice to use the English method, and to give the rules for the sound of the letters, this having been found a valuable aid in teaching English Pronunciation and the Philology of the English language. A knowledge of the Roman method, giving the sounds, in the main, as we believe Cicero and Virgil gave them, is required as a matter of historical information and culture, and as an important aid in determining the derivations of words and laws of phonetic change, and in illustrating the principles of Comparative Philology. Mailing price, 15 cents. [Ready.

LEIGHTON'S LATIN LESSONS
Will have references, in the next edition, to the Grammars of Andrews and Stoddard, Gildersleeve and Harkness.

GINN & HEATH, Publishers, Boston, New York, and Chicago.
Greek.

THE PROMETHEUS OF AESCHYLUS.
Edited, with Notes and an Introduction, by Frederic D. Allen, Ph.D., Professor of Greek in Yale College. [In preparation.

THE PHILIPPICS OF DEMOSTHENES.
Edited by Frank B. Tarbell, Ph.D., Yale College, with the Zürich Edition of the Text, a Historical Introduction, and Explanatory Notes. [Ready in June.

THE HELLENIC ORATIONS OF DEMOSTHENES.
Symmories, Megalopolitans, and Rhodians. With revised text and commentary by Isaac Flagg, Ph.D., Professor of Greek in Cornell University, Ithaca, N.Y. [Ready in August.

SELECTIONS FROM PINDAR, THE BUCOLIC POETS, AND THE GREEK HYMNS. Containing twelve Odes of Pindar, six Idylls of Theocritus, Bion's Epitaphius Adonis, Moschus' Europa, two Homeric Hymns, a Hymn of Callimachus, and the Hymn of Cleanthes; in all, about 2,800 lines. Edited by T. D. Seymour, Professor of Greek in Western Reserve College, Ohio. [Ready January 1, 1881.

THE FIRST THREE BOOKS OF HOMER'S ILIAD. [In preparation.

SIDGWICK'S FIRST GREEK WRITER.
Adapted to Goodwin's Greek Grammar by John Williams White, Ph.D. Intended to follow White's First Lessons in Greek, and to introduce Sidgwick's Greek Prose Composition. [In preparation.

STEIN'S SUMMARY OF THE DIALECT OF HERODOTUS, translated by Professor John Williams White, Ph.D., from the German of the fourth edition of Herodotus by Heinrich Stein. Paper, pp. 15.

This pamphlet makes a complete statement of the euphonic and inflexional peculiarities which distinguish the language of Herodotus from Attic Greek, and is suitable for use with any edition of Herodotus. Mailing price, 15 cents. [Ready.

**WHITE'S FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK, REVISED EDITION.** With references to the revised and enlarged edition of Goodwin's Greek Grammar, and printed from entirely new plates.

The publishers beg leave to call attention to the following changes which have been made in the new edition of the First Lessons in Greek.

The number of lessons has been increased from seventy-five to eighty. The five added lessons are on the verb, the treatment of which is thus distributed over more ground. By this enlargement the difficulty of single lessons on the verb is correspondingly decreased.

After λαμ has been fully presented by moods, as in the first edition, a development of the Greek verb by tense-stems has been introduced. The seven tense-stems are now fully developed.

Contract verbs are presented, in this edition, in two lessons in place of one. The lesson on liquid verbs has been brought forward. The perfect and pluperfect middle and passive of liquid and mute verbs is now fully treated. A lesson has been added to Lessons LII. and LIII. giving in full the principal parts of twenty-five additional verbs. In the Lessons on the Formation of Words and on Prepositions it has now been possible to remove the body of the text, but the exercises of Lessons LIV. and LV. remain, and a complete set of exercises has been added to Lesson LXII.

Single words and phrases have been removed from the exercises, which now consist wholly of complete sentences. In the special vocabularies the parts of the verbs are given in full and no words are repeated. In the general vocabularies the words are more fully treated, especially the prepositions, the cases required by the verbs stated, and English cognate and borrowed words distinguished by different types.

New editions of the Pamphlet of Parallel References to Hadley's Grammar, and of the Key for the use of Teachers, are to follow.

An edition of the First Lessons in Greek is to be printed and published for the use of English schools, by Macmillan & Co. in England, simultaneously with the American edition. [Ready in July.

**GINN & HEATH, Publishers, Boston, New York, and Chicago.**
ANNOUNCEMENTS OF NEW BOOKS.

AN ILLUSTRATED VOCABULARY TO THE FIRST FOUR BOOKS OF XENOPHON’S ANABASIS. By JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE, Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Greek in Harvard University.

The distinguishing features of this Vocabulary will be its illustrations, the fullness of its definitions, and its careful treatment of etymologies.

To be published both separately and bound with Goodwin and White’s edition of the First Four Books of the Anabasis.

[Ready in September.

GOODWIN’S ANABASIS, GREEK READER, and SELECTIONS FROM XENOPHON and HERODOTUS, will have references to the new edition of Goodwin’s Greek Grammar.

LEIGHTON’S NEW GREEK LESSONS.

With references to Hadley’s Greek Grammar as well as to Goodwin’s New Greek Grammar.

About seventy easy and well-graded lessons, both Greek and English, introduce the pupil to the first book of Xenophon’s Anabasis, from which the Exercises and Vocabularies are mainly selected. Definite directions have been given in regard to the amount of the Grammar to be learned. The main aim has been, while introducing the simpler principles of syntax, to have the pupil master the Inflections and acquire a Vocabulary. In furtherance of this purpose, the exercises on the inflections have been increased, while those on syntax have been decreased. Vocabularies have been given under each lesson; and, in order to aid the pupil in memorizing them, some insight has been given into the derivation and into the composition of words,—how they are built up, by means of significance endings, from noun and verb stems, and from roots. The Prepositions are introduced from the first; and the pupil is taught the primary meanings, and then how these meanings are modified by the cases before which the Prepositions stand. Questions for Review and Examination as in the first edition. In rewriting these Lessons, considerable use has been made of the excellent exercises, used in most of the German gymnasiums, prepared by Dr. Wasener to accompany the Greek Grammar of Professor Curtius.

[Ready in June.

GINN & HEATH, Publishers, Boston, New York, and Chicago.